

BARRON'S

ESL PROFICIENCY SERIES



PHRASAL VERBS

- 400 COMMON PHRASAL VERBS
- HUNDREDS OF EXERCISES TO SHARPEN FLUENCY



Carl W. Hart



PHRASAL VERBS



Carl W. Hart

© Copyright 2020, 2017, 2009, 1999 by Carl W. Hart

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. By payment of the required fees, you have been granted the non-exclusive, non-transferable right to access and read the text of this eBook on screen. No part of this text may be reproduced, transmitted, downloaded, decompiled, reverse engineered, or stored in or introduced into any information storage and retrieval system, in any form or by any means, whether electronic or mechanical, now known or hereinafter invented, without the express written permission of the publisher.

Published by Kaplan, Inc., d/b/a Barron's Educational Series

750 Third Avenue

New York, NY 10017

www.barronseduc.com

ISBN: 978-1-5062-6760-9

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Kaplan, Inc., d/b/a Barron's Educational Series print books are available at special quantity discounts to use for sales promotions, employee premiums, or educational purposes.

For more information or to purchase books, please call the Simon & Schuster special sales department at 866-506-1949.

Table of Contents

To the Teacher

To the Student

Unit 1: Definition of Phrasal Verbs, Separable/ Inseparable, and Transitive/Intransitive

Unit 2: Phrasal Verbs and *Do*, *Does*, and *Did*

Unit 3: Three-Word Phrasal Verbs

Unit 4: Present and Past Continuous Phrasal Verbs

Unit 5: Stress in Two-Word Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

Unit 6: Stress in Three-Word Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

Unit 7: Separable Phrasal Verbs with Long Objects

Unit 8: Present Perfect Phrasal Verbs

Unit 9: Two-Word Phrasal Verbs that Require a Preposition when Used with an Object, Part 1

Unit 10: Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

Unit 11: Phrasal Verbs Used in Compound Nouns

Unit 12: Past Perfect Phrasal Verbs

Unit 13: Passive Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

Unit 14: Participle Adjectives Formed from Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

Unit 15: Phrasal Verbs and *Will* or *Be Going To*

Unit 16: Phrasal Verbs with Gerund Objects, Part 1

Unit 17: Adverbs and Phrasal Verbs

Unit 18: Phrasal Verbs and *Can*, *Could*, *Will*, and *Would*

Unit 19: Phrasal Verbs and the Adverb *Right*

Unit 20: Phrasal Verbs Followed by the *-ing* Form

Unit 21: Phrasal Verbs and *Should* and *Ought To*

Unit 22: The Particle *Up* and the Adverbs *Right* and *All*

Unit 23: Two-Word Phrasal Verbs that Require a Preposition when Used with an Object, Part

Unit 24: Stress and Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

Unit 25: Phrasal Verbs and *Have to*, *Have Got to*, and *Must*

Unit 26: Phrasal Verbs and the Adverb *Back*

Unit 27: Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Off* and the Adverb *Right*

Unit 28: Passive Phrasal Verbs, Part 2

Unit 29: Phrasal Verbs and *Might*, *May*, and *Can*

Unit 30: Participle Adjectives Formed from Phrasal Verbs, Part 2

Unit 31: Phrasal Verbs and Gerund Subjects

Unit 32: Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Out*

Unit 33: Phrasal Verbs and Midsentence Adverbs

Unit 34: Stress in Two- and Three-Word Phrasal Verbs, Part 2

Unit 35: Gerund Phrasal Verbs

Unit 36: Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Down*

Unit 37: Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns, Part 3

Unit 38: The Verb *Keep* and Adverbs and Adverbials Showing Degrees of Variability

Unit 39: Passive Phrasal Verbs, Part 3

Unit 40: Gerund Phrasal Verbs vs Phrasal Verbs Followed by the *-ing* Form

Unit 41: Two-Word Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *In* that Require *Into* when Used with an Object

Unit 42: Phrasal Verbs with *Get*, Part 1

Unit 43: Modals and Present Perfect Phrasal Verbs

Unit 44: Participle Adjectives and Passive Phrasal Verbs with the Verb *Get*

Unit 45: Phrasal Verbs with the Verb *Turn*

Unit 46: Stress in Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Into*

Unit 47: Particles Used Without Verbs

Unit 48: Modals and Present Perfect Passive Phrasal Verbs

Unit 49: Combinations of *Get*, *Right*, *Back*, and *To*

Unit 50: Keep at it!

Answers

Index

To the Teacher

The inspiration for *Phrasal Verbs* came about when a student asked me for a textbook to help her learn the meanings of common English verbs. The only textbook focusing on common verbs that I could give her taught the decidedly uncommon verbs *arise*, *awake*, and *seek* but made no mention of their much more common phrasal equivalents *get up*, *wake up*, and *look for*.

What Are Phrasal Verbs?

Phrasal verbs are an essential part of spoken and written English at all levels. No ESL student can afford to overlook them, yet many ESL students (and their teachers) do. Studies have shown that ESL students' knowledge of and use of phrasal verbs often lag behind their overall level of fluency and vocabulary acquisition. This can be ascribed, I believe, to two factors—their idiomatic nature (discussed below) and the false notion among some instructors that phrasal verbs are “informal.” Some are informal, of course, but in this regard they are no different from single-word verbs—the majority are perfectly acceptable and frequently used at all registers. It is a mistake to give ESL students—especially those learning English for use in academia or business—the false impression that phrasal verbs are inherently informal and are therefore to be avoided in formal discourse.

It is important to understand that phrasal verbs are *verbs*, not idiomatic curiosities. There is no logic to classifying *take over* with *take the bull by the horns*. It is also important to understand that these verb + element constructions are verbs in their own right. *Take off*, for example, is not a variation of *take*. It is an entirely separate verb from *take*.

So what are phrasal verbs? As we will see, there is no universally agreed-upon definition. What follows is what I prefer, but I will discuss alternative schools of thought. As I see it, *phrasal verb* is the popular term often used for what are more accurately called *multiword verbs*. Phrasal verbs are a type of multiword verb.

Multiword Verbs

Multiword verbs consist of a verb and one or two additional elements. These elements are sometimes prepositional adverbs (also known as adverbial prepositions) and sometimes prepositions. They can be broken down into three broad categories—*phrasal verbs*, *phrasal prepositional verbs*, and *prepositional verbs*—with additional subcategories.

Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs consist of a verb and a *particle*. A particle is a word that functions in other contexts as a preposition or an adverb, but not when part of a phrasal verb. Whether a particle is an adverb, a preposition, or both is something that I don't advise discussing with students. In phrasal verbs, they are neither. They are particles. Phrasal verbs can be subcategorized as *transitive* and *intransitive*.

Transitive Phrasal Verbs

Transitive phrasal verbs can be further subcategorized as *separable* or *inseparable* based on the allowable position of the object noun phrase in relation to the verb and the particle.

Separable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

Separable transitive phrasal verbs can be further subcategorized as *optionally separable* or *permanently separated*.

Optionally Separable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

Optionally separable transitive phrasal verbs permit and sometimes require *particle movement*. When the noun phrase is a noun, an indefinite pronoun, or a quantifier, the particle may appear either before or after the noun phrase. However, when the noun phrase is an object pronoun, the pronoun must be placed between the verb and the particle. The concept of *end weight* comes into play here. Native speakers do not like to separate verbs and particles with especially long noun phrases. Though grammatical, the result can be awkward and unclear. This is discussed in Unit 7.

Permanently Separated Transitive Phrasal Verbs

A small group of transitive phrasal verbs are permanently separated. Among these are *get down* (depress), *let off* (not punish), *let down* (disappoint), and *do over*. In the case of permanently transitive separated phrasal verbs, the direct object must be placed between the verb and the particle.

Inseparable Transitive Phrasal Verbs

Another group of transitive phrasal verbs cannot be separated at all, or at least that's one school of thought—a traditional and well-established school of thought. Among these transitive phrasal verbs are *pick on*, *look after*, *run across*, and *fall for*. At a glance, it might seem that inseparable phrasal verbs are no different from separable phrasal verbs, apart from having particles which, for some unknown reason, cannot be separated. But it's not as simple as that. There is one important difference between inseparable transitive verb + element constructions and separable transitive verb + element constructions. Inseparable transitive verb + element constructions are followed by prepositions (which function as prepositions), not particles. As we will see, this is also the definition of a prepositional verb. Nevertheless, some maintain that inseparable transitive phrasal verbs are distinct from prepositional verbs, but those who maintain this distinction cannot agree on which criteria to base this distinction or, in many cases, cannot decide to which of the two classifications various verb + preposition constructions belong. Those who make no distinction between inseparable transitive phrasal verbs and prepositional verbs are not in complete agreement either. Some reject the whole notion that phrasal verbs and prepositional verbs are two distinct types of multiword verbs, a term they do not recognize. To them, all verb + preposition constructions are phrasal verbs. Others take the opposite view—that all inseparable transitive verb + preposition constructions are prepositional verbs; there is no such thing, they say, as an inseparable transitive phrasal verb.

Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

Intransitive phrasal verbs can be categorized as *pure* or *ergative*.

Pure Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

Examples of pure intransitive phrasal verbs are *take off* (from an airport runway), *come over* (visit), and *get together* (meet). Pure intransitive phrasal verbs can be followed by a prepositional phrase. When this occurs, they become phrasal prepositional verbs (discussed below), also known as *three-word phrasal verbs* (except when *to* changes to *into*, resulting in a phrasal verb that superficially remains a two-word phrasal verb. Contrast *break out of* with *break into*).

Ergative Intransitive Phrasal Verbs

An ergative verb (phrasal or otherwise) is a verb whose action is experienced by the subject. A few are only ergative (*die down*), but most have a transitive

counterpart (*burn down, blow up, wear out*). You can *burn down* a building, or a building can *burn down*.

Phrasal Prepositional Verbs

This category is a hybrid; phrasal prepositional verbs, more commonly known as three-word (phrasal) verbs, consist of a verb + particle + preposition. Examples include *look up to, come up with, and get out of*. All are transitive, with some allowing for gerund complements (*I look forward to seeing you*). Because the term *phrasal prepositional verb* is cumbersome (and is also used sometimes to describe inseparable transitive phrasal verbs) and would be meaningless to most ESL students, I use (and recommend that you use) the term *three-word verb*.

A small number of phrasal prepositional verbs, such as *put up to* and *screw out of*, are permanently separated because they require two objects. These are not two-word separable phrasal verbs used with an optional preposition because without the preposition, they have no meaning or have a completely different meaning.

Prepositional Verbs

As we have seen, our last category is the object of contention and confusion. *Prepositional verbs* are verbs followed by a preposition. At a glance, these may appear no different from transitive phrasal verbs.

The Great Debate

In the case of *separable* transitive phrasal verbs, prepositional verbs are clearly different. Prepositional verbs do not allow for particle movement (and are always followed by prepositions, not particles). Moreover, a relative clause (also known as an adjective clause) in which the relative pronoun is the object of a preposition may be formed from a prepositional verb (*She is the person on whom I depend*) but cannot be formed with a *separable* transitive phrasal verb (**It's a mystery out which I cannot figure*). Finally, prepositional verbs generally allow for adverb insertion between the verb and the preposition (*We decided ultimately on Plan B*); separable phrasal verbs do not (**I turned immediately off the light*).

But distinguishing between *inseparable* transitive phrasal verbs and prepositional verbs is a bit trickier, and some do not distinguish between them at all. In both categories (if one accepts that there are two), one can find examples where a good argument could be made for its inclusion in the other. Some apply syntactic tests.

They claim that *inseparable* transitive phrasal verbs (as opposed to prepositional verbs) cannot pass the adverb insertion test. I am not comfortable with this. Some examples, while perhaps not likely among native speakers, do not strike me as undeniably ungrammatical (*He picks mercilessly on his sister*). A somewhat better case can be made for maintaining a distinction between inseparable transitive phrasal verbs and prepositional verbs by applying the relative clause test. Verb + element constructions generally accepted as inseparable transitive phrasal verbs usually sound awkward when plugged into a relative clause (*They are the children after whom I look*), but prepositional verbs usually do not (*The bus for which I am waiting is late*). But a test that is only usually effective is not very precise or reliable. What is awkward is in the ear of the beholder. And, as every ESL teacher who has marked a student essay knows, awkward does not always equate to ungrammatical.

And it gets worse. A thorough examination of ESL textbooks and discussions of phrasal/multiword verbs online reveals widespread disagreement. Some textbooks accept the distinction between intransitive phrasal verbs and prepositional verbs but cannot decide on the category to which several verb + element constructions belong. *Come across* is a good example. Is *come across* a phrasal verb? Is it a prepositional verb? Apparently it's both, depending on which of two textbooks (by the same publisher) you refer to.

Some say nothing of prepositional verbs. Every verb + preposition construction is an inseparable transitive phrasal verb. Others classify all verb + preposition constructions as prepositional verbs. Even then there is disagreement. Some are happy to include these prepositional verbs within the broader classification of phrasal verbs. Some maintain that prepositional verbs are not phrasal verbs at all—that they are one of two members (the other being phrasal verbs) of the multiword verb classification.

Others rely solely on semantic tests. If it's idiomatic, it's an inseparable transitive phrasal verb. If it's not, it's a prepositional verb. This strikes me as a particularly ineffective test. Like awkwardness, the degree to which a lexical item is idiomatic is rather a hard thing to say with any precision—more of a continuum than either/or.

Regarding phrasal prepositional verbs, some combine them with two-word inseparable transitive phrasal verbs in a single category, which would mean,

therefore, that to others who do not recognize the existence of inseparable transitive phrasal verbs, three-word phrasal verbs are not phrasal verbs at all.

And some who maintain that all inseparable transitive verb + preposition constructions are prepositional verbs argue that prepositional verbs should not be included in a book such as this. They are not, strictly speaking, phrasal verbs, they say, but rather multiword verbs of a different sort.

I say this is nonsense. To omit common, useful, and idiomatic vocabulary items from a vocabulary book because of an arcane linguistic quibble would be doing a disservice to ESL students. *Phrasal Verbs* was written for ESL students, not hairsplitting linguists who cannot agree among themselves. Regarding the great prepositional verb debate, I do accept that there is such a thing and that they are distinct from phrasal verbs, yet several inseparable transitive verb + preposition constructions are included in this book. I make no apology for this. It is traditional and quite logical to do so.

A look at books similar to this one—some which are very popular, well-established, and from major publishers—will show that it is traditional to subsume certain common idiomatic inseparable transitive verb + preposition constructions under the umbrella term *phrasal verb*.

It is also logical to do so. ESL students see only this: combinations of verbs with one and sometimes two other words that are sometimes separable, sometimes not, and often idiomatic. Do *deal with* and *do without* meet these criteria? Yes. Are they included in Phrasal Verbs? Yes. That some linguists would classify *deal with* and *do without* as prepositional verbs rather than phrasal verbs is entirely irrelevant to ESL students who rightly care about only two things—meaning and mechanics, i.e., what these verb + element constructions mean and how to use them. Because this is all that ESL students and teachers should focus on, this is all that I focus on in *Phrasal Verbs*.

So what should you say to your students about all of this? Absolutely nothing. To ESL students, these competing taxonomies and the rationale behind them do not matter one bit. It would be foolish and counterproductive to burden them with it. There are only two things that you should discuss with your students: meaning and separability.

Focus on Meaning

Why the focus on meaning? The idiomatic nature of most phrasal verbs is by far the greatest challenge that ESL students face when acquiring these lexical items. *Idiomatic* means that the meaning of a lexical phrase (or, in this case, multiword lexical item) cannot be derived from the sum of its parts. For example, no student could figure out the meaning of *so long*, *make do*, or *by and large* by simply adding the meanings of the individual words. The meanings that attach to these phrases must be memorized. The same is true of phrasal (and some prepositional) verbs. No effort by a student to figure out the meanings of, for example, *come about*, *get off on*, and *call off* by adding the meanings of the individual words would be successful.

So focus on meaning with your students. Call all verb + element constructions phrasal verbs, as I shall henceforth do. Leave the great prepositional verb debate to the linguists in their ivory towers, and do what an ESL teacher should do—help his or her students to become English speakers, not linguistics professors. With one exception, absolutely do not confuse them with any of the linguistic discussion above. The one exception is separability. That's very important and needs to be discussed, but that's as far as you should go. In my experience, even separability tends to take care of itself without much difficulty. Regarding terminology, I occasionally use the term *idiomatic* with my students, but I avoid the term *idiom* because it is also used in reference to expressions such as *kick the bucket* and *raining cats and dogs*. I advise not digressing into this sort of thing with your students. It could give them the impression that phrasal verbs are oddball, quaint, colloquial, and of no great importance.

Rationale Behind Phrasal Verbs

Although this book is intended primarily for high-intermediate to advanced students, ambitious students at lower levels will benefit from it as well. Only some of the explanations at the beginning of each section may prove to be a little beyond them; otherwise, there is nothing to prevent any student from studying the definitions and examples and attempting the exercises.

A vocabulary book should provide mechanics as well as meaning—students want to know more than what a word means; they want to know how to use it correctly. The importance of mechanics is the reason for the emphasis on prepositions that are required when some phrasal verbs are used transitively and for the inclusion of reviews of points of grammar not specific to phrasal verbs. Prepositions are the glue that holds English together, but many students falter when using newly

learned phrasal verbs (prepositional or otherwise) because they do not know that a preposition is also required, or, if they do, they do not know which one. This aspect of the English language is not given the attention it deserves because it is difficult to teach. Though there are patterns to preposition usage, there are no hard-and-fast rules that govern when a preposition, or which preposition, is required, and no teacher likes to say, “You just have to remember.”

The hope of the discussion of points of grammar not specific to phrasal verbs is that combining practice with the phrasal verbs and practice with a variety of grammatical structures will not only increase students’ confidence in their knowledge of the phrasal verbs but will also increase their willingness and ability to use them in a wider range of situations.

There is inevitably a degree of oversimplification. Whether phrasal verb particles are prepositions, adverbs, or both is mentioned only once. No purpose is served by differentiating between them, and the overlap between the two is confusing to students. The concept of transitivity and intransitivity is explained in Unit 1, but no mention is made of it beyond that, and phrasal verbs are not identified as transitive or intransitive. There is no need; it is dictated by logic. There is no indication given to the students that they should classify a particular verb + element construction in any of the categories described above. Less common meanings of some phrasal verbs have not been included. Adverb placement is presented and illustrated in simplified form without discussion of the different types of adverbs; doing so would have gone beyond the scope of this book.

Design of *Phrasal Verbs*

No differentiation is made between adjectives derived from past participles and past participles with adjectival meaning. The adjectival use of past participles (both phrasal and nonphrasal) is a very important aspect of English—something every student of English should be familiar with—yet the dividing line between true adjectives derived from past participles and passive sentences employing past participles with adjectival meanings is ill defined and problematic. Native English speakers regularly use past participles in superficially passive sentences with purely adjectival meaning. Whether the past participles are verbs or actually adjectives is of no concern to the native speaker and is irrelevant to the students of English. Rather than distract students with an unnecessary element of confusion, both are referred to as *participle adjectives* throughout this book.

Phrasal Verbs is composed of 50 units, each containing eight phrasal verbs. The phrasal verbs in each unit were placed in that unit because they are common and useful and because at least one meaning (with some exceptions) of each phrasal verb lends itself to the illustration of a particular point related to phrasal verb use. Not all meanings will, nor could they be expected to, relate to the focus point of the unit. In some cases, a single phrasal verb with more than one meaning will fall into more than one of the categories described above. There is no discussion of this because there is no need for it—meaning and separability are all that matter to students. When two or more meanings are shown, more common meanings are shown first, followed by less common meanings. Often, you will see meanings that by themselves would not have warranted inclusion in *Phrasal Verbs*. The reason for their inclusion is that one or more other meanings of the verb + element construction *did* warrant inclusion. For example, if *fall off* had no other meaning than to fall from a higher place, it might not have been included in this book. However, it is *fall off*'s idiomatic meaning—*sales have fallen off*—that made me include it in *Phrasal Verbs*. Once one meaning is included, all their meanings are included, and why not? It would make no sense to deny useful vocabulary instruction to students because of semantic or linguistic objections that are irrelevant to students. I want *Phrasal Verbs* to be inclusive, not exclusive. Usefulness to students was my sole criterion.

The choice of verbs presented in *Phrasal Verbs* is, of course, arbitrary, but all are—in my estimation—common. Any teacher using this book could and probably will come up with others that he or she feels should have been included. And they might have been if the book were longer. Four hundred seemed like a reasonable number, but there are hundreds more that could be classified as common.

How many phrasal verbs are there? Lists of more than 2,000 are not uncommon. One popular dictionary of phrasal verbs contains 6,000 phrasal verbs. And the number keeps growing. Phrasal verbs are a highly productive component of the English lexicon, with new phrasal verbs being coined continually (*geek out, weird out, veg out, zone out, wuss out, lawyer up*).

The exercises in this book are intended to reinforce meaning and mechanics. A cloze (fill in the blank) exercise always comes first, followed by exercises focusing on sentence structure and the topic discussed at the beginning of the section. Last are exercises that ask students to answer questions or write original sentences.

There is a good deal of review built into this book. Each unit contains one and sometimes two exercises requiring students to refer back to a previous unit in order to review a phrasal verb, participle adjective, or noun. When a phrasal verb has two or more meanings, it is intentional that no help is provided to students in determining which meaning applies. The students have to review them all and figure it out for themselves.

Finally, I have tried in this book to imitate the form and content of everyday English. If occasionally the register and subject matter of some examples and exercises seem not quite right for formal discourse, this is deliberate. Students need to learn formal English, of course, but since most people speak informally most of the time, students need to gain familiarity with the syntax, usage, and content of the informal English they read and hear every day at work, at school, at home, and in popular entertainment.

To the Student

Phrasal verbs are combinations of ordinary verbs, like *put*, *take*, *come*, and *go*, and words like *in*, *out*, *on*, and *off*. In other situations, the words like *in*, *out*, *on*, and *off* are called *prepositions* and *adverbs*, but in phrasal verbs we call them *particles* because they are not doing the job of prepositions and adverbs (but sometimes we also use prepositions with phrasal verbs). Phrasal verbs are a very important part of English. Every student of English needs a basic understanding of common phrasal verbs and also common nouns and adjectives that are made from phrasal verbs.

Most phrasal verbs are not informal, slang, or improper for educated speech or formal writing. Exactly the opposite is true—most phrasal verbs are acceptable at all levels of spoken or written English. In fact, for many of the phrasal verbs in this book, there is no alternative to the phrasal verb—there is no other way to say it.

However, a few phrasal verbs in this book are identified as informal, and it is better not to use them in serious, formal speech or in writing. But these informal phrasal verbs are still important because they are very common in everyday informal speech and writing.

Some phrasal verbs are very easy to understand. For example, it is not difficult to understand *cut off* or *eat up* because their meanings are obvious. But many phrasal verbs are *idiomatic*. Idiomatic means that there is no way to know what the verb and particle mean together by knowing what the verb and particle mean separately. For example, every beginner-level student learns what *call*, *run*, *off*, and *out* mean, but that does not help the student to know that *call off* means *cancel* or that *run out* means *use all of something*.

Each unit of this book starts with an introduction, an explanation of something important about phrasal verbs or about general grammar as it is used with phrasal verbs. Then eight phrasal verbs and an explanation of each important meaning of each phrasal verb are presented, along with one or more example sentences for each meaning. Following that are several exercises to help you understand and remember what the phrasal verbs mean and how to use them in a sentence. And

like real conversation, questions asked with *I* or *we* are answered with *you*, and questions asked with *you* are answered with *I* or *we*.

And because there is a lot to learn in this book, there is a lot of review to help you learn it. Every phrasal verb is reviewed at least twice later in the book. The more idiomatic phrasal verbs are reviewed more often, and the more important meanings of phrasal verbs with several meanings are reviewed more often.

Finally, there is an explanation of the different types of phrasal verbs in Unit 1 and more discussions of grammar in later units. These are important, but never forget what the most important thing is—meaning. The higher you go in your English-language studies, the more important vocabulary becomes. Which student will have an easier time understanding what he or she hears and reads and an easier time expressing his other thoughts when speaking or writing—a student with a small vocabulary and excellent grammar, or a student with a wide vocabulary and less than excellent grammar? You know the answer, so remember: focus on meaning, and the grammar will follow.

Terms, Abbreviations, and Symbols Used in This Textbook

- verb* *Verb* refers to the verb part of a phrasal verb—in other words, the phrasal verb minus the particle. In the phrasal verb *pull over*, *pull* is the verb and *over* is the particle.
- particle* The adverbs and prepositions in phrasal verbs are both called *particles* in this book. Many particles are adverbs and prepositions (prepositional adverbs), and it can be very difficult and confusing to figure out if a particle in a particular phrasal verb is one or the other. Fortunately, this is almost never important to the student, so it is a lot easier to simply call them both particles.
- p.v.* phrasal verb
- n.* a noun made from a phrasal verb
- part.adj.* participle adjective—a past participle of a phrasal verb used as an adjective
- ~~*put on it*~~ When words or sentences have a line through them, it means that they are incorrect.
- ... Three dots between the verb and the particle means that the phrasal verb is *separable*: the object of the phrasal verb can be placed between the verb and the particle.

Barron's ESL Proficiency Series: Phrasal Verbs provides comprehensive exercises online for an optimal learning experience. Visit the Barron's Online Learning Hub:

online.barronsbooks.com




Register now and begin your language-learning journey with Barron's!

Unit 1

Definition of Phrasal Verbs, Separable/Inseparable, and Transitive/Intransitive

What are phrasal verbs? Not everyone agrees on the exact definition, but here is a simplified explanation that will help you as you study *Phrasal Verbs*.

separable		inseparable			
transitive	transitive three-word	intransitive	transitive with optional preposition	transitive three-word	transitive
verb + particle	verb + particle + preposition	verb + particle	verb + particle + optional preposition	verb + particle + preposition	verb + preposition
<i>He put on his shoes.</i> <i>He put his shoes on.</i> <i>He put them on.</i>	<i>He screwed me out of \$100.</i>	<i>The students lined up.</i>	<i>She dropped out.</i> <i>She dropped out of school.</i>	<i>I came up with a plan.</i>	<i>She fell for his lies.</i>
These are what most people	A small number of		A preposition		

think of when they think of phrasal verbs, but as you can see, there are other types. A small number of separable verb + particle combinations are permanently separated.	three-word verbs are separable because they must have two objects. 	is used to make some intransitive phrasal verbs transitive. Then they are like three-word phrasal verbs except that three-word phrasal verbs cannot be used without a preposition—they have no intransitive meaning.  	
Most teachers call these phrasal verbs, but some teachers don't agree that verbs that end with prepositions are phrasal verbs. They call them prepositional verbs. In this book, I call them phrasal verbs. This is not something students should worry about. What is <i>much</i> more important is learning what they mean.			
Although particles may look like prepositions or adverbs, in phrasal verbs they do not function as prepositions or adverbs, and for that reason, they are called particles. (However, sometimes you will see them called prepositions in other books about phrasal verbs.)			
Because many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning, many of the phrasal verbs in this book fall into more than one of the categories described above. Also, as you study this book, you will see that there are some variations and exceptions to what I have explained here. Don't worry about trying to remember all this grammar. Please take my advice: meaning is more important than			

grammar! As you learn what these phrasal verbs mean by reading the examples and doing the exercises, little by little you will learn the grammar too.

Transitive/intransitive

When a verb requires an object, we say the verb is *transitive*:

*I **bought** a car.*

verb object

When a verb does not need an object, we say the verb is *intransitive*:

*His mother **died**.*

verb

Many verbs can be both transitive and intransitive, depending on how they are used:

*We **ate**.*

verb

*We **ate** the pizza.*

verb object

Separable phrasal verbs

The verb and particle of some phrasal verbs can be *separated* by an object. When this is possible, we say that the phrasal verb is *separable*. When the verb and particle cannot be separated, we say that the phrasal verb is *inseparable*. Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to look at a phrasal verb and always know whether it is separable or inseparable.

When the object of a phrasal verb is a noun, it is (usually) optional whether the object is placed between the verb and the particle or placed after the particle. Both the sentences below are correct:

*I **took** my shoes **off**.*

*I **took off** my shoes.*

However, when an object pronoun (*me, you, him, her, it, us, or them*) is used instead of a noun, the pronoun must be placed between the verb and the particle:

*I **took** them **off**.*

~~*I **took off** them.*~~

Separating a phrasal verb is usually optional, but a small number of two-word phrasal verbs must always be separated:

*He had to **do** his homework **over**.*

~~*He had to **do over** his homework.*~~

Also, sometimes a two-word separable phrasal verb must be separated when it has two objects:

*She **put** a blanket **on**.*

*She **put on** a blanket.*

*She **put** a blanket **on** the bed.*

~~*She **put on** a blanket the bed.*~~

And a small number of three-word verbs are separable because they always require two objects:

*My friend **talked** me **out of** it.*

Inseparable phrasal verbs

Intransitive phrasal verbs are always inseparable because they cannot have an object:

*The airplane **took off**. (Take off has meanings that are transitive and intransitive.)*

Some phrasal verbs are both intransitive and, when a preposition is added, transitive:

*The criminals **broke out**.*

*The criminals **broke out of** jail.*

Three-word verbs are usually inseparable:

*I'm **looking forward to** the party.*

Verbs + preposition combinations are always inseparable:

*He **ran into** a tree.*

~~*He **ran** a tree **into**.*~~

In *Phrasal Verbs*, separable phrasal verbs have three dots (. . .) between the verb and the particle. Transitive/intransitive is not shown because this is obvious from the meaning and from the examples.

All of this might seem confusing. Remember, meaning is more important than grammar. Focus on meaning, and the grammar will follow.

Infinitive: cheer up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cheer up & cheers up	cheering up	cheered up	cheered up

1. **cheer . . . up** *p.v.* When people **cheer up**, they stop being unhappy or depressed and become happier and more cheerful. When you try to **cheer** people **up**, you try to make them less unhappy or depressed and more cheerful. When you say “**cheer up**” to people, you are encouraging them to be less unhappy or depressed and to be more cheerful.

*I was very worried when I heard my mother was sick, but I **cheered up** later when the doctor said it wasn't serious.*

*Larry is always in a bad mood. I try to **cheer** him **up**, but nothing works.*

*Hey, **cheer up**. Everything is going to be OK.*

Infinitive: figure out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
figure out & figures out	figuring out	figured out	figured out

1. **figure . . . out** *p.v.* [the object can be a noun or a noun clause] When you **figure out** something, such as the answer to a question, the solution to a problem, or why a person is a certain way or acts a certain way, you think about and succeed in understanding it.

*Joe's so hostile all the time. I can't **figure him out**.*

*I looked everywhere for my keys, but I couldn't **figure out** where I put them.*

Infinitive: give back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give back & gives back	giving back	gave back	given back

1. **give . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When you return something to someone, you **give** it **back**.

*Can I use your pen? I'll **give** it **back** after the test.*

*Timmy, **give** that toy **back** to your sister right now!*

Infinitive: pass away

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pass away & passes away	passing away	passed away	passed away

1. **pass away** *p.v.* When people die, they **pass away**.

*After my husband **passed away**, I went to live with my sister in Florida.*

*I was sorry to hear that Maria's mother **passed away**.*

Infinitive: put on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put on & puts on	putting on	put on	put on

1. **put . . . on** *p.v.* When you place something on your body or apply something to your body, you **put** it **on**.

*I **put on** my new dress before going to the party.*

*Erik forgot to **put** suntan lotion **on**, and now he has a bad sunburn.*

2. **put . . . on** *p.v.* When you place something on another surface or apply something to another surface, you **put** it **on**.

*I **put** the book **on** the table.*

*Jerry **put** too much fertilizer **on** his lawn, and now he has to cut it twice a week.*

3. **put . . . on** *p.v.* When you attach or affix something to another thing, you **put** it **on**.

*The Wilsons **put** a new roof **on** their house last year.*

*I told the tailor to **put** red buttons **on** the dress he's making for me.*

4. **put . . . on** *p.v.* When you **put on** weight, you gain weight.

*Did you see Mike? He's **put on** so much weight that I didn't recognize him.*

*I need to go on a diet. I've been **putting** a lot of weight **on** lately.*

5. **put . . . on** *p.v.* When you organize or perform something for other people's entertainment, such as a play or a concert, you **put** it **on**.

*That opera hasn't been **put on** for more than 200 years.*

*The club **put** a show **on** to raise money for the party.*

6. **put . . . on** *p.v. [informal, always separated unless passive]* When you **put** people **on**, you kid or tease them.

*You won the lottery? You're **putting** me **on**!*

*Don't **put** me **on**—tell me the truth.*

put-on *n.* Something done with the intention of fooling or deceiving people is a **put-on**.

*He didn't really win the lottery. It was all a big **put-on** to impress his girlfriend.*

Infinitive: run into			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run into & runs into	running into	ran into	run into

1. **run into** *p.v.* When you are driving and hit another vehicle or something near the road, such as a tree or a telephone pole, you **run into** it.

*Ali was driving too fast, and he **ran into** a telephone pole.*

*I was **run into** by a truck.*

2. **run into** *p.v.* When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you **run into** them. **Bump into** is the same as **run into**.

*We **ran into** Karen and her new boyfriend at the supermarket yesterday.*

*I owe Frank \$300, so I hope I don't **run into** him.*

3. **run into** *p.v.* When you unexpectedly encounter difficulties or problems, you **run into** them.

*I thought it would be easy to fix my car, but I've been **running into** problems.*

*Janice **ran into** one problem after another at work today.*

4. **run into** *p.v.* When the total of something grows to a large amount or number, it **runs into** that amount or number.

*If you fixed everything on that old car that needs fixing, it would **run into** thousands of dollars.*

*The number of starving people in the country **ran into** millions.*

Infinitive: show up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
show up & shows	showing up	showed up	shown up

up

1. **show up** (at) *p.v.* When you appear somewhere, you **show up** or **show up** at that place. **Turn up** is similar to **show up**.

*I was supposed to meet my sister for lunch, but she hasn't **shown up** yet.*

*Do you think Michael will **show up** at the party?*

2. **show up** *p.v.* When something appears or becomes visible, it **shows up**.

*It's hard to photograph polar bears because they don't **show up** well against the snow.*

*The spots won't **show up** until the last stages of the disease.*

Infinitive: take off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take off & takes off	taking off	took off	taken off

1. **take . . . off** *p.v.* When you remove something from your body, you **take it off**.

*I was so tired when I got home that I **took** my clothes **off** and went straight to bed.*

***Take off** your shoes. You're getting mud on the carpet.*

2. **take . . . off** *p.v.* When you remove something from a surface, you **take it off**.

*I **took** the book **off** the table.*

*You need to **take** the old wax **off** the floor before you wax it again.*

3. **take . . . off** *p.v.* When you remove something from something it is attached or affixed to, you **take it off**.

*Chuck always **takes** the skin **off** chicken before he cooks it.*

*After Jane **took** the flat tire **off** her car, she put on the spare tire.*

4. **take . . . off** *p.v.* When you **take** time **off** from work or study, you do something different, instead of working or studying.

*I can't work tomorrow. I have to **take** the day **off** for some tests at the hospital.*

*Our company always lets us **take** the week between Christmas and New Year's Day **off**.*

5. **take off** *p.v.* When an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air, it **takes off**.

*Our plane **took off** an hour late because of the snow.*

*Put on your seat belt. We're **taking off** now.*

takeoff *n.* **Takeoff** is when an airplane leaves the ground and flies up into the air.

*The **takeoff** was delayed because of the snow.*

6. **take off** *p.v.* When a business or other organized activity becomes very successful, it **takes off**.

*The new restaurant's business is **taking off** because it got a good review in the newspaper.*

*If this business **takes off**, we could make a lot of money.*

7. **take off** *p.v. [informal]* When you leave suddenly or quickly, you **take off**.

*After he found out the FBI was looking for him, he **took off** in a hurry.*

*This party's boring—let's **take off**.*

8. **take . . . off** *p.v.* When you reduce the price of something that is for sale by a certain amount, you **take** that amount **off** the price.

*The sign in the store window said, "Every Monday **take** 10 percent **off** all marked prices."*

*The car dealer **took** \$2,000 **off** the list price.*

PRACTICE

1-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

Example: Jim married Sarah five years after his first wife _____
passed away_____.

1. After the police arrived, we _____ quickly.
2. Sales of air conditioners really _____ when the temperature got over 100 degrees last summer.
3. Megan _____ a lot of weight _____ when she was pregnant.
4. I'm going to install a new program tonight, and I hope I don't _____ any problems.
5. The invisible ink _____ only under ultraviolet light.
6. I was expecting 100 people at the party, but only around 50 _____.
7. Linda's first husband _____ three years ago, and she remarried a year later.
8. I _____ wax _____ on my car to protect the paint.
9. My cousin is so strange that even his mother can't _____ him _____.
10. I don't feel well. I think I'll _____ tomorrow _____ and stay home.
11. Be careful! You almost _____ that truck back there.
12. My son always forgets to _____ his coat before he goes outside.
13. I was surprised when our plane _____ on time.
14. _____ ! It's not as bad as it seems.

15. Paul finally _____ my CDs _____ after I asked him for them about a million times.
16. I'm not going to the party because I don't want to _____ Kevin.
17. The real estate agent said that we were asking too much for our house and that we should _____ at least \$10,000 _____ the price.
18. _____ those muddy shoes before you come inside.
19. Sending my son to Stanford University and my daughter to Yale University is going to _____ a lot of money.
20. _____ the ornaments _____ the Christmas tree isn't as much fun as putting them on.
21. You can't be serious—you're _____ me _____!
22. Don't forget to _____ a stamp _____ that letter before you mail it.
23. A special performance of *The Nutcracker* was _____ at the children's hospital.
24. The maid _____ the dirty sheets _____ the bed.

1-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

Example: I can't figure out. (the answer, it)

I can't figure out the answer.

I can't figure the answer out.

I can't figure it out.

1. I finally *figured out*. (the instructions, them)
2. *Give back* when you are finished. (my tools, them)
3. She *put on*. (her slippers, them)
4. I *took off*. (my shoes, them)

5. The hurricane *took off*. (the roof, it)

1-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

Example: I can't understand where my wallet is. What can't I do?

You can't figure out where your wallet is.

1. A lot of guests didn't come to the wedding. What didn't a lot of guests do?
2. Raul thought about the math problem, and he knows the answer now. What did Raul do?
3. The jet is leaving the ground and flying into the air. What is the jet doing?
4. In Question 3, what would you call what the airplane did?
5. Mark's wife died. What happened to Mark's wife?
6. We left Bob's house quickly. What did we do?
7. I met Uncle John at the baseball game today. What did I do today?
8. Sally returned Frank's camera. What did Sally do?
9. You almost hit a tree while you were driving your car. What did you almost do?
10. Mr. Taylor attached his name to his mailbox. What did Mr. Taylor do?
11. I have to remove the flat tire from my car. What do I have to do?
12. We talked about our problem, and then we solved it.
13. I'm removing the dirty dishes from the table. What am I doing?
14. Sales of the company's new product were very successful. What did sales of the company's new product do?
15. Francesca is sad today. I'm going to try to make her happy. What am I going to try to do to Francesca?

16. Susie's blue eyes aren't visible in this photo. What don't Susie's eyes do in this photo?
17. Jim always forgets to place salt and pepper on the table. What does Jim always do?
18. Bill didn't go to work last Friday. What did Bill do?

Unit 2

Phrasal Verbs and *Do, Does, and Did*

Like ordinary verbs, phrasal verbs form negatives and questions with *do, does, and did*.

Present tense questions

In the present tense, questions are formed with *do* (except when the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing):

*Why do I always **fall for** losers?*

*Do you sometimes **doze off** in class?*

*Do we ever **give in** to pressure?*

*How do these bottle tops **come off**?*

When the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing, *does* is used. Remember that the *-s* form of the verb is not used in questions:

*Does this welding torch **throw** sparks **up** into the air?*

Present tense negatives

In the present tense, negatives are formed with *do not* or *don't* (except when the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing):

*I used to **doze off** while driving, but I don't anymore.*

*I think he has the flu because people don't usually **throw up** when they have a cold.*

*We don't usually **fall for** crazy stories like that.*

When the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing, *does not* or *doesn't* is used. Remember that the *-s* form of the verb is not used in negatives:

*If Mark doesn't **pull through**, his children will not have a father.*

Past tense questions

In the past tense, questions are formed with *did*. Remember to use the infinitive form of the verb:

*I'm so embarrassed. Why did I **fall for** his lies?*

*Did the patient **pull through**?*

*How many times did he **throw up**?*

*Did we **give in** to their demands?*

*Did they **hear about** the explorer who was eaten by piranhas?*

Past tense negatives

In the past tense, negatives are formed with *did not* or *didn't*. Remember to use the infinitive form of the verb:

*I was really sick, but I didn't **throw up**.*

*You didn't **fall for** that nonsense, I hope.*

*He pulled and pulled, but the bowling ball did not **come off**.*

*I'm sorry. We tried everything, but she didn't **pull through**.*

Infinitive: build up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
build up & builds up	building up	built up	built up

1. **build up** *p.v.* When a (usually unwanted) substance, such as mud, dirt, snow, corrosion, etc., **builds up** on a surface or in a place or area, it gradually accumulates or increases on that surface or in that place or area.

*The temperature was just above freezing, so the snow **didn't build up**.*

*Trash is **building up** in the alley behind my house.*

2. **build . . . up** *p.v.* When people gradually increase the number or quantity of something, they **build it up**.

*The general **built up** his forces before launching the attack.*

*The company is **building up** its cash reserves in case there is another recession.*

buildup *n.* An increase in the number or quantity of something is a **buildup**.

*During the Cold War, there was a huge **buildup** of nuclear weapons.*

3. **build . . . up** *p.v.* When people gradually increase the strength or size of an organization, system, society, or business, etc., they **build it up**.

Over 12 years, I **built** my restaurant chain **up** from one location to more than 2,000.

We're going to keep **building** the campaign **up** until election day.

built up *part.adj.* An area where there is a concentration of buildings is **built up**.

The tornado didn't hit the **built up** area of the city, so there was little damage.

Infinitive: come off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come off & comes off	coming off	came off	come off

1. **come off** *p.v.* When something **comes off**, it becomes detached from what it was attached or fastened to.

*Be careful with this old book. The cover's **coming off**.*

*That paint won't **come off** your hands unless you use turpentine.*

2. **come off** *p.v.* When an event **comes off**, it is successful.

*The party **came off** well. Everyone had a lot of fun.*

*The attack didn't **come off** the way the general planned it.*

3. **come off** *p.v.* When you say "**Come off** it" to people, you are saying that you think something they have said is untrue or foolish.

*It's 2:00 A.M., you come home smelling like beer, and you say you were working late at the office? Oh, **come off** it!*

Infinitive: doze off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
doze off & dozes off	dozing off	dozed off	dozed off

1. **doze off** *p.v.* When you fall into a light sleep, often at an inappropriate time, you **doze off**.
Doze off is the same as **nod off**.

*I went to a movie last night, but it was so boring I **dozed off**.*

*If I eat a big lunch, I'm sure to **doze off** at my desk.*

Infinitive: fall for

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall for & falls for	falling for	fell for	fallen for

1. **fall for** *p.v.* When someone successfully tricks or deceives you, you **fall for** the trick or deception or you **fall for** it.

*I feel like an idiot. The salesman promised me it was a real diamond, not glass, and I **fell for** it.*

*Your girlfriend told you that the guy she was dancing with at the party was her brother? How could you **fall for** a story like that?*

2. **fall for** *p.v.* When you suddenly feel a strong attraction to someone or something, you **fall for** that person or thing.

*Jim met Sam's sister last week, and now he calls her every day. I guess he really **fell for** her in a big way.*

*When I saw this house, I **fell for** it immediately, and I made an offer the same day.*

Infinitive: give in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give in & gives in	giving in	gave in	given in

1. **give in** (to) *p.v.* When someone pressures or forces you to do something or allow something even though you do not want to, you **give in** or **give in** to their request or demand.

*My son drove me crazy asking me to buy him a new bicycle, and I finally **gave in**.*

*The strike lasted for eight months, but the company never **gave in** to the workers' demands.*

Infinitive: iron out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
iron out & irons out	ironing out	ironed out	ironed out

1. **iron . . . out** *p.v.* When people **iron out** problems or difficulties, they find a way to solve or overcome them.

*We had some problems with our teenage son, but we **ironed them out**, and now everything is OK.*

*I still haven't **ironed** all the bugs **out** of our new system.*

ironed out *part.adj.* When people **iron out** problems or difficulties, the problems or difficulties are **ironed out**.

*We had to delay the first test flight of the new jet. There are still some problems that aren't **ironed out** yet.*

Infinitive: pull through

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pull through & pulls through	pulling through	pulled through	pulled through

1. **pull through** *p.v.* When you recover from a serious illness or injury, you **pull through**.

*The doctor didn't think the patient's chances were very good, but he **pulled through**.*

*Erik is very sick, but he's young and strong, so I'm sure he'll **pull through**.*

Infinitive: throw up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
throw up & throws up	throwing up	threw up	thrown up

1. **throw up** *p.v.* When people **throw up**, they vomit.

*Alex was so sick that he **threw up** all over my shoes.*

*I feel like I'm going to **throw up**.*

2. **throw . . . up** *p.v.* When something causes small particles of dirt, dust, or a liquid to rise into the air, it **throws** them **up**.

*Be careful with that chain saw—it'll **throw** sawdust **up** in your eyes.*

*Don't stand too close to the fire. It's **throwing up** sparks.*

PRACTICE

2-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Heather calls Tom every day. I have a feeling she's _____ him.
2. I went to the shoe repair guy because the heel _____ my shoe.
3. I _____ ten minutes after the movie started, and I missed the whole thing.
4. The bride drank too much champagne at her wedding reception, and she _____ all over her new husband.
5. I needed a car to go to the party, so I asked my father for his car so I could go to the library to study, and he _____ it.
6. Uncle Fred's really sick. If he _____, it'll be a miracle.
7. My wife and I are having problems, but we're trying to _____ things _____.
8. The surprise party _____ perfectly.
9. I don't care if you beg me all night—I'm not going to _____!
10. The plane crashed after ice _____ on its wings.
11. Don't get close to the fire. It's _____ ashes and sparks.
12. Do you really expect me to believe a crazy story like that? _____ it!
13. The clinic needs to _____ its supply of medicines in case there is another epidemic.

2-2. On a separate piece of paper, change the sentences to questions using *do*, *does*, or *did*.

Example: Francisco usually *dozes off* after dinner.

Does Francisco usually doze off after dinner?

1. The sick boy *threw up*.
2. Rosa *falls* for every boy she meets.
3. The tops *come off* easily.
4. They *ironed* the bugs *out*.

5. Mud *builds up* on the bottom of the lake every year.

2-3. On a separate piece of paper, change the sentences to negatives using *do not* or *don't*, *does not* or *doesn't*, or *did not* or *didn't*.

Example: Francisco *dozes off* after dinner.

Francisco *doesn't* doze off after dinner.

1. I always *give in* to her demands.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Taylor *fell for* the salesman's promises.
3. These machines *throw up* sparks.
4. The patient *pulled through*.
5. The plot *came off* as planned.

2-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Mary and Tom talked about their problems, and now everything is OK. What did they do to their problems?
2. When Dan saw that new motorcycle, he decided he had to buy it no matter how much it cost. How did Dan feel about the motorcycle?
3. The students are so tired that they are starting to sleep in class. What are the students doing?
4. Corrosion is accumulating on my car battery terminals. What is corrosion doing on my car battery terminals?
5. The meeting didn't happen the way I planned it. What didn't the meeting do?
6. You had an accident after one of the wheels separated from your car. Why did you have an accident?
7. You can ask a thousand times if you want to, but I'm not agreeing to your demands. What am I not doing to your demands?
8. The company plans to increase its advertising campaign until Christmas. What does the company plan to do to its advertising campaign?
9. My cousin made a lot of promises to me, and I believed them. How did I react to her promises?

10. Dr. Wood said Ted's disease is very serious, and she doesn't think there's much hope that he'll recover. What doesn't Dr. Wood think?
11. Timmy is very sick, and he was vomiting all night. What was Timmy doing all night?

2-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from **Unit 1**. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review **Unit 1**.

cheer up	give back	put on	show up
figure out	pass away	run into	take off

1. Look what time it is! We have to be at work in fifteen minutes. We'd better _____ right now.
2. I waited for Joe for three hours, but he never _____.
3. The maid _____ clean sheets _____ the bed.
4. Tom is always in a bad mood in the morning, but he _____ after he has a cup of coffee.
5. My husband is very ill. After he _____, I'll sell the house and move to California.
6. That's mine! _____ it _____ right now or I'm telling Mom!
7. They were injured when they _____ a truck.
8. The mechanic can't _____ what the problem is with my car.

Unit 3

Three-Word Phrasal Verbs

Phrasal verbs are not always composed of two words. Three-word phrasal verbs are composed of a verb, a particle (the second word), and a preposition (the third word). All three-word phrasal verbs are transitive (with one exception).

Most three-word phrasal verbs are inseparable:

*It's been a long day, I know, but do you **feel up to** playing tennis after dinner?
It was nice to meet you, and I **look forward to** seeing you again.*

A small number of three-word phrasal verbs are separable because they require two objects:

*Mr. Baker tried to **screw** his ex-wife **out of** her share of the lottery prize.*

One useful three-word phrasal verb is unique. *Get over with* is always separated, but it is intransitive:

*Everyone in Sofia's class must make a presentation to the class. Sofia is very nervous about it, so she wants to go first so she can **get it over with** and relax.*

Infinitive: feel up to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
feel up to & feels up to	feeling up to	felt up to	feel up to

1. **feel up to p.v.** When you **feel up to** doing something, you have the confidence or energy to do it.

*I'm sorry to cancel, but I just don't **feel up to** going dancing tonight.
The top of the mountain is only 1,000 feet away—do you **feel up to** it?*

Infinitive: get over with

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
---------------	-----------	------------	-----------------

get over with & gets over with	getting over with	got over with	gotten over with
--------------------------------	-------------------	---------------	------------------

1. **get . . . over with** *p.v. [always separated]* When you want to **get** something **over with**, it is because it is something unpleasant that you want to finish so that you can stop worrying about it or dreading it.

*Let's fix both cavities today, doctor. I just want to **get it over with**.*

*I think it's better to **get** the exam **over with** in the first period rather than to be nervous about it all day long.*

Infinitive: go along with			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go along with & goes along with	going along with	went along with	gone along with

1. **go along with** *p.v.* When you agree with people or agree with what they are saying, you **go along with** them.

*I understand your concern, Linda, but I have to **go along with** Maria on this matter.*

*What's my opinion? I **go along with** Omar.*

2. **go along with** *p.v.* When you obey a rule or follow a decision, you **go along with** it.

*Mrs. Taylor wasn't happy about the committee's decision, but she **went along with** it anyway.*

*I don't care what the boss says—I'm not **going along with** any changes that will mean longer hours for less money.*

Infinitive: go in for			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go in for & goes in for	going in for	went in for	gone in for

1. **go in for** *p.v.* When you **go in for** a certain activity, you like it and do it regularly.

*Bryan really **goes in for** any kind of outdoor activity.*

*When I was a kid I **went in for** football, but I don't watch it much anymore.*

Infinitive: look forward to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look forward to & looks forward to	looking forward to	looked forward to	looked forward to

1. **look forward to** *p.v.* When you **look forward to** something or **look forward to** doing something, you are excited about something in the future because you enjoy it or because it will benefit you in some way.

*It's been four years since my brother went overseas. I'm **looking forward to** seeing him again.*

*I **look forward to** an opportunity to meet with you in person.*

Infinitive: put up with			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put up with & puts up with	putting up with	put up with	put up with

1. **put up with** *p.v.* When you **put up with** something you do not like or are not happy about, you accept it and do not try to change it.

*Her neighbors have loud parties every night, but she **doesn't complain**. She just **puts up with** it.*

*My husband said, "I've **put up with** your brother long enough!"*

Infinitive: screw out of			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
screw out of & screws out of	screwing out of	screwed out of	screwed out of

1. **screw . . . out of** *p.v. [informal]* When you get money or something valuable from people in a dishonest way, you **screw them out of** it.

*The criminal **screwed** me **out of** my life savings.*

*Their dishonest son-in-law **screwed** them **out of** thousands of dollars.*

Infinitive: talk down to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
talk down to & talks down to	talking down to	talked down to	talked down to

1. **talk down to** *p.v.* When you **talk down to** people, you use a tone of voice or an attitude that shows that you think they are less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

*I was furious about the way he **talked down to** me!*

*Bob hates Jane because of the way she **talks down to** him.*

PRACTICE

3-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- Thanks for inviting me, but I don't _____ karaoke.
- I couldn't _____ my husband's smoking any longer. I told him to choose between cigarettes or me.
- I'm sorry, but I think your plan is a big mistake, and I can't _____ it.
- Even though Mr. Watson is the richest man in town, he never _____ people.
- It's been only two weeks since the tragedy. I'm sure they don't _____ going to the party.
- If that crook thinks he's going to _____ me \$500, he's crazy!
- The whole family's going to be here for Thanksgiving, and Mom is really _____ it.
- I volunteered to give my speech first just so I could _____ it _____.
- Even if you don't like the rules, you have to _____ them.

3-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Jerry's brother-in-law talks to him like he's an idiot. How does Jerry's brother-in-law talk to Jerry?
2. Nicole can't work tomorrow, and she's nervous about telling her boss. What should Nicole do?
3. They paid \$5,000 too much for their house because the salesman lied to them. What did the salesman do to them?
4. Sally's going to fly in an airplane for the first time, and she's very excited about it. How does Sally feel about flying in an airplane?
5. The cold weather in Minneapolis is terrible, but you can't move or change the weather. What do you have to do?
6. Erik just got out of the hospital, and he doesn't feel strong enough to go back to work. Why can't Erik go back to work?
7. I thought the new policy was an excellent idea, and I agreed with it 100 percent. How did I feel about the new policy?

3-3. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from Unit 2. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review Unit 2.

build up

doze off

give in

pull through

come off

fall for

iron out

throw up

1. Miguel told me he didn't steal my TV, but I didn't _____ his lies.
2. I told the doctor that I vomited two times yesterday, and she said that if I _____ twice, I should not go to work.
3. After a few weeks, the gold on this cheap jewelry starts to _____.
4. My son kept asking me to buy him a new bicycle, and I finally _____.
5. We still have to _____ some bugs _____ before we can switch over to the new system.

6. After Betty's temperature got up to 105 degrees, we started to think she might not _____.

7. The meeting was so boring that I _____.

8. Larry was very sick. The doctor says he must _____ his strength before he can go back to work.

Unit 4

Present and Past Continuous Phrasal Verbs

As with one-word verbs, phrasal verbs can normally be made *continuous* (also called *progressive*) by using the *present participle* (the *-ing*) form of the verb and a form of *be*:

*These Christmas candles are **giving off** a beautiful scent.*

*I've been **going after** my master's degree for nearly five years.*

*Which dictionary is he **looking up** the words in?*

*I don't understand you. What are you **getting at**?*

*The newspaper is **calling for** an investigation into political corruption.*

*You've been exercising for five hours. Aren't you **going overboard**?*

*They should be **wrapping** the meeting **up** in a few minutes.*

*Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry I'm **putting** you **to** so much trouble.*

Infinitive: call for

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
call for & calls for	calling for	called for	called for

1. **call for** p.v. When you **call for** people, you go where they live, usually with the intention of going to another place together. When you **call for** a parcel, package, etc., you go to get it at the place where it has been delivered and is waiting for you.

*I'll **call for** you at 7:00, and then we'll take a taxi to the concert.*

*Your package will be kept at the Post Office until you **call for** it.*

2. **call for** p.v. When people **call for** an action, they say that the action is needed. When people **call for** a quality, they say that the quality is needed.

*After the president won the election with 99 percent of the vote, the opposition party **called for** an investigation.*

*Teaching special needs children is not easy. It **calls for** a lot of patience.*

3. **call for** *p.v.* When people say that a plan, recipe, formula, situation, etc., **calls for** a substance or object, they mean that that substance or object is appropriate or required.

*This recipe **calls for** four eggs, but I always put five in.*

*My wife just got a big raise and a promotion. This **calls for** a celebration.*

Infinitive: get at

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get at & gets at	getting at	got at	gotten/got at

1. **get at** *p.v.* When people **get at** something, they try to make a point or express an opinion, perhaps with difficulty or perhaps indirectly, because they know the person listening will not like what he or she is hearing.

*I don't understand what you're saying about my mother coming to live in our spare bedroom. What are you **getting at**?*

*What I'm **getting at** is that I think your mother should live with your sister and not us.*

Infinitive: give off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give off & gives off	giving off	gave off	given off

1. **give off** *p.v.* When a substance, process, or object **gives off** heat, light, gas, smoke, sound, or odor into the air, etc., it produces it or releases it into the air.

*Be careful. This chemical **gives off** a toxic gas if it comes into contact with water.*

*Fluorescent bulbs **give off** much less heat than incandescent bulbs.*

Infinitive: go after

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go after & goes after	going after	went after	gone after

1. **go after** *p.v.* When you chase and try to physically stop or attack people, you **go after** them.

*A policeman saw him stealing the car and **went after** him.*

*Captain Morgan was ordered to **go after** the enemy soldiers.*

2. **go after** *p.v.* When law enforcement officials try to prosecute people through a legal procedure, they **go after** them.

*Federal prosecutors are now **going after** the top drug dealers.*

*The senator introduced a bill designed to **go after** deadbeat dads.*

3. **go after** *p.v.* When a business tries to increase its profits by trying to increase its market share or its number of customers, it **goes after** them.

*The tobacco company denied **going after** the teenage market.*

*The CEO said he wanted to **go after** new customers in China.*

4. **go after** *p.v.* When you **go after** something, you try to obtain it even though it may be difficult to do.

*Sofia **went after** a degree in accounting.*

*Todd trained for a year before **going after** the record in the 100-yard dash.*

Infinitive: go overboard

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go overboard & goes overboard	going overboard	went overboard	gone overboard

1. **go overboard** *p.v.* When people **go overboard**, they do something or engage in an activity too much so that there is a negative result.

*Exercise is good for you, but don't **go overboard**. If you do too much at first, you could hurt yourself.*

*I asked the stylist to cut my hair a little shorter, but now I'm almost bald. She really **went overboard**.*

Infinitive: look up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look up & looks up	looking up	looked up	looked up

1. **look . . . up** *p.v.* When you get information from a reference book, such as a word from a dictionary or a telephone number from a telephone book, you **look** the word or number up.

*The teacher told the students to **look** the new words **up** in a dictionary.
I **looked up** his number, but it's not in the phone book.*

2. **look . . . up** p.v. When you locate and visit people you have not seen for a long time, you **look them up**.

*I was in Dallas on business, and I **looked up** Dan Jones, my old college roommate.*

*If you're ever in my town, **look me up**.*

3. **look up** p.v. When a situation is **looking up** or starting to **look up**, it is improving.

*Business was pretty bad for a while, but things are starting to **look up**.*

*I'm much happier than I was last year. Things are **looking up**.*

Infinitive: put to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put to & puts to	putting to	put to	put to

1. **put . . . to** p.v. When you confront people with a difficult or thought-provoking question, accusation, or proposition, you **put it to** them.

*He didn't want to tell me the truth, but I really **put** it **to** him, and he finally told me the whole story.*

*When Prof. Kline **put** his theory **to** me like that, I realized what he was talking about.*

2. **put . . . to** p.v. When you **put** people **to** trouble or **put** them **to** an expense, you cause them to do extra work or to spend money.

*Thanks for helping me with my flat tire. I'm sorry to **put** you **to** so much trouble.*

*I know my father would pay my dental bill if I asked him, but I hate to **put** him **to** such an expense.*

3. **put . . . to** p.v. When you **put** part of your body or something in your hand **to** something, you touch or press it to something.

*The neighbors were arguing again, so we **put** our ears **to** the wall to try to hear what they were saying.*

*When he **put** a gun **to** my head, I realized he wasn't joking.*

Infinitive: wrap up			

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wrap up & wraps up	wrapping up	wrapped up	wrapped up

1. **wrap . . . up** *p.v.* When you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, you **wrap it up**.

*I have to **wrap** this gift **up** before I go to the party.*

*The movers **wrapped up** the china with newspapers.*

wrapped up *part.adj.* After you enclose an object in some kind of paper, usually gift wrapping paper or packaging paper, it is **wrapped up**.

*All the gifts are **wrapped up**.*

2. **wrap . . . up** *p.v.* When you conclude an event that has been happening for some time, you **wrap it up**. **Wind up** is similar to **wrap up**.

*We **wrapped up** the meeting around 4:00 and went home.*

*The salesman blabbered for two hours before I finally told him to **wrap it up**.*

PRACTICE

4-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- It's 12:30. Let's _____ this meeting _____ and go to lunch.
- There was no way he could deny his guilt after the prosecutor _____ it _____ him.
- You can't break through this thick cement with only a hammer; this _____ a pneumatic drill.
- This candle _____ the scent of roses.
- I _____ my ear _____ the wall to try to hear what Sally was saying about me.
- Mike is _____ the words _____ in the dictionary.
- The police officers _____ the robbers, but they didn't catch them.
- I completely forgot about my date with Carlos. He wasn't happy when he _____ me, and I wasn't home.

9. My boyfriend said something about having more freedom. What do you think he's _____?
10. My doctor cannot figure out what is wrong with me. She said that my situation _____ a specialist.
11. After she won the silver medal, she _____ the gold.
12. I returned to my hometown for the first time in forty years and _____ my first girlfriend.
13. The guy in the seafood store _____ the fish _____ with old newspapers.
14. The FBI is _____ major drug dealers.
15. These last six months have been difficult for Ernesto, but now things are starting to _____.
16. The company started in California, but now it's _____ customers all over the country.
17. You _____ me _____ a lot of trouble to help you move your piano, and you didn't even say thank you.
18. My wife said she was going to replace our sofa, but instead she _____ and bought all new furniture for our entire house, and now I have a \$9,000 bill.

4-2. On a separate piece of paper, write sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. I was *looking up* in the dictionary. (a word, it)
2. I was in Boston *looking up*. (some old army buddies, them)
3. Dad's upstairs *wrapping up*. (Mom's birthday present, it)
4. The committee is *wrapping up*. (their discussion, it)

4-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The officers think ground troops aren't enough to take the enemy position. They think an air strike is needed. What do the officers think about an air strike?

2. The manager of my department said that business was slow and to expect some changes soon. I wonder what she means. What do I wonder?
3. The situation is getting better. What is the situation doing?
4. The little boy ran away, and his father chased him and tried to catch him. What did the father do?
5. Sofia is going to try to break the record in the high jump. What is Sofia going to try to do?
6. Tom went to a lot of trouble to get his guest bedroom ready for me when I visited him. What did I do to Tom?
7. I was going to have a glass of champagne on New Year's Eve, but instead I drank a whole bottle. What did I do on New Year's Eve?
8. When bleach and ammonia are mixed together, they produce a toxic gas. What do bleach and ammonia do when they are mixed together?
9. The people in the meeting are concluding the meeting. What are they doing?
10. When Rosa was in New Orleans, she looked for and visited a childhood friend. What did Rosa do to her friend?
11. Jim asked you a really difficult question. What did Jim do to you?
12. Megan is trying to find Erik's telephone number in a telephone book. What is Megan doing?

4-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

build up, 2

fall for, 2

give in, 1

pull through

cheer up, 1

figure out, 1

pass away, 1

show up, 1

1. My father said, "I _____ your mother on our first date, and we got married three months later."
2. Noura was married for 32 years, but her husband _____ about seven years ago.
3. My ex-husband _____ at my door asking for money.

4. These instructions don't make any sense at all. I can't _____ them
_____.
5. After Aunt Mary's stroke, her chances didn't look good, but she _____
_____.
6. My daughter begged me to let her get her ears pierced, and I finally _____
_____.
7. After Manuela became sales manager, she _____ annual sales _____
from \$4 million to \$23 million in less than five years.
8. I'm tired of listening to you complain. If you don't _____, I'm
going to go home.

Unit 5

Stress in Two-Word Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

When a word (or syllable in a word with more than one syllable) is *stressed*, it means that native speakers say that word or syllable a little more strongly and with a slightly higher *pitch* (the level of their voice). Learning the stress patterns that native speakers use when they say phrasal verbs will help you to use them more effectively and will also help you to be more easily understood by native speakers.

In general, how a phrasal verb is stressed (shown here with capital letters) depends on whether it is separable or inseparable and whether it is transitive (it requires an object) or intransitive (it cannot have an object). Some phrasal verbs can be both transitive and intransitive.

Stress on the particle

Separable (and always transitive) phrasal verbs

In separable phrasal verbs (which are always transitive) the particle is stressed regardless of the position of the object:

*Larry **took OFF** his shoes.*

*Larry **took** his shoes **OFF**.*

*Larry **took** them **OFF**.*

*My secretary **set UP** a meeting.*

*My secretary **set** a meeting **UP**.*

*My secretary **set** it **UP**.*

*British soldiers tried to **burn DOWN** the White House.*

*British soldiers tried to **burn** the White House **DOWN**.*

*British soldiers tried to **burn** it **DOWN**.*

Intransitive phrasal verbs

In intransitive phrasal verbs, the particle is also stressed:

*David's car **broke DOWN**.*

*My house is **burning DOWN**. (Burn down is transitive and intransitive.)*

*I **dozed OFF** in the meeting.*

*They finally **gave IN** to our demands. (Some intransitive phrasal verbs can be made transitive with the addition of a preposition.)*

*His grandmother has **passed aWAY**.* (When the particle has two syllables, only one is stressed.)

Stress on the verb

Inseparable transitive phrasal verbs

In inseparable transitive phrasal verbs, the verb is stressed:

*The doctor **LOOKED** at my knee.*

*I can't believe you **FELL** for his lies.*

*The mayor **CALLED** for an investigation.*

*I don't understand you. What are you **GETting** at?*

Infinitive: break down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break down & breaks down	breaking down	broke down	broken down

1. **break down** *p.v.* When something mechanical **breaks down**, it does not function.

*I was late for work because my car **broke down**.*

*This photocopier is a piece of junk—it **breaks down** every day.*

broken-down *part.adj.* When something is old, in bad condition, or not functioning properly, it is **broken-down**.

*My car is a **broken-down** piece of junk.*

breakdown *n.* A **breakdown** is a situation in which something mechanical has **broken down**.

*After that last **breakdown**, I decided it was time for a new car.*

2. **break down** *p.v.* When an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage **breaks down**, one or more persons involved is not cooperating or participating because of a disagreement or problem.

*After he started drinking heavily, their marriage started to **break down**.*

*The peace negotiations **broke down** because neither side was willing to compromise.*

breakdown *n.* A situation in which an arrangement, agreement, negotiation, plan, or marriage has **broken down** is a **breakdown**.

*Neither side would give an inch, and there was a **breakdown** in the negotiations.*

3. **break down** *p.v.* When you **break down**, you lose self-control and become emotionally or mentally confused.

*When the judge sentenced Jones to life in prison, he **broke down** and begged for mercy.*

*Tom **breaks down** whenever he thinks of the tragedy.*

breakdown *n.* A situation in which someone has **broken down** and is very upset or confused is a **breakdown**.

*Marty had a complete mental **breakdown** and started to see invisible people.*

4. **break down** *p.v.* When something decomposes or reduces to its smallest parts or is reduced by someone to its smallest parts, it **breaks down**.

*After the poison **breaks down**, it's quite harmless.*

*Anticoagulant drugs are used to **break down** blood clots.*

5. **break . . . down** *p.v.* When you reduce a process, situation, problem, plan, or idea to its basic parts to make it easier to understand, you **break it down**.

*The professor's plan seemed really complicated, but after he **broke it down** for us, we understood it a little better.*

*If you **break** the manufacturing process **down** into steps, it's easier to train new workers.*

6. **break . . . down** *p.v.* When you use force to go through a door that is locked, you **break it down**.

*The police **broke** the door **down** and arrested the bank robbers.*

*A door had to be **broken down** to rescue the people trapped by the fire.*

Infinitive: burn down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
burn down & burns down	burning down	burned down	burned down

1. **burn . . . down** *p.v.* When a building or other structure **burns down** or someone **burns it down**, it is completely destroyed by fire.

*Though most of Chicago **burned down** in 1871, a few buildings survived.*

*The owner was arrested for deliberately **burning** his factory **down**.*

Infinitive: find out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
find out & finds out	finding out	found out	found out

1. **find . . . out** *p.v.* [not usually separated; the object can be a noun, a noun clause, or a complete sentence] When you **find out** information or a fact, you learn or become aware of that information or fact.

*If you don't know when the movie starts, look online to **find out**.*

*I met a nice man at the party, but I never **found out** his name.*

*I met a nice man at the party, but I never **found out** what his name was.*

*I was surprised when I **found out** that he can speak 14 languages.*

*I was surprised when I **found out** he can speak 14 languages.*

*I tried to get the information, but I couldn't **find it out**.*

Infinitive: hand back			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hand back & hands back	handing back	handed back	handed back

1. **hand . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When you return something to a person by holding it in your hand and extending your arm, you **hand it back** or **hand it back** to that person.

*The teacher will **hand** the tests **back** in third period.*

*The guard **handed** my ID card **back** to me.*

Infinitive: look at			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look at & looks at	looking at	looked at	looked at

1. **look at** *p.v.* When you focus your eyes on people or things, you **look at** them.

*I **looked at** her and told her I loved her.*

***Look at** me when I talk to you!*

2. **look at** *p.v.* When you examine something or a situation and decide what to do about it, you **look at it**.

*The mechanic **looked at** my car but couldn't find anything wrong with it.*

*Your finger might be broken. You should have Dr. Smith **look at** it.*

3. **look at** *p.v.* When you think a certain way or when you have an opinion about something, that is the way you **look at** it.

*The way I **look at** it, Congress is to blame for this situation, not the President.*

*What should be done about this situation depends on how you **look at** it.*

4. **look at** *p.v. [informal, always continuous]* When you say that people are **looking at** an amount of money or a length of time, you mean that this is how much you think something will cost or how long something will take.

*That was a serious injury. You're **looking at** months and months of physical therapy.*

*Putting a new roof on this house isn't going to be cheap. You're **looking at** at least \$15,000.*

Infinitive: pile up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pile up & piles up	piling up	piled up	piled up

1. **pile . . . up** *p.v.* When things increase in number and start to form a pile, they **pile up**. When people add things to a pile, they **pile** them **up**.

*The snow **piled up** so high that I couldn't open my door.*

*In the fall we **piled** the dead leaves **up** in the driveway and burn them.*

piled up *part.adj.* When things are in a pile, they are **piled up**.

*A lot of dirty laundry is **piled up** in the basement.*

2. **pile up** *p.v.* When work or something else that must be done increases faster than you can do it, it **piles up**.

*I'm really worried about money. My bills are **piling up** faster than I can pay them.*

*My work really **piled up** while I was on vacation.*

Infinitive: set up

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
set up & sets up	setting up	set up	set up

1. **set . . . up** *p.v.* When you arrange the parts of something so that they are in their proper position and can function, you **set it up**.

*The kids got a swing set for Christmas, and Dad had to **set it up** in the snow.*

*When you're camping, be sure to **set** your tent **up** before it gets dark.*

set up *part.adj.* After the parts of something are in their proper position and function properly, they are **set up**.

*The party is starting in one hour. Are the tables **set up**?*

setup *n.* A collection or arrangement of parts or equipment necessary for a certain procedure or task is a **setup**.

*The nurse prepared **setups** for the hospital emergency room.*

2. **set . . . up** *p.v.* When you plan and organize an activity or project, you **set it up**.

*I **set up** a 4:00 meeting with Jones and his lawyer.*

***Setting up** a meeting of all 50 governors took a lot of planning.*

set up *part.adj.* When an activity or project is planned, arranged, or organized, it is **set up**.

*The arrangements for the wedding were very complicated, but everything is **set up** now.*

setup *n.* How an activity or project is planned or arranged is the **setup**.

*What's the **setup** for the Fourth of July picnic?*

3. **set . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you commit a crime but make it appear that another, innocent person is guilty of the crime, you **set** the innocent person **up**.

*Joe robbed the bank and tried to **set me up** by leaving some of the stolen money in my apartment and then telling the police about it.*

*The detective didn't believe me when I told him I had been **set up**.*

setup *n. [informal]* An attempt by someone to make it appear that an innocent person is guilty of a crime is a **setup**.

*I told the detective it was a **setup** and that I could prove I had been at the racetrack when the bank was robbed.*

Infinitive: take after			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

take after & takes after	taking after	took after	taken after
--------------------------	--------------	------------	-------------

1. **take after** *p.v.* When you have personality characteristics or behaviors that are similar to those of an older relative, such as your mother, father, grandmother, grandfather or an aunt, uncle, you take after that person.

*My son **takes after** me. He is quiet and he likes to read books about history.*

*Unfortunately, Larry **takes after** his Uncle Joe. Joe was lazy and drank too much, and Larry is just like him.*

PRACTICE

5-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- When he heard that his brother had been killed, he _____ and cried.
- We're expecting company. Can you _____ the card table in the dining room?
- Can you help wash the dishes, please? They're really beginning to _____.
- I gave the cashier my credit card, and then she _____ it _____ to me.
- I don't know the answer, but I'll try to _____.
- My husband isn't like either of his parents. I don't know who he _____.
- Raul _____ his watch and told me he had to leave.
- My car is a real piece of junk. It _____ at least once a week.
- I'm a little confused about your theory. Would you mind _____ it _____ for me?
- I'll tell the judge that I'm innocent and that Ned Kelly _____ me _____.
- Hey, any way you _____ it, one thing's for sure—we have to get more criminals off the streets and into the jails.

12. This is the FBI—open the door or we'll _____ it _____!
13. Maybe I can fix your computer. I'll _____ it after dinner.
14. Some chemical compounds start to _____ after only a few hours.
15. The arsonist tried to _____ several houses in the neighborhood.
16. The secretary is _____ a meeting.
17. The civil war started again after the peace talks _____.
18. Jim buys a newspaper every day, but he never puts it in the garbage when he is finished. Newspapers are slowly _____ in his basement.
19. The mechanic said, "To fix a car after an accident that bad, I'd say you're _____ at least \$4,000."

5-2. Review the explanation at the beginning of this unit of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 5a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is stressed.

5-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The firefighters *broke down*. (the door, it)

2. They *burned down*. (the old barn, it)

3. Our teacher *handed back*. (the papers, them)

4. I *set up*. (the ironing board, it)

5-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Jane arranged a baby shower. What did she do?
2. In Question 1, how would you describe the baby shower after Jane arranged it?
3. I get magazines in the mail faster than I can read them. What are my magazines doing?
4. In Question 3, how would you describe my magazines?
5. Todd returned the pen to Mark. What did Todd do?
6. Uncle Fred's car had a mechanical problem, and it stopped running. What did it do?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe Uncle Fred's car?
8. In Question 6, what did Uncle Fred have?
9. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the soldiers do?
10. The soldiers destroyed the building with fire. What did the building do?
11. When the detective told Jake he could get the death penalty, he became very nervous and upset. What did Jake do?
12. In Question 11, what did Jake have?

13. Mary likes to dance and go to parties. Her mother also likes to dance and go to parties. What can you say about Mary?
14. Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use. What did she do to her computer?
15. In Question 14, after Judy took her new computer out of the box, connected all the cables, and got it ready to use, how would you describe it?
16. The door was locked, but Hank forced it open and got inside. What did Hank do?
17. I learned that Ali's excuse was a big lie. What did I do?

5-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

come off, 2	go in for, 3	talk down to, 3
feel up to, 3	iron out, 2	throw up, 2
get over with, 3	look forward to, 3	
go along with, 3	put up with, 3	

1. Her husband is a real jerk. How does she _____ him?
2. I wasn't sure if Charles _____ going scuba diving again so soon after the shark attack.
3. Have you _____ your problems with the boss yet? 4. Can you help me with this jar? The top won't _____.
5. I've never been to Italy, and I'm really _____ going there.
6. I'm sorry I can't agree with you Dad, but I have to _____ Mom.
7. When I had food poisoning, I _____ all night long.
8. You can be sure Paul will take his vacation out west. He really _____ outdoor stuff like camping and mountain climbing.
9. Can you believe the nerve of that guy in the meeting yesterday? He _____ me as if I were the stupidest guy on Earth!

10. I'm tired of arguing about the divorce settlement. I just want to _____ it
_____.

Unit 6

Stress in Three-Word Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

Remember that *stress* means that native speakers say that word or syllable in a word a little more strongly and with a slightly higher pitch.

The stress pattern of three-word phrasal verbs is generally quite simple: the particle, or second word in the three-word phrasal verb, is stressed regardless of whether the phrasal verb is separable or inseparable:

*I think I've **come UP with** an answer to your problem.*

*Sarah doesn't **get aLONG with** her mother-in-law.*

*I don't **feel UP to** going to the party.*

*That liar **screwed me OUT of** \$20,000.*

*Are you ever going to **get aROUND to** fixing the leaky faucet?*

Infinitive: boil down to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
boil down to & boils down to	boiling down to	boiled down to	boiled down to

1. **boil down to** *p.v.* When you say that something **boils down to** something else, you are saying that it is the basic cause of a more complicated situation or problem.

*Most of the crime in this city **boils down to** drugs.*

*My decision to stay at this awful job **boils down to** one thing—money.*

Infinitive: come down with			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come down with & comes down with	coming down with	came down with	come down with

1. **come down with** *p.v.* When you are starting to get sick, you are **coming down with** something or **coming down with** an illness.

*I don't feel well. Maybe I'm **coming down with** something.*

*My grandmother said, "If you don't wear an undershirt, you'll **come down with** pneumonia."*

Infinitive: come up with

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come up with & comes up with	coming up with	came up with	come up with

1. **come up with** *p.v.* When you think of an idea, plan, or solution, you **come up with** it. **Come up with** is similar to **think up**.

*It took me all night, but I **came up with** the answer.*

*Lydia wants to **come up with** a great idea for the party.*

Infinitive: get around to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get around to & gets around to	getting around to	got around to	gotten/ got around to

1. **get around to** *p.v.* When you do something after waiting for some time because you are lazy, inefficient, or do not want to do it, you **get around to** it.

*I didn't **get around to** doing my taxes until April 14.*

*Don't worry about the broken window. I'll **get around to** it one of these days.*

Infinitive: get out of

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get out of & gets out of	getting out of	got out of	gotten/got out of

1. **get out of** *p.v.* When you **get out of** something or **get out of** doing something you must do but do not want to do, you find a way to avoid it.

*Sam **got out of** gym class by saying he had to go to a doctor's appointment.*

*The boss wants me to work a double shift, but I'll **get out of** it.*

*I **got out of** going to church with my wife by pretending to be sick.*

2. **get . . . out of** *p.v.* If an activity gives you pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit, you **get** pleasure, satisfaction, or some other benefit **out of** it.

*I sat through that boring class for three months and didn't learn a thing. I didn't **get** anything **out of** it.*

*The judge didn't **get** any pleasure **out of** imposing such a harsh penalty.*

3. **get . . . out of** *p.v.* When you use force, pressure, or deceit to get something, such as information or money, from people, you **get** it **out of** them.

*They tortured him for days, but they couldn't **get** any information **out of** him.*

*It took me a while, but I **got** the whole story **out of** her.*

Infinitive: go back on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go back on & goes back on	going back on	went back on	gone back on

1. **go back on** *p.v.* When you make a promise, but you do not do what you promised to do, you **go back on** your promise.

*I promised to take my son to a baseball game, and I'm not **going back on** my word.*

*The mayor **went back on** his pledge not to raise taxes.*

Infinitive: go through with

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go through with & goes through with	going through with	went through with	gone through with

1. **go through with** *p.v.* When you do something that you have decided to do even though it may be dangerous or unpleasant or others may object, you **go through with** it.

*The spokeswoman said the company would **go through with** its plan to move the company to Mexico.*

*Despite his family's opposition, Erik **went through with** his decision to quit his job and start his own business.*

Infinitive: monkey around with

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
monkey around with & monkeys around with	monkeying around with	monkeyed around with	monkeyedaround with

1. **monkey around with** *p.v. [informal]* When you adjust or try to repair mechanical devices even though you do not have permission or do not have the skill to do it properly, you **monkey around with** them.

*I **monkeyed around with** my camera, and I think maybe I fixed it.*

*Frank was **monkeying around with** my printer, and now it doesn't work.*

PRACTICE

6-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- I'm not surprised that Ali stayed home from work today. Yesterday he thought he might be _____ a cold.
- Last year, the company _____ its plan to move from downtown to the suburbs.
- I've thought and thought, but I can't _____ any reason why your idea won't work.
- Fixing the leak in the roof is going to be a big job, but I have to _____ it before the next rain.
- Heather didn't want to tell me why she was mad, but I finally _____ the reason _____ her.
- I don't _____ much satisfaction _____ teaching students who don't want to be in the class.
- The explanation for our failure to solve this problem isn't complicated. It really _____ a lack of funding.
- I think you should take your DVD player to a repair shop. If you _____ it, you'll just make it worse.
- I'm supposed to report for jury duty on Monday, but I don't want to. I've got to think of a way to _____ it.

10. You lied to me! You promised me you would quit smoking, and now you've _____ your word.

6-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Tom was very nervous about getting married, but he did it. What did Tom do?
2. We were in Paris for five days, but we never found time to go to the Eiffel Tower. What didn't we do?
3. My father said I had to cut the grass, but I told him I would do it tomorrow. What did I do?
4. Janice really likes teaching because it gives her a lot of satisfaction. Why does Janice like teaching?
5. Ms. Cummings thought of a way to manufacture her company's products more cheaply. What did Ms. Cummings do?
6. There are many reasons why one house sells for a higher price than another house, but the main reason is the house's location. Why does one house sell for more than another?
7. You feel a little sick now, and you think you'll have a cold tomorrow. What's happening to you today?
8. I don't really know what to do, but I'll try to fix the air conditioner anyway. What will I do to the air conditioner?
9. My wife didn't talk to me all day, but she said nothing was wrong. I asked her again and again what the problem was, and she finally told me. What did I do?
10. Raquel promised Alex she would go to the dance with him, but she went with Carlos instead. What did Raquel do?

6-3. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

burn down, 5

get at, 4

hand back, 5

pile up, 5

call for, 4

give off, 4

look at, 5

put to, 4

find out, 5

go after, 4

look up, 4

wrap up, 4

1. We've been at this meeting all afternoon. Don't you think we should _____ it _____ and go home?

2. Larry was nervous and talking in circles, so finally I said, “Will you please get to the point? What are you _____?”
3. Lydia _____ her best friend from college _____ when she was in Las Vegas.
4. These flowers _____ a beautiful scent.
5. This smartphone isn’t working right. I’m going to take it to Jim at the electronics shop and ask him to _____ it.
6. Bill won’t be happy if he _____ that you scratched his car.
7. My son’s thinking about _____ his master’s degree.
8. A driver will _____ you at your hotel and take you to the conference center.
9. I really _____ it _____ her, and she admitted that I was right. 10. We’d better do the laundry soon; it’s starting to _____.
11. The police officer _____ my driver’s license _____ to me along with a ticket.
12. The detective thinks the owner _____ his restaurant for the insurance money.

6-4. Review the explanation at the beginning of [Unit 5](#) of how two-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 6-3 aloud and circle the verb or particle that is stressed.

Unit 7

Separable Phrasal Verbs with Long Objects

We have seen that the object of separable verbs can be placed either between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

clear: *I **looked up** the word.*

clear: *I **looked** the word **up**.*

When the object is short—one word or just a few words in length—the meaning is clear either way. However, when the object is several words long, it can be awkward and confusing to place the object between the particles:

clear: *I **looked up** the words that our teacher said were really important and probably be on the final exam.*

confusing: *I **looked** the words that our teacher said were really important and probably be on the final exam **up**.*

It boils down to the following:

Short objects can be placed between the verb and the particle or after the particle:

*She **put on** her dress.*

*She **put** her dress **on**.*

pronouns, such as *him*, *her*, and *it* must be placed between the verb and the particle:

*She **put** it **on**.*

and long objects should be placed after the particle to avoid confusion:

*She **put on** the new dress with the red, yellow, and blue flowers that she bought last week for 40 percent off.*

Infinitive: cut up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cut up & cuts up	cutting up	cut up	cut up

1. **cut . . . up** *p.v.* When you use a knife or pair of scissors to cut something so that there are many small pieces, you **cut it up**.

*The boy's mother is **cutting** a piece of meat **up** for him.*

*I was so angry at her that I **cut** her picture **up** and flushed it down the toilet.*

cut up *part.adj.* After something has been **cut up**, it is **cut up**.

*This steak is for Aunt Kathy, but give the **cut up** one to Uncle Fred—he doesn't have any teeth.*

Infinitive: hold up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hold up & holds up	holding up	held up	held up

1. **hold . . . up** *p.v.* When a wall, column, or other structure supports the weight of something above it, such as a ceiling, it **holds it up**.

*The workers were injured when they removed a column **holding** the roof **up**.*

*The house was **held up** by jacks while the foundation was repaired.*

2. **hold . . . up** *p.v.* When you prevent something from happening or cause it to happen late, you **hold it up**. When things or people delay you, they **hold you up**.

*The band hasn't arrived yet, and they're **holding up** the whole wedding.*

*I'm sorry I'm late. I was **held up** by traffic.*

holdup *n.* Something that prevents something else from happening or causes it to happen late is a **holdup**.

*Why haven't you finished this work yet? What's the **holdup**?*

3. **hold . . . up** *p.v.* When you use a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, you **hold it up**. **Stick up** is the same as **hold up**.

*The jewelry store owner was **held up** by three men wearing ski masks.*

*Some idiot tried to **hold** the bank **up** with a toy gun.*

holdup *n.* When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, it is a **holdup**. A **stickup** is the same as a **holdup**.

*The robber fired his gun in the air and yelled, "This is a **holdup**."*

*There was a **holdup** at First National Bank this morning.*

4. **hold up** *p.v.* When an object remains in good condition after heavy use, it **holds up**.

*These cheap shoes won't **hold up** more than six weeks.*
*Some Roman aqueducts have **held up** for 2,000 years.*

5. **hold up** *p.v.* When a plan, idea, or agreement is still believed in or respected after a period of time, it has **held up**.

*Einstein's theories have **held up** despite occasional challenges.*
*The ceasefire is **holding up** longer than anyone expected.*

Infinitive: let out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
let out & lets out	letting out	let out	let out

1. **let . . . out** *p.v.* When you allow animals or people to leave a place by giving permission or opening a door, you **let** them **out**.

*The guard **lets** the prisoners **out** of their cells every day at 1:00.*
*I opened the door and **let** the dog **out**.*

2. **let . . . out** *p.v.* When you make an item of clothing bigger by changing the seams, you **let** it **out**.

*After I gained twenty pounds, I had to have all my pants **let out**.*
*The tailor **let** her old dress **out** so that she could wear it again.*

3. **let . . . out** *p.v.* When you reveal secret or sensitive information, you **let** it **out**.

*This information is secret. Don't **let** it **out**.*
*I was furious when my secretary **let out** that I had interviewed for a new position.*

4. **let out** *p.v.* When you make a sound that shows your emotion or feelings, you **let out** that sound.

*Heather knew Jim was lying again, and **let out** a sigh.*
*The lion **let out** a loud roar before he attacked the hunter.*

Infinitive: point out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
point out & points out	pointing out	pointed out	pointed out

1. **point . . . out** *p.v.* When you bring things or people to someone's attention or indicate the location of things or people with your hand or index finger, you **point** them **out**.

*As we walked through the museum, the tour guide **pointed** several famous paintings out.*

*General Johnston showed the satellite photo to the reporter and **pointed out** the enemy tanks.*

2. **point . . . out** *p.v.* When you are writing or speaking and you stress or emphasize some important information that you think the reader or listener needs to know, you **point out** the information.

*I **pointed** several flaws **out** in Prof. Taylor's theory.*

*He said that he thought my plan was basically good but that he wanted to **point out** several possible problems.*

Infinitive: run over

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run over & runs over	running over	ran over	run over

1. **run over (to)** *p.v.* When you run from where you are to where someone else is, you **run over** or **run over** to that person.

*I saw a man hitting a child, and I **ran over** and stopped him.*

*When I saw Melanie, I **ran over** to her and gave her a big hug.*

2. **run . . . over** *p.v.* When you drive over people or things with a car, truck, or other vehicle causing damage, injury, or death, you **run** them **over**.

*John was **run over** by a bus and injured.*

*I **ran over** a glass bottle and got a flat tire.*

3. **run over** *p.v.* When liquid in a container fills the container and goes over the top, it **runs over**.

*Keep an eye on the bathtub so that it doesn't **run over**.*

*There's too much water in this pot. It's going to **run over** the side.*

4. **run over** *p.v.* When you go beyond a limit, you **run over** or **run over** the limit.

*I hope the 11:00 meeting doesn't **run over**. I'm meeting a client for lunch at 12:00.*

*The speaker was given fifteen minutes for her speech, but she **ran over**.*

Infinitive: see about			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
see about & sees about	seeing about	saw about	seen about

1. **see . . . about** *p.v.* When you talk to someone to get permission for something or to arrange something, you **see about** it or **see** someone **about** it.

*Is Luis going to **see about** changing his flight from the fifth to the sixth?*

*The carpet in my office is filthy. I need to **see** the maintenance guy **about** getting it shampooed.*

2. **see about** *p.v.* When you are upset about a change or a new policy, and you want to say that you will take some action or talk to someone in authority to prevent or reverse the change or new policy, you say “I’ll **see about** that” or “We’ll **see about** that.”

*Now they’re saying I can’t even smoke in my own office. I’ll **see about** that!*

*Those crooks in City Hall want to double my real estate taxes. We’ll just **see about** that.*

Infinitive: take apart			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take apart & takes apart	taking apart	took apart	taken apart

1. **take . . . apart** *p.v.* When you completely separate the parts of something, you **take** it **apart**. **Take apart** is the opposite of **put together**.

*I had to **take** my bike **apart** when I moved.*

*The mechanic **took** the engine **apart**.*

Infinitive: take in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take in & takes in	taking in	took in	taken in

1. **take . . . in** *p.v.* When you bring a car or other household appliance to a mechanic or repair person, you **take** it **in**.

Sally **took** her car **in** to have the oil changed.

The printer is broken again. I need to **take it in**.

2. **take . . . in** p.v. When you **take in** a play, movie, museum, or other attraction, you go to it or see it.

*We stopped in Charleston and **took in** the sights.*

*After dinner we **took in** a movie.*

3. **take . . . in** p.v. When you allow people to live with you, you **take them in**.

*Judy's brother had nowhere to go, so she **took him in**.*

*The Ortegas offered to **take their neighbors in** after the fire.*

4. **take . . . in** p.v. [usually passive] When you are **taken in** by someone, that person successfully tricks or deceives you.

*Stalin was **taken in** by Hitler's assurances.*

*They were completely **taken in** by Jake's elaborate hoax.*

5. **take . . . in** p.v. When you make an item of clothing smaller by changing the seams, you **take it in**. **Take in** is the opposite of **let out**.

*She likes some of her maternity clothes so much that she's going to **take them in** after the baby is born.*

*If I lose any more weight, I'll have to have all my pants **taken in**.*

PRACTICE

7-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. When the bullet hit him, he _____ a slight gasp and fell dead.
2. My friends were supposed to be here an hour ago. What is _____ them _____?
3. Will you please drive more carefully! You almost _____ that lady back there.
4. Ann _____ that she was going to go to Las Vegas with her boss, and the whole office was talking about it.
5. Take two pounds of beef, _____ it _____, and put it in a frying pan.

6. The expedition leader spoke to us and _____ the importance of taking plenty of water with us in the desert.
7. Open the gate and _____ the horses _____.
8. I'm embarrassed to admit I was _____ by his lies.
9. After Todd's parents died, his Aunt Judy and Uncle Henry _____ him _____.
10. The soldier was _____ his rifle _____ and cleaning it.
11. In Ecuador I rode on a steam locomotive that's still _____ after 80 years.
12. After we saw the Empire State Building, we _____ a Broadway play.
13. These aluminum poles _____ the tent.
14. Nicole went to the computer store to _____ getting more memory installed in her computer.
15. I had my old uniform _____ so that I could wear it to the reunion.
16. A robber _____ a bank with a shotgun last night.
17. When I got into the tub, the water _____ the side and onto the floor.
18. The health department inspector walked around the restaurant and _____ several rats _____ to the owner.
19. Jim's phone was ringing, so I _____ to his desk and answered it.
20. The suit was too big, but the store's tailor said he could _____ it _____.
21. I heard a weird noise coming from my car's transmission. I think I'd better _____ my car _____.
22. It's an unusual arrangement, but it has _____ for several years.

23. The conference is scheduled to end Tuesday at 5:00, but there's a good chance that it will _____.
24. I was just notified that I'm going to be transferred to Mongolia. We'll _____ that! I'm going to talk to the boss.
25. The robber was shot while trying to _____ an off-duty police officer.

7-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses.

1. The cook *cut up*. (the meat, it)
2. The snowstorm *held up*. (air travelers, them)
3. Don't *let out*. (the dog, it)
4. The real estate agent *pointed out*. (the swimming pool, it)
5. The truck *ran over*. (the man, him)
6. I'm going to *take apart*. (the broken doorknob, it)
7. The tailor *took in*. (the pants, them)

7-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I don't like this hotel room. I'm going to ask the desk clerk about changing to a different room. What am I going to do?
2. No one believes in the scientist's theories anymore. What haven't the scientist's theories done?
3. Janice is going to make her pants smaller. What is she going to do?
4. Mr. Ortega was tricked by the salesman. What happened to Mr. Ortega?
5. A car drove over you. What happened to you?
6. The jeweler showed me several flaws in the diamond. What did the jeweler do?
7. The game started late because it was raining. What did the rain do?

8. Susie is using scissors to make several small pieces of paper from a larger piece of paper. What is Susie doing?
9. The posts are supporting the porch. What are the posts doing?
10. The bank robber told the bank teller to give him all the money in the cash drawer. What did the bank robber do to the bank?
11. In Question 10, what happened at the bank?
12. I put my broken TV in my car, drove to the repair shop, and carried the TV in. What did I do to my TV?
13. Bill separated all the parts of his car engine. What did Bill do?
14. There was too much water in the bathtub, and it spilled onto the floor. What did the water do?
15. After my parents died, my grandparents let me live with them. What did my grandparents do?
16. Mr. Young told some people about the secret information. What did Mr. Young do with the secret information?
17. I saw an empty luggage cart at the airport, and I went to it quickly and grabbed it. What did I do?
18. When the thief started to open the woman's door, a scream came from her mouth. What did the woman do?
19. I've been using this lawn mower for 25 years, and it still works fine. What has the lawn mower done?
20. The cowboy opened the gate so that the cattle could leave the corral. What did the cowboy do?
21. Dr. Smith went to a museum while he was in Rome. What did Dr. Smith do?
22. The meeting was supposed to end at 2:00, but it hasn't ended yet. What is the meeting doing?
23. I'm making my pants bigger. What am I doing?

7-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

boil down to, 6
come down with, 6
come off, 2
come up with, 6
doze off, 2

figure out, 1
get around to, 6
get out of, 6
go after, 4
go back on, 6

go through with, 6
look forward to, 3
monkey around with
put on, 1

1. I thought about what I was going to say to her, but when the time came, I was so nervous I couldn't _____ it.
2. The President's news conference didn't _____ well because it revealed his poor understanding of the situation.
3. I _____ watching Aunt Kathy's vacation video by saying I had to study for a test.
4. I don't usually _____ doing my Christmas shopping until December 24.
5. I've been _____ this broken refrigerator all day, but I still don't know what's wrong with it.
6. Mexico City's problems _____ one thing—too many people.
7. Have you seen my pen? I can't _____ what happened to it.
8. If you _____ a coat of paint _____ that old house, it wouldn't look so bad.
9. One police officer helped the mugging victim while her partner _____ the mugger.
10. My wife promised that she would stop smoking, and so far she hasn't _____ that promise.
11. The company _____ a way to decrease labor costs without lowering wages.
12. I have never been to Thailand, and I'm really _____ going there.
13. She was so tired she _____ as soon as she sat down.
14. The show was canceled after the star _____ laryngitis.

Unit 8

Present Perfect Phrasal Verbs

The *present perfect* is used to talk about the past and the present at the same time:

*They have **torn down** the building.* (The building is not there now because they tore it down in the past.)

or to say that something is completed:

*She has **picked out** some library books.*

The present perfect is formed with *have*, or when the subject is *he, she, it*, or the name of one person or thing, *has*, and the *past participle* of the verb:

present: *The tree **falls over**.*

past: *The tree **fell over**.*

present perfect: *The tree has **fallen over**.*

Remember that *have* can be combined with pronouns as 've:

*They ve never **heard of** him.*

and *has* with nouns and pronouns as 's:

*The tree s **fallen over**.*

*He s never **heard of** her.*

Be careful not to confuse the 's contraction of *has* and the 's contraction of *is*:

*She s **picked out** some library books. (She has . . .)*

*She s **picking out** some library books. (She is . . .)*

Infinitive: burn out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
burn out & burns out	burning out	burned out	burned out

1. **burn out** *p.v.* When a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it **burns out**.

*We need more wood. The fire has **burned out**.*

*Don't worry. The sun won't **burn out** for another four billion years.*

burned-out *part.adj.* After a fire, candle, or other flame stops burning because it has no more fuel, it is **burned-out**.

*The **burned-out** rocket landed in the ocean.*

burned-out *part.adj.* When people are extremely tired, either physically or psychologically, because of stress or hard work, they are **burned-out**.

*Teaching those awful students for so many years has left him **burned-out**.*

*Taking care of four small children day after day would leave any mother **burned-out**.*

2. **burn out** *p.v.* When a light bulb stops producing light because it has reached the end of its useful life, it **burns out**.

*These new bulbs are guaranteed not to **burn out** for ten years.*

*I can't see what I'm doing because this bulb has **burned out**.*

burned-out *part.adj.* A light bulb that no longer produces light because it has reached the end of its useful life is **burned-out**.

*I climbed the ladder and unscrewed the **burned-out** bulb.*

3. **burn . . . out** *p.v.* When people are forced to leave their home or some other shelter or hiding place because of fire or fire damage, they are **burned out**.

*The only way to get the enemy soldiers out of the tunnels was to **burn them out**.*

*Seven families were **burned out** of their homes by the huge fire.*

burned-out *part.adj.* Something that has been damaged or destroyed by fire is **burned-out**.

*After the war, nothing was left but **burned-out** cars and buildings.*

Infinitive: fall over

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall over & falls over	falling over	fell over	fallen over

1. **fall over** *p.v.* When people or things **fall over**, they fall to the ground from an upright position.

*That tree has been dead for fifty years, but it still hasn't **fallen over**.*
*I almost **fell over** when I heard the terrible news.*

2. **fall over** *p.v.* When you **fall over** yourself or (usually) **fall all over** yourself, you try so hard to serve someone or to make someone like you that you appear foolish.

*The supervisor **fell all over** himself trying to satisfy the customer.*
*Mike was **falling all over** himself trying to impress Heather.*

Infinitive: fight back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fight back & fights back	fighting back	fought back	fought back

1. **fight back** *p.v.* When you **fight back**, you fight, either physically or with words, someone or something that attacked you first.

*The soldiers **fought back** bravely, but the situation was hopeless.*
*After being accused of corruption, the senator said she would **fight back** and prove her innocence.*

2. **fight back** *p.v.* When you **fight back** an emotional response, such as tears or fear, you try very hard to overcome the emotion.

*The mother **fought back** tears when she saw the little white coffins.*
*I had to **fight back** the urge to punch him in the nose.*

Infinitive: mess around

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
mess around & messes around	messing around	messed around	messed around

1. **mess around** *p.v.* When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you **mess around**. **Mess around** is the same as **goof around** and **fool around**.

*Our son should be doing his homework, but he's just **messing around** in his room.*
*When the boss isn't here, we just **mess around** at our desks.*

2. **mess around** (with) *p.v.* When you fool around with something, you do something that may be dangerous or foolish. **Mess around** is the same as **goof around**.

*I know you're angry, but you'd better think twice about **messing around** with Jake. If you say the wrong thing, he might hit you.*

*I'm not a mechanic, so I'm not going to **mess around** with my car's transmission. I'm taking it to an expert.*

Infinitive: pick out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pick out & picks out	picking out	picked out	picked out

1. **pick . . . out** *p.v.* When you choose something from a group because you prefer it to the others in the group, you **pick** it **out**.

*Have you **picked out** a dress to wear to the party yet?*

*Mike's dog had puppies, and he asked me to **pick one out**.*

2. **pick . . . out** *p.v.* When you are able to find and recognize something or someone in a group, you **pick** that thing or person **out**.

*Even though the class photo was fifty years old, I **picked** my father **out** easily.*

*The police detective asked me if I could **pick** the mugger **out** from a group of photos.*

Infinitive: pig out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pig out & pigs out	pigging out	pigged out	pigged out

1. **pig out** *p.v.* *When you eat a large amount of food usually in a greedy manner, you pig out.*

*I'm really full. All the food at the party was so good that I just totally lost control and **pigged out**.*

*Thanksgiving is my favorite holiday. I always **pig out** and then fall asleep on the sofa.*

Infinitive: tear down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

tear down & tears down	tearing down	tore down	torn down
------------------------	--------------	-----------	-----------

1. **tear . . . down** *p.v.* When you **tear down** a building, you deliberately and completely destroy it.

*They **tore** so many old buildings **down** in my hometown that I barely recognize it.
A lot of smaller homes in the suburbs are being **torn down** and replaced with larger ones.*

Infinitive: work in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
work in & works in	working in	worked in	worked in

1. **work . . . in** *p.v.* When you make room, with some difficulty, for something in a schedule or plan, you **work it in**.

*We're going to be in Chicago for only a couple of days, but I'll try to **work in** a Cubs game.
I told him my schedule was pretty tight, but that I'd try to **work** the meeting **in**.*

PRACTICE

8-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- The Leaning Tower of Pisa still hasn't _____.
- Every year I have to replace the Christmas tree lights that have _____.
- The enemy was so strong that there was no way we could have _____.
- They'll have to _____ most of the buildings that were damaged by the earthquake.
- Sarah always tries to _____ a little sightseeing on her business trips.
- My brother is pretty easy to _____ in a crowd—he's almost seven feet tall.

7. If you haven't _____ a book yet, you'd better hurry—the library's closing in five minutes.
8. The firefighters decided to let the fire in the lumberyard _____ itself _____.
9. I was really depressed last night, so I bought a pizza, a quart of ice cream, and a dozen doughnuts, and I just _____.
10. That old furnace could blow up. Are you sure it's a good idea to _____ with it?
11. When I told the waiter I was the owner of the restaurant, he _____ all _____ himself trying to please me.
12. The taco stand moved across the street after it was _____ by the fire.
13. My son just _____ after he gets home from school, and then he does his homework after dinner.
14. I had to _____ my fear as I waited for my turn to jump from the plane.

8-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The sheriff *burned out*. (the escaped convicts, them)
2. Bill has *picked out*. (a new car, one)
3. The new owners have *torn down*. (the garage, it)
4. The mayor tried to *work in*. (a tour of the factory, it)

8-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit.

1. Joe tried to fix a 10,000 volt electric generator, and now he's in the hospital. What shouldn't Joe have done to the generator?
2. The forest fire has stopped because there aren't any more trees left to burn. What has the fire done?
3. Sarah ate a hot dog, a cheeseburger, French fries, and a bag of cookies. What did she do?

4. They have chosen a hotel for their wedding reception. What have they done?
5. Sally's mother couldn't stop her tears. What couldn't Sally's mother do?
6. One of my car's headlights isn't working anymore. What did the headlight do?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe the headlight?
8. The stack of books was too high, and now the books are on the floor. What did the books do?
9. The coffee shop had to move to a different location because of a fire. What happened to the coffee shop?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the coffee shop's previous location?
11. After they attacked us, we didn't attack them. What didn't we do?
12. I've made room in my busy day for a game of tennis. What have I done?
13. I asked Jim if anyone had ever told him about the new seafood restaurant in the mall. What did I ask Jim?
14. They've completely destroyed the old factory. What have they done?
15. The sergeant tried extremely hard to show the captain how well he was training the soldiers. What did the sergeant do?

8-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

cut up, 7	go in for, 3	point out, 7	see about, 7
fall for, 2	hold up, 7	pull through, 2	show up, 1
get over with, 3	let out, 7	put up with, 3	take apart, 7
give in, 2	look up, 4	run over, 7	take in, 7

1. My bicycle was really dirty, so I _____ it _____ and cleaned it.
2. It was a very serious injury, and no one expected Raul to _____
_____.
3. I've been waiting for the TV repair guy all day, but he still hasn't _____
_____.

4. I feel just awful. I was driving to work, and I _____ a dog. 5.
The detectives weren't _____ by the crook's explanation. 6.
The detectives didn't _____ the crook's explanation.
7. Mrs. Taylor's husband doesn't have any teeth, so she has to _____ all his food
_____.
8. The freight train _____ traffic for twenty minutes, so we were
late for work.
9. In his report yesterday, the head of marketing _____ several
ways to increase the company's sales.
10. I _____ the word *Internet* _____ in an old dictionary, but I couldn't
find it.
11. Susie's mother told her, "I'm not going to _____ you _____ of this
house until you finish your homework."
12. The company finally _____ to demands that it hire more
women and minorities.
13. I'm having root canal surgery next week. I'll be glad to _____ it
_____.
14. David called the airline to _____ getting his ticket changed.
15. Karen loves to ski. In fact, she _____ most
winter sports.
16. Betty told the doctor she couldn't _____ the
pain any longer, and she asked him for morphine.

Unit 9

Two-Word Phrasal Verbs that Require a Preposition when Used with an Object, Part 1

With some two-word verbs you must use a preposition when the verb has an object:

*The criminal **broke out**.*

~~*The criminal **broke out** prison.*~~

*The criminal **broke out** of prison.*

*Tom and Jerry don't **get along**.*

~~*Tom and Jerry don't **get along** each other.*~~

*Tom and Jerry don't **get along** with each other.*

Sometimes, as with **break out** and **break out of**, there is no change in meaning. Sometimes, as with **hang up** and **hang up on**, there is a small change in meaning. And sometimes, as with **hook up** and **hook up to**, the preposition is necessary not when there is one object but only when there are two:

*I **hooked up** my new CD player.*

~~*I **hooked up** my new CD player my speakers.*~~

*I **hooked up** my new CD player to my speakers.*

There is no good way to always know which preposition must be used or if and how it will change the meaning of the verb. The best thing to do is to simply memorize each case.

Throughout this book, two-word phrasal verbs that require a preposition when used with an object are shown with the preposition in parentheses: **break out** (of).

Do not confuse two-word phrasal verbs that require a preposition when used with an object with three-word phrasal verbs. Three-word phrasal verbs always have three words—there is no two-word version, or if there is a phrasal verb with the same verb and particle, it has a different meaning and is classified as a different verb. For example, **break out** and **break out** (of) are included in one definition because they have the same meaning, but **put up** and **put up with** have different meanings and are classified separately.

Infinitive: break out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break out & breaks	breaking out	broke out	broken out

out

1. **break out** (of) *p.v.* When you escape from a place where you are a prisoner, you **break out** or **break out of** that place.

*Kevin **broke out** of prison last month.*

*The police have been looking for him ever since he **broke out**.*

breakout *n.* An escape from prison is a **breakout**.

*There hasn't been a successful **breakout** from the state prison in more than twenty-five years.*

2. **break out** *p.v.* When fighting begins suddenly, it **breaks out**.

*Rioting **broke out** after the general canceled the election.*

*Millions will be killed if nuclear war **breaks out**.*

Infinitive: catch up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
catch up & catches up	catching up	caught up	caught up

1. **catch up** (with) *p.v.* When you move faster and reach the same level or place as people who are moving faster or doing better than you were, you **catch up** or **catch up** with them.

*We left an hour before Luis, but he drove fast and quickly **caught up**.*

*After missing several weeks of class, Raquel is so far behind that she'll never **catch up**.*

*Pepsi has **caught up** with Coca-Cola in some markets.*

*The thief was running so fast that the angry mob couldn't **catch up** with him.*

caught up *part.adj.* After you have moved faster and reached the same level or place as people who had been moving faster or doing better than you are, you are **caught up**.

*When I was sick, I missed a lot of schoolwork, but I worked hard, and now I'm **caught up**.*

2. **catch up** (on) *p.v.* When you study or learn something you are interested in but have not had time for, you **catch up** on it.

*I wonder what the latest gossip is. Let's call Michael so we can **catch up**.*

*After I returned from vacation, I read the newspaper to **catch up** on the local news.*

caught up *part.adj.* After you have studied or learned something you are interested in but have not had time for, you are **caught up**.

*Now that I've read the newspapers I missed while I was on vacation, I'm **caught up**.*

Infinitive: chicken out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
chicken out & chickens out	chickening out	chickened out	chickened out

1. **chicken out** (of) *p.v. [informal]* When you do not do something because you are afraid, you **chicken out** or **chicken out** of it.

*I was going to ask Heather to go to the dance with me, but I **chickened out**.*

*Miguel's mad at himself because he **chickened out** of asking his boss for a raise yesterday.*

Infinitive: get along			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get along & gets along	getting along	got along	gotten/got along

1. **get along** (with) *p.v.* When you **get along** with people, you have peaceful, harmonious relations with them. **Get on** is similar to **get along**.

*Jim and his cousin aren't good friends, but they **get along**.*

*I haven't **gotten along** with my neighbors for years.*

2. **get along** *p.v. [usually continuous]* When you are able to do some sort of work without any serious problems, you **get along**.

*How are you **getting along** in your new job?*

*Oh, I'm **getting along** OK, thank you.*

Infinitive: give up			

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give up & gives up	giving up	gave up	given up

1. **give up** (on) *p.v.* When you stop trying to do something because you think you will never succeed, you **give up** or **give up** on it.

*Forget it! This is impossible—I **give up**!*

*I've tried for years to have a nice looking lawn, but I've just **given up** on it.*

2. **give . . . up** *p.v.* When you are running from or fighting with the police or enemy soldiers and you surrender, you **give up** or **give yourself up**.

*When the bank robbers realized they were surrounded by police, they **gave up**.*

*The suspect got tired of hiding from the police, and he **gave himself up**.*

3. **give . . . up** *p.v.* When you stop doing something you do regularly, such as a sport or a job, you **give it up**.

*My father didn't **give** sky diving **up** until he was eighty-two.*

*I had to **give up** my second job because I was so exhausted all the time.*

Infinitive: hang up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hang up & hangs up	hanging up	hung up	hung up

1. **hang up** (on) *p.v.* When you stop talking on the telephone and end the telephone call, you **hang up** the telephone. When you are angry and **hang up** the telephone without saying good-bye to someone, you **hang up** on the person you are talking to.

*After I finished talking to her, I said good-bye and **hung up**.*

*When he called me a moron, I got so mad that I **hung up** on him.*

2. **hang . . . up** *p.v.* When you hang something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, you **hang it up**.

*When I get home, the first thing I do is **hang** my coat **up**.*

*Timmy never **hangs** anything **up**. He just leaves it on the floor.*

hung up *part.adj.* After you have hung something in a high place so that it cannot touch the ground, it is **hung up**.

*Timmy, why are your clothes on the floor and not **hung up**?*

Infinitive: hook up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hook up & hooks up	hooking up	hooked up	hooked up

1. **hook . . . up** (to) *p.v.* When you connect one electronic device to another, you **hook it up** or **hook it up** to something.

*I bought a new printer, but I haven't **hooked it up** yet.*

*I **hooked** my sound system **up** to my TV, and now the TV has much better sound.*

hooked up *part.adj.* After one electronic device has been connected to another, it is **hooked up**.

*There's a DVD player on my TV, but don't try to use it because it's not **hooked up**.*

hookup *n.* A **hookup** is an electrical connection.

*The cable TV **hookup** usually costs \$70, but it's free this month.*

2. **hook up** (with) *p.v. [informal]* When you meet people somewhere, usually after you have done some things separately, you **hook up** or **hook up** with them.

*You do your shopping, I'll go to the post office, and we'll **hook up** around 2:30, OK?*

*I'll **hook up** with you at 12:00 at the corner of State and Madison, and we'll have lunch.*

Infinitive: work up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
work up & works up	working up	worked up	worked up

1. **work up** (to) *p.v.* When you gradually improve at something difficult that you do regularly, you **work up** to that improvement.

*You can't lift 200 pounds on your first day of weight training. You have to **work up** to it.*

*When I started running, I couldn't go more than a mile, but now I've **worked up** to five miles.*

2. **work up** *p.v.* When you gradually develop the energy, confidence, courage, etc., to do something difficult or something you do not want to do, you **work up** the energy, confidence, courage, etc. When you gradually develop a feeling, you **work up** the feeling.

*It took me a long time to **work up** the nerve to ask my boss for a raise.*

*If I **work up** some energy, I'll wash the car.*

*I really **worked up** a sweat in the gym today.*

*Raking leaves all day sure **works up** an appetite.*

worked up (about) *part.adj. [informal]* When you are anxious, worried, or upset about something, you are **worked up** or **worked up** about it.

*Mark has been acting nervous all day. What's he all **worked up** about?*

*Relax, we're only a few minutes late. It's nothing to get **worked up** about.*

PRACTICE

9-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. My elbow has gotten so bad that I think I might have to _____ tennis.
2. After several years of tension between the two countries, war _____ in 1972.
3. Maria, how are you _____ at your new job?
4. I am so lazy today. I just can't _____ the energy to finish my school project.
5. The murderer was tired of running from the police, so he _____ himself _____.
6. The other runners were so far ahead that I couldn't _____.
7. Susie, _____ your clothes right now!
8. For a long time I could type only around twenty-five words per minute, but I've slowly _____ to sixty.
9. I'm really behind in my work. If I don't take work home with me, I'll never _____.
10. Lydia is a nice, easygoing person. It's very easy to _____ with her.
11. I tried and tried to learn to speak Japanese, but I finally _____.

12. Hello Mark? I'm really angry, and I've got some things to tell you, and don't you dare _____ on me!
13. Dan is so shy. He was supposed to give a speech today at school, but he _____.
14. OK, here's the plan: You go to the bookstore, I'll get my laundry, and we'll _____ around 11:00.
15. I wonder what's been happening while we were on vacation. I think I'll turn on CNN so I can _____.
16. This is a maximum security prison. No one has ever _____.
17. Bob tried to _____ my new dishwasher, but he didn't do it right, and now my new kitchen is flooded.

9-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. I called my girlfriend to apologize for forgetting her birthday, but she *hung up* _____ me.
2. When I started lifting weights, I could lift only thirty pounds, but little by little I *worked up* _____ fifty.
3. He's very sick, but the doctors haven't *given up* _____ him yet.
4. Sofia was going to bleach her hair, but she *chickened out* _____ it.
5. Don't invite Carmen to Rosa's birthday party. They don't *get along* _____ each other.
6. The bank robber was carrying five heavy bags of money, so it was easy for the police to *catch up* _____ him.
7. No prisoner has ever *broken out* _____ this prison.
8. I need a different cable to *hook* my monitor *up* _____ my computer.
9. You've been gone a long time, and you have to *catch up* _____ a lot of things.

9-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook up*. (my DVR, it)

2. After my accident, I had to *give up*. (scuba diving, it)
3. You can *hang up* in the closet. (your coat, it)

9-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. When I went on vacation three weeks ago, my sister and her husband were talking about getting a divorce. Now that I'm back from vacation, I want to know what happened while I was gone. What do I want to do?
2. Lydia has to stop driving because her eyesight is so bad. What does Lydia have to do?
3. Susie was walking with us, but she stopped to look in a store window, and we continued walking. What does Susie need to do now?
4. I spilled wine on your white carpet, and you became angry and upset. How would you describe yourself?
5. Connecting a printer to a computer is easy. What is easy?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the printer after it is connected to a computer?
7. Several prisoners are going to try to escape from the state prison tonight. What are the prisoners going to try to do tonight?
8. In Question 7, if the prisoners are successful, what would their escape be called?
9. Linda and Nicole don't like each other, and they argue sometimes. What don't Linda and Nicole do?
10. We argued with our daughter for months, but we stopped trying to get her to quit smoking. What did we do?
11. Fights start in that club all the time. What happens in that club all the time?
12. Paul slowly developed the courage to ask his boss for a raise. What did Paul do?
13. In Question 12, what didn't Paul do?
14. The police told the robber to surrender. What did the police tell the robber?
15. Karen is trying to gradually be able to lift 100 pounds. What is Karen doing?

16. Betty was so angry with her boyfriend that she put the telephone receiver down without saying good-bye. What did Betty do to her boyfriend?

9-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

burn out, 8	find out, 5	mess around, 8	put to, 4
call for, 4	give off, 4	pick out, 8	run into, 1
fall over, 8	hand back, 5	pig out, 8	tear down, 8
fight back, 8	look at, 5	pile up, 5	work in, 8

1. I just got some bad news. My daughter is _____ with drugs.
2. My mail _____ while I was on vacation.
3. Thanks for all your help. I'm sorry to _____ you _____ so much trouble.
4. That dead tree is rotten. I'm surprised it hasn't _____ yet.
5. I _____ several cars last weekend, but I can't decide which one to buy.
6. Can you help me _____ a tie _____ to wear with this shirt?
7. What a surprise! I _____ my fifth grade teacher at the mall today.
8. Corruption in my state is so bad that many people are _____ a special prosecutor to investigate the situation.
9. OK, class, you've got until the bell rings. When you're finished with your tests, _____ them _____ to me.
10. These security lights are _____ infrared light. That's why you can't see it.
11. I'm not sure if there will be time to meet with you today, but I'll try to _____ it _____.
12. The invasion was so sudden that there was no way to _____.
13. My wife is angry with me because I told her that she wouldn't be so fat if she didn't _____ at McDonalds every day.

14. Bob's not in a good mood today. He just _____ that he needs surgery.
15. It was fun to visit my hometown, but I was sad to see that my old house had been _____.
16. I need to buy a new 100-watt bulb. This one _____ yesterday.

Unit 10

Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

Many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. All the phrasal verbs in this unit have a noun form. Notice that the two-word noun is sometimes written with a hyphen:

verb: *go ahead* noun: *go-ahead*

and sometimes as one word:

verb: *lay off* noun: *layoff*

Unfortunately, there is no rule that will help you to always know which form to use. Also, because not everyone agrees on which nouns should be hyphenated and which should be written as one word, you will sometimes see a noun written both ways. If you are not sure, check your dictionary or do an Internet search to see which way is more common.

Infinitive: fall off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall off & falls off	falling off	fell off	fallen off

1. **fall off** *p.v.* When people or things drop to a lower level from a higher place, they **fall off** the place where they were.

*The dish **fell off** the table and broke.*

*Be careful you don't **fall off** your bicycle.*

2. **fall off** *p.v.* When the quality, degree, or frequency of something decreases, it **falls off**.

*Sales of magazines **fell off** after the Internet was invented.*

*The quality of his work has **fallen off** as he has gotten older.*

falloff *n.* A decrease in the quality, degree, or frequency of something is a **falloff**.

*The chairman was asked to explain the **falloff** in the company's sales.*

*The restaurant experienced a big **falloff** in business after the food poisoning incident.*

Infinitive: fill in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fill in & fills in	filling in	filled in	filled in

1. **fill . . . in** *p.v.* When you **fill in** a form, you put information in the correct spaces. **Fill out** is the same as **fill in**.

*Maria **filled in** the job application and gave it to the secretary.*

*The teacher gave us the quiz and told us to **fill** the blanks **in** with the correct answers.*

filled in *part.adj.* After you write all the information in the correct spaces of a form, the form is **filled in**.

*Are those forms blank or **filled in**?*

*You can't cash this check—the amount isn't **filled in**.*

2. **fill . . . in** *p.v.* When people want or need more information about a plan, situation, or occurrence, and you supply that information, you **fill** them **in**.

*Something interesting happened while you were gone. I'll **fill** you **in** later.*

*I fell asleep during the meeting. Can you **fill** me **in**?*

3. **fill in** (for) *p.v.* When you temporarily do someone else's job, you **fill in** for that person.

*The regular bartender is on vacation, so Todd is **filling in**.*

*Larry **filled in** for Maria while she was on maternity leave.*

fill-in *n.* Someone who temporarily does someone else's job is a **fill-in**.

*Jerry is Ann's **fill-in** while she's on vacation.*

*The regular driver is in the hospital, and the **fill-in** doesn't know the route.*

Infinitive: go ahead			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go ahead & goes ahead	going ahead	went ahead	gone ahead

1. **go ahead** (with) *p.v.* When you take an action that you have already considered doing, you **go ahead** with the action.

*I've decided to **go ahead** with my plan to reorganize the company.*

*After she learned about Jim's health problems, Rosa **went ahead** with the marriage anyway.*

2. **go ahead** *p.v.* When you tell people to **go ahead**, you tell them to do something without any further delay or hesitation. If you are in a position of authority and you tell someone to **go ahead** with an action, you give permission for that action.

*What are you waiting for? **Go ahead**.*

*Yes, **go ahead** and leave work early. It's no problem.*

go-ahead *n.* When you give people permission to perform an action, you give them the **go-ahead**.

*We approved his plan and gave him the **go-ahead**.*

*The Food and Drug Administration gave the pharmaceutical company the **go-ahead** to test the drug on humans.*

Infinitive: grow up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
grow up & grows up	growing up	grew up	grown up

1. **grow up** *p.v.* When you **grow up**, you gradually change from a child to an adult.

*I **grew up** on a small farm in North Dakota.*

***Growing up** without a father wasn't easy.*

grown-up *part.adj.* When young people behave in a mature way, people say that they are **grown-up**. Something that relates to adults, and not children, is **grown-up**.

*Susie is only eleven, but she acts very **grown-up**.*

*Timmy doesn't like **grown-up** books because they don't have any pictures.*

grown-up *n.* [informal—used primarily by children] A **grown-up** is an adult.

*There were children and **grown-ups** at the party.*

*Only **grown-ups** are allowed to sit in the front seat of the car.*

2. **grow up** *p.v.* When you tell people to **grow up**, you are saying that their behavior is childish and immature.

*You're acting like a baby. Why don't you **grow up**!*

*When he put his fist through the wall, I said, "Oh, **grow up**!"*

Infinitive: hand out

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hand out & hands out	handing out	handed out	handed out

1. **hand . . . out** *p.v.* When you distribute something to other people, you **hand it out**. **Give out** and **pass out** are similar to **hand out**.

*The teacher **handed** the tests **out** to the class.*

*Emergency loan applications were **handed out** to the flood victims.*

handout *n.* Something given free to people in need to help them is a **handout**.

***Handouts** of food and clothing were given to the homeless people.*

*Even though my father was poor, he was too proud to ask for a **handout**.*

handout *n.* Printed material given to students or other people to provide them with important information is a **handout**.

*The teacher prepared a **handout** for his students.*

*There are several **handouts** on a table by the library entrance.*

Infinitive: kick back			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
kick back & kicks back	kicking back	kicked back	kicked back

1. **kick . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When you **kick back** money or **kick back** money to businesspeople or government officials, you illegally and secretly give them a percentage of the money that they spend with your company as a reward for giving you the business.

*The prosecutor said that 5 percent of every contract was **kicked back** to the head of the purchasing department.*

*She offered to **kick** 10 percent **back** if I'd switch to her company.*

kickback *n.* Money that you illegally and secretly give to businesspeople or government officials as a reward for giving you business is a **kickback**.

*The FBI agent heard the governor asking for a **kickback**.*

*The reporter discovered that the loan was really a **kickback**.*

2. **kick back** *p.v. [informal]* When you **kick back**, you relax.

*It's been a tough week. Tonight I'm going to **kick back** and watch TV.*

*Let's **kick back** and watch the football game tonight.*

Infinitive: lay off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lay off & lays off	laying off	laid off	laid off

1. **lay . . . off** *p.v.* When a company no longer needs workers because it does not have enough business, it temporarily or permanently **lays off** the workers.

*Ford **laid off** 4,000 workers during the last recession.*

*My wife had to go back to work after I was **laid off** from my job.*

- layoff** *n.* Jobs cut by a company because it does not have enough business are **layoffs**.

*The company said there wouldn't be any **layoffs**, despite the decline in profits.*

2. **lay off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **lay off** people, you stop criticizing, teasing, or pressuring them.

*You've been bugging me all day. If you don't **lay off**, you're going to be sorry.*

***Lay off** Nancy—she's having a bad day.*

3. **lay off** *p.v.* When you **lay off** something, such as a food or an activity, you stop consuming the food or doing the activity.

*Listen to the way you're coughing. You've got to **lay off** cigarettes.*

*After Ned had a heart attack, he **laid off** pizza and buffalo wings.*

Infinitive: screw up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
screw up & screws up	screwing up	screwed up	screwed up

1. **screw . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you damage something or do something wrong or badly, you **screw up** or you **screw up** what you are doing.

*I tried to fix my computer, but I couldn't do it, and I just **screwed it up** instead.*

*Mark sent his wife an email that he had written to his girlfriend. He sure **screwed up**.*

- screwed up** *part.adj.* When people or things are **screwed up**, they are damaged or confused.

*My back is really **screwed up**. I can't go to work today.*

*George was a nice guy, but he was a little **screwed up** in the head.*

screwup *n.* A problem or confused situation caused by someone's mistake is a **screwup**.

*Two babies were switched because of a **screwup** in the maternity ward.*

*There was a **screwup** in the finance department, and the bill was paid twice.*

2. **screw . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When people make a mistake that causes a problem for you, they **screw you up**.

*I missed my flight to the conference because of the traffic, and it really **screwed me up**.*

*You really **screwed me up** when you lost my car keys.*

PRACTICE

10-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The teacher asked me to _____ the exams _____ to the other students.
2. Why don't you let a mechanic fix the car? If you try to do it yourself, you'll just _____ it _____.
3. Nobody likes the new priest in our church, and attendance has _____.
4. My feet were killing me a couple of weeks ago, so I _____ jogging for a while, and now they're fine.
5. It really _____ me _____ when you told my boss what I said about him.
6. The Ortegas won't take a vacation this year because Mr. Ortega has been _____ and they need to save money.
7. When my mother was _____, there wasn't any TV or Internet. People went to the movies or read instead.
8. The head of purchasing at my company went to jail because he made all the suppliers _____ \$2,000 of every contract.
9. My husband told me my plan to enter medical school was crazy, but I _____ with it anyway.

10. The secretary in the Human Resources Department said, “Here’s an application. Take it and _____ it _____.”
11. If you want to borrow my car tonight, _____. I’m not going anywhere.
12. The other mountain climbers are nervous about Jim because they think he’s going to _____ a cliff.
13. You’ve been criticizing me for the last three hours! Will you _____!
14. The manager asked his assistant to _____ him _____ about the problems in the warehouse.
15. It’s Friday night. Let’s buy some pizza and _____.
16. I can’t work tomorrow. Can you _____ for me?
17. You’re acting like a child. _____!

10-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with nouns from this unit.

1. At the party, the children ate in the living room, and the _____ ate in the dining room.
2. The boss said, “One more _____ and you’re fired.”
3. The reporter discovered that the mayor was taking _____ from the construction company.
4. Every year at this time the king gives _____ to the poor.
5. Ned will be my _____ while I’m on my honeymoon.
6. The teacher prepared a _____ to give to the students.
7. The CEO said he regretted the _____, but there was no other way for the company to avoid bankruptcy.
8. The team lost every game of the season and suffered a 60 percent _____ in attendance.
9. The president called the general and gave him the _____ for the attack.

10-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. You haven't *filled in*. (all the spaces, them)
2. Is the teacher *handing out*? (the tests, them)
3. The company is going to *lay off*. (my brother, him)
4. I'm sorry I *screwed up*. (your plan, it)

10-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I wasn't sure if my plan would work, and I thought about it for a long time before I finally decided to try it. What did I do with my plan?
2. The secretary gave me an application and told me to put the correct information in the spaces. What did the secretary tell me to do?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the application after I put the correct information in the spaces?
4. The mechanic is trying to fix my car's transmission, but she's making a lot of mistakes. What is the mechanic doing to my car's transmission?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the transmission after the mechanic finishes fixing it?
6. You give \$3,000 to the mayor every month so that he will give your company city business. What do you do every month?
7. In Question 6, what is the \$3,000 that you give to the mayor every month?
8. Business is bad at Nancy's company, and they told her that they don't need her anymore. What happened to Nancy?
9. The hotel clerk forgot to call me in the morning to wake me up, so I was late for a very important meeting. What did the hotel clerk do to me?
10. I was born in Hawaii, and I lived there until I was eighteen. What did I do in Hawaii?
11. Sally's parents told her she can't watch a TV show because it's for adults. What did Sally's parents tell her about the TV show?

12. New home construction will decrease if there is a recession. What will new home construction do if there is a recession?
13. In Question 12, if there is a decrease in new home construction, what would it be called?
14. Timmy was teasing Susie all day until his mother told him to stop. What did Timmy's mother tell him to do?
15. Ali is doing Omar's job while Omar is on vacation. What is Ali doing?
16. Blankets and boxes of food will be given to the people whose homes were destroyed by the tornado. What will be done with the blankets and boxes of food?
17. Sarah had to answer the phone while she was watching a TV show. After she returned to the TV room, Sarah's friend Sally told Sarah everything she had missed. What did Sally do for Sarah?

10-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these nouns from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

breakdown, 5	holdup, 7	put-on, 1	takeoff, 1
breakout, 9	hookup, 9	setup, 5	

1. The pilot said that the _____ would be on time.
2. There was a _____ on the highway, and traffic was barely moving at all.
3. A cable _____ is usually \$59.95, but this month it's free.
4. The guards suspected the prisoners were planning a _____.
5. Waiter, we've been waiting for our dinner for an hour. What's the _____?
6. I told my lawyer that it was a _____ and that I was innocent.
7. When the detectives came and arrested Hank, we didn't think it was real—just a big _____.

10-6. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

catch up, 9	get along, 9	hook up, 9	talk down to, 9
-------------	--------------	------------	-----------------

chicken out, 9

give up, 9

pick out, 8

work up, 9

1. Don't try to run ten miles at first; you have to _____ to it.
2. After searching for three days without any luck, the rescue team _____ on finding any survivors.
3. The police showed me some pictures to see if I could _____ the guy who robbed me.
4. You go to the bank, I'll go to the post office, and we'll _____ with each other at the corner in forty-five minutes.
5. I wasn't happy about having Nancy for a partner on the project. I don't _____ with her.
6. Just because you went to college and I didn't doesn't make it OK for you to _____ me.
7. The teacher said, "Your daughter has missed a lot of school, and she'll need to work hard to _____ with the rest of the class."
8. Maria got scared and _____ of jumping off the high diving board.

Unit 11

Phrasal Verbs Used in Compound Nouns

As we saw in [Unit 10](#), many two-word phrasal verbs can be used as nouns. Many of these nouns formed from two-word phrasal verbs can be combined with ordinary nouns to form *compound nouns*:

noun: **backup** compound noun: **backup** disk
noun: **follow-up** compound noun: **follow-up** call

Like ordinary compound nouns, the first noun has a function similar to that of an adjective:

question: *What kind of clothes?*

answer: *Dirty clothes.*

adjective

question: *What kind of clothes?*

answer: *Workout clothes.*

noun

The adjective *dirty* and the noun *workout* serve the same function: modifying the noun *clothes*.

Always stress the first word in a compound noun:

noun: **BACKup** compound noun: **BACKup** disk
noun: **FOLlow-up** compound noun: **FOLlow-up** call

Infinitive: back up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
back up & backs up	backing up	backed up	backed up

1. **back . . . up** *p.v.* When you walk backward, you **back up**. When you drive a vehicle in reverse, you **back up** or **back** the vehicle **up**.

*The fire was so hot that we had to **back up**.*

*I put the car in reverse and **backed it up**.*

2. **back up** *p.v.* When you are explaining something, and you repeat something that you already said, you **back up**.

*You're going too fast. Can you **back up** a little and explain your plan again?*

*Sorry, I forgot part of the story. Let me **back up** a little.*

3. **back . . . up** *p.v.* When you make a claim or statement and then show people evidence or give them information proving that the claim or statement is true or correct, you **back it up**.

*No one believed Jim's accusations because he couldn't **back them up** with any evidence.*

*The IRS asked me for some receipts to **back up** my deductions.*

4. **back . . . up** *p.v.* When you support people in a conflict or a confrontation, you **back them up**. When you support people by doing some work or a difficult assignment, you **back them up**.

*Linda said she would **back me up** if I complained about our supervisor.*

*The general **backed up** his threats with 400,000 soldiers.*

*Jerry is the restaurant's main cook, and Tanya **backs him up** when it gets busy.*

backup *n.* Someone or something that supports or is ready to provide support in a conflict or a confrontation by doing some work or a difficult assignment is a **backup**.

*When the rioters grew more violent, the police called for **backup**.*

*The firefighter entered the burning building without a **backup**.*

5. **back . . . up** *p.v.* When you duplicate important information, such as a computer program or data, so that you will still have it if the original information is lost or damaged, you **back it up**.

*If you're going to install that new software, be sure you **back up** your entire hard disk first.*

*I **back** my work **up** every day before I go home.*

backup *n.* A duplicate of important information, such as a computer program or data, is a **backup**.

*I keep a **backup** of my important computer files on my other computer.*

*The major gave a **backup** copy of the battle plan to his secretary.*

backed up *part.adj.* After you duplicate important information, such as a computer program or data, the original is **backed up**.

*I accidentally erased your photos from your computer. I hope they were **backed up**.*

6. **back . . . up** *p.v.* When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery **backs up** the first.

*The hospital bought a generator to **back up** the unreliable city power supply.*

*We kept the old computer to **back** the new one **up**.*

backup *n.* When a piece of equipment or machinery is very important and another is kept available in case the one that is normally used fails, the second piece of equipment or machinery is a **backup**.

*The skydiver checked his main parachute and his **backup** before the flight.*

*The school had to close when the main power and the **backup** both failed.*

7. **back . . . up** *p.v.* When something **backs up**, it is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

*An accident **backed** traffic **up** for three miles.*

*The assembly line is going to **back up** if Erik doesn't get the parts he needs soon.*

backup *n.* A **backup** is a situation in which something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally.

*I sat in that **backup** for three hours without moving an inch.*

*The huge number of Christmas cards and packages caused a **backup** at the post office.*

backed up *part.adj.* When something is being prevented from moving, progressing, or flowing normally, it is **backed up**.

*Let's take the train downtown. Traffic is always **backed up** at this time of the morning.*

Infinitive: cut off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cut off & cuts off	cutting off	cut off	cut off

1. **cut . . . off** *p.v.* When you completely remove part of something with a knife, saw, or pair of scissors, you **cut it off**.

*He **cut off** a piece of cheese so that I could taste it.*

*One of the kings of England had his head **cut off**.*

2. **cut . . . off** *p.v.* When you stop the supply or flow of something, such as water, electricity, or money, you **cut it off** or you **cut off** the people receiving it.

*I won't be surprised if my electricity is **cut off**. I haven't paid the bill in three months.*

*The bartender told the drunk guy that she was **cutting him off**.*

cutoff *n.* The time when something, such as water, electricity, or money, is **cut off** is the **cutoff**, **cutoff point**, or **cutoff date**.

*I got a notice saying that if I don't pay my water bill soon, the **cutoff** date will be March 10.*

*Ninety is the **cutoff**—students with lower scores on the exam won't be accepted into the advanced program.*

3. **cut . . . off** *p.v.* When you abruptly and rudely drive a vehicle in front of other people's vehicles, causing them to suddenly slow down or stop, you **cut them off**.

*I had to slam on the brakes when some guy **cut me off** on the way to work.*

*The lady in the red car tried to **cut me off**, but I wouldn't let her get in front of me.*

4. **cut off** *p.v.* When someone is **cut off** while speaking on the telephone, the connection is accidentally broken.

*I was in the middle of an important call when I was **cut off**.*

*Getting **cut off** happens all the time when you're on the phone to China.*

5. **cut off** *p.v.* When you create a physical or psychological barrier between yourself and other people, you **cut yourself off** from them. When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are **cut off** from them.

*After Dan joined a cult, he completely **cut himself off** from his family and friends.*

*A flash flood **cut us off** from the rest of the expedition.*

cut off *part.adj.* When you are separated from other people because of a barrier or a great distance, you are **cut off**.

*The bridge was destroyed by the earthquake, and now we're **cut off**.*

Infinitive: drop off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
drop off & drops off	dropping off	dropped off	dropped off

1. **drop . . . off** *p.v.* When you take things or people to another place and leave them there, you **drop them off**.

*Can you **drop me off** at the train station on your way to work?*

Luis **dropped off** his laundry at the cleaners.

drop-off *n.* Something that has been **dropped off** is a **drop-off**. The place where something or someone is **dropped off** is a **drop-off** point, **drop-off** window, etc.

Luis left his laundry at the **drop-off** window.

The north side of the train station parking lot is for **drop-offs**.

2. **drop off** *p.v.* When a business's sales, the occurrence of some event, or the interest some people have in something declines, it **drops off**.

Attendance at baseball games has been **dropping off** in the last few years.

After CDs were introduced, sales of records **dropped off** sharply.

drop-off *n.* A decline in a business's sales, in the occurrence of an event, or in the interest some people have in something, is a **drop-off**.

There has been a **drop-off** in traffic deaths thanks to strict traffic safety laws.

The **drop-off** in car sales was explained by the recession.

3. **drop off** *p.v.* When the level of the ground declines steeply, it **drops off**.

Be careful hiking this trail. It **drops off** steeply on the other side of the mountain.

The island has no beach at all. The land **drops off** straight into the sea.

drop-off *n.* A steep decline in the level of the ground is a **drop-off**.

The bus driver didn't see the **drop-off**, and the bus plunged into the river.

It was hard to see the **drop-off** because of the dense jungle.

Infinitive: follow up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
follow up & follows up	following up	followed up	followed up

1. **follow . . . up** (on) *p.v.* When you **follow up** on something, you return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.

I saw a beautiful house with a "for sale" sign and I **followed up** on it when I got home.

The doctor told me I'd need to **follow** the treatment **up** with physical therapy.

follow-up *n.* A **follow-up**, **follow-up** call, **follow-up** visit, etc., is a return to something that was important to you previously because you now have more information or more

time or because you want to make sure some effort you made previously is correct or effective.

*The customer service manager made a **follow-up** call to make sure I was happy with the repair job.*

*The doctor asked me to see him two months after the operation for a **follow-up**.*

Infinitive: take out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take out & takes out	taking out	took out	taken out

1. **take . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **take** something **out** or **take** it **out** of a container, storage place, or building, you remove it. **Put in/into** is the opposite of **take out**.

*I want to **take** some books **out** of the library tonight.*

*Jake **took out** a gun and shouted, “This is a holdup!”*

*Nancy **took** \$500 **out** of the bank.*

takeout *n.* **Takeout** is food that is taken from a restaurant to be eaten at another location. **Carryout** and **carryout** food are the same as **takeout** and **takeout** food.

*I don’t feel like cooking tonight. Let’s get **takeout**.*

*That **takeout** chicken is good, but it sure is greasy.*

2. **take . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you remove something because you do not want it or because it is damaged, you **take** it **out** or **take** it **out** of something. **Put in/into** is the opposite of **take out**.

*The teacher said my story would be a lot better if I **took** this part **out** of the third paragraph.*

*The school will be closed while the asbestos insulation is being **taken out** and replaced.*

3. **take . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **take** money **out** or **take** money **out** of a bank or a bank account, you withdraw the money. **Put in** is the opposite of **take out**.

*I had to **take** money **out** of my savings account to pay for my medical bills.*

*Nicole’s at the bank **taking** \$1,000 **out**.*

4. **take . . . out** *p.v.* When you **take** people **out**, you go with them to do something enjoyable—dinner in a restaurant, a movie, etc.—and pay for it yourself.

*What do you think about **taking** Mom **out** for Mother’s Day?*

*Jim **took** his girlfriend **out** last Friday.*

5. **take . . . out** *p.v.* [informal] When you **take** people **out**, you kill them.

*The snipers will try to **take out** the kidnapper when he opens the door.*

*The hit man **took** Vito **out** with a shotgun blast to the head.*

Infinitive: try out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
try out & tries out	trying out	tried out	tried out

1. **try . . . out** *p.v.* When you **try** something **out**, you try it to see if you want to buy it or to see if you want to start using it regularly.

*I'm not going to spend \$2,000 on a bicycle unless I **try** it **out** first.*

*You can **try** it **out** for 30 days without any obligation.*

tryout *n.* When you give something a **tryout**, you test it to see if you want to buy it or start using it regularly.

*I gave that low-carbohydrate diet a **tryout**, but I actually gained weight.*

*The airline gave the new plane a thorough **tryout** before making a decision.*

2. **try . . . out** *p.v.* When you **try** people **out**, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before hiring them or before giving them more difficult work to do.

*The manager agreed to **try** him **out** for a week.*

*I told the supervisor that if she **tried** me **out**, she'd see that I could do the job.*

tryout *n.* When you give people a **tryout**, you give them a chance to show that they can perform a job well before giving them more difficult work to do.

***Tryouts** for the football team will be next Saturday and Sunday.*

*If you give Mike a **tryout**, I'm sure you won't be disappointed.*

3. **try out (for)** *p.v.* When you **try out** or **try out** for something, you try to show that you can perform a job well in order to get hired.

*A lot of guys will **try out**, but only a handful will make the team.*

*Daniela's mother told her, "**Trying out** for the cheerleading squad isn't as important as doing your homework."*

Infinitive: wake up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

wake up & wakes up	waking up	woke up	woken up
--------------------	-----------	---------	----------

1. **wake . . . up** *p.v.* When you stop sleeping, you **wake up**. When you cause other people to stop sleeping, you **wake** them **up**.

*Ali is so sleepy in class that the teacher must **wake** him **up** every five minutes.*

*I **woke up** at 2:00 A.M. and couldn't get back to sleep.*

wake-up *part.adj.* When you are staying at a hotel and you ask the desk clerk to call you at a certain time to **wake** you **up**, you ask for a **wake-up** call.

*I asked the desk clerk to give me a **wake-up** call at 7:30.*

2. **wake . . . up** *p.v.* When you learn something that causes you to understand the truth about something or someone, it **wakes** you **up** or **wakes** you **up** to the truth about something or someone.

*I used to smoke, but when my best friend died of lung cancer, it really **woke** me **up**.*

*Hey, **wake up**! She is lying to you. Can't you see that?*

Infinitive: work out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
work out & works out	working out	worked out	worked out

1. **work out** *p.v.* When a situation **works out** a certain way, it happens that way. When a situation does not **work out**, it is not satisfactory.

*The switch to the new system **worked out** a lot better than anyone expected.*

*She said that living with her in-laws wasn't **working out** very well.*

2. **work out** *p.v.* When a situation **works out**, the end result is successful.

*Yes, I thought your idea was terrible, but I must admit it **worked out**.*

*The marriage didn't **work out**, and they were divorced after six months.*

3. **work out** *p.v.* When a calculation or measurement **works out** to be a certain amount, this amount is the result of the calculation or measurement.

*The cost of the food we need for the party **works out** to more than \$1,500.*

*The monthly payment on a 6 percent loan **works out** to \$642.*

4. **work . . . out** *p.v.* When you **work out** a calculation, measurement, or other problem, you do the work necessary to determine the result of the calculation or measurement or think about how to solve the problem.

*Maria **worked out** how much paint we will need for the living room—twenty-five gallons.*

*I've forgotten how to **work out** math problems without a calculator.*

*You need to go to the airport, I need to go to work, and we have only one car. How are we going to **work this out**?*

5. **work out** *p.v.* When you **work out** a solution or plan, you decide what to do after careful consideration, either alone or in discussion with other people.

*The opposing lawyers **worked out** a compromise.*

*I think I've **worked out** a way to buy a new car without borrowing money.*

worked out *part.adj.* After you **work out** a solution or plan, it is **worked out**.

*OK, everything's **worked out**. All the employees understand the new plan and what they have to do.*

*Tomorrow is the party. I'll bring the pizza, Manuela will bring the drinks, and Larry will bring the salad. It's all **worked out**.*

6. **work out** *p.v.* When you exercise in order to improve your health or physical appearance, you **work out**.

*Bob **works out** in the gym for two hours every night.*

*I am so fat. I need to start **working out** again.*

workout *n.* A series of exercises done in order to improve your health or physical appearance is a **workout**. **Workout** clothes are clothes you wear while exercising.

*I'm really sore from that **workout** last night.*

*The trainer designed a **workout** for each player on the team.*

workout *n.* When you say that you gave a mechanical device or system a **workout**, you mean that you caused it to perform some lengthy or difficult work.

*Driving to Alaska sure gave this old truck a **workout**.*

*The snack bar got a real **workout** when three buses full of hungry tourists stopped at the same time.*

PRACTICE

11-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I almost had an accident on the way to work when another driver _____ me _____.
2. With so many delivery truck drivers out sick with the flu, deliveries are starting to _____.
3. You should always _____ your important computer files.
4. The art restorers are trying to _____ a way to clean the painting without damaging it.
5. I hit a tree while I was _____ my car _____.
6. The butcher has only nine fingers. He _____ the other one _____.
7. Professor Taylor has some interesting theories, but can he _____ them _____ with any evidence?
8. After every sale, a good salesperson _____ with a call to make sure the customer is satisfied.
9. I'm going to leave early tomorrow so that I can _____ my suit _____ at the cleaners.
10. No one believed I was telling the truth until Charles _____ me _____.
11. I usually _____ around 7:00, but this morning I overslept.
12. Lydia had planned to spend the summer in Italy, but it didn't _____.
13. The sniper was ordered to _____ the enemy leader.
14. The designers put in manual controls to _____ the automatic system.
15. David and Maria _____ how much their wedding is going to cost.
16. The cost of their wedding _____ to \$225 per person.
17. Be careful—the north side of the mountain _____ sharply.
18. Hello? Hello? The phone is dead. I guess we were _____.
19. Next weekend we're _____ Mom and Dad _____ for their 50th wedding anniversary.

20. The professor's lecture was really confusing, so I asked him to please _____ and explain it again.
21. The bank robbers tried to escape through the back door, but the police went to the back of the bank and _____ them _____.
22. People's fascination with the quintuplets _____ quickly after the sextuplets were born.
23. Bob bought some new skis, and this weekend he's going to _____ them _____.
24. I wasn't very responsible when I was younger, but having children really _____ me _____.
25. Ned used to exercise every day, but he hasn't _____ in months.
26. The baseball manager decided to _____ the new pitcher to see what he could do.
27. I like most of this article you wrote about me, but there's one thing I'd like you to _____.
28. Sam had a lot of big ideas when he was young, but his life sure hasn't _____ the way he expected.
29. The electricity was _____ after a tree fell during the storm and cut some power lines.
30. I _____ my ID card _____ of my pocket and showed it to the guard.
31. Lydia has never _____ a penny _____ of her bank account.

11-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Did you *back up*? (your work, it)
2. They're *cutting off*. (the power, it)
3. I *dropped off* at the airport. (Frank, him)
4. Mom asked me to *take out*. (the garbage, it)
5. Alex *tried out*. (his new bicycle, it)

6. Mike has *woken up*. (Ali, him)

11-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using nouns and compound nouns from this unit. There may be more than one way to answer a question.

1. The photographer always keeps two cameras with him. One is his main camera. He'll use the second if there's a problem with the first. What is the second camera?
2. The phone company says my telephone service will stop on July 1 if I don't pay my bill before that date. What is July 1?
3. Dr. Smith is a new doctor. If he's not sure how to treat a patient, he'll call Dr. Wood for help. What is Dr. Wood to Dr. Smith?
4. You used the new exercise equipment to see if you wanted to buy it. What did you do to the exercise equipment?
5. The police arrested Mrs. Taylor's husband because he was beating her. A social worker visited Mrs. Taylor a few days later to talk to her. What did the social worker do?
6. The clothes I wore yesterday while I was exercising got very dirty. What got dirty?
7. We got food from a Chinese restaurant and ate it at home. What kind of food did we eat?
8. Because of construction, traffic on the highway stopped and there was a long line of cars. What was on the highway?
9. The number of arrests for burglary is a lot lower this year than last year. What has happened to the number of arrests for burglary?
10. Sally lost something very important on her computer because she didn't make another copy in case there was a problem with the original. Why did Sally have a problem?
11. At the edge of the continental shelf, the sea floor falls several thousand feet. What is at the edge of the continental shelf?
12. I made 7,000 copies on this photocopier. What did I do to the photocopier?

11-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The electric company stopped my electricity because I didn't pay my bill. What did they do to the electricity?
2. I bought some fried chicken, and I took it to my house. What kind of food did I buy?

3. Exercising is good for your health. What is good for your health?
4. The telephone company offered to let me use their service free for 30 days, and I'm going to try it. What am I going to do to the telephone company's service?
5. In Question 4, what is the telephone company letting me do?
6. During the flood, a lot of people couldn't leave their houses because of the water. What did the water do to them?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe these people?
8. You're making a copy of your work in case you lose the original. What are you doing?
9. In Question 8, what would you call the extra copy of your work that you're making?
10. The newspaper reporter is getting more information about something interesting that someone told her on the phone. What is the reporter doing?
11. My exercise routine is very difficult. What is difficult?
12. The prosecutor proved his accusation with some photographs. What did the prosecutor do with the photographs?
13. Jane wants to show the basketball coach that she would be a good member of the basketball team. What does Jane want to do?
14. I have a second alarm clock in case the first doesn't wake me up. What does my second alarm clock do to my first?
15. In Question 14, what would you call my second alarm clock?
16. Nicole takes her friend to the train station every morning. What does Nicole do to her friend?
17. I have an appointment with my doctor next month so that he can see if my surgery was successful. What would you call my appointment next month?
18. Maria's plan isn't happening the way she expected. What isn't Maria's plan doing?
19. Bill went with Judy to dinner and a movie and he paid for everything. What did Bill do?
20. Two hundred guests at \$45 each calculates to \$9,000. What does 200 guests at \$45 each do?
21. I have never stopped sleeping at 3:30 in the morning before. What have I never done?

11-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

build up, 2	fill in, 10	grow up, 10	pass away, 1
cheer up, 1	give back, 1	hand out, 10	screw out of
fall off, 10	go ahead, 10	kick back, 10	screw up, 10
feel up to, 3	go along with, 3	lay off, 10	stay off, 2

1. If the company doesn't _____ 20 percent of its employees, it's going to go out of business.
2. Blankets and boxes of food were _____ to the flood victims.
3. I _____ in Germany because my father was in the Army there.
4. Kathy didn't close her car window last night, and it rained. She really _____.
5. You _____. I'll catch up with you later.
6. The percentage of people who smoke _____ after smoking was linked with lung cancer and heart disease.
7. What can I do to get my black cat to _____ my white couch?
8. I was really depressed yesterday, so I called my mother. She always _____ me _____.
9. My Aunt Mary _____ last year. She was 96 years old.
10. I was so stuffed from that huge dinner my mother cooked that I didn't _____ playing tennis afterward.
11. Their lawyer tried to _____ them _____ \$120,000.
12. I don't feel like going anywhere tonight. Let's just _____ and take it easy.
13. I'm sorry I can't agree with you, Joe, but I have to _____ Linda on this decision.
14. Here's my pen. Make sure you _____ it _____ when you're finished using it.

15. I didn't get 100 on the test because I forgot to _____ one of the blanks.

16. The pilot looked out the window and saw that ice was _____ on the wings.

Unit 12

Past Perfect Phrasal Verbs

The *past perfect* is used to show a relationship between one or more times in the past, or a continuous time in the past, and a more recent time in the past.

*Mike **said** that the wedding **had fallen through**.*

more recent past

more distant past

*When I **got** to work, Mr. Taylor **had** already **signed in**.*

more recent past

more distant past

*After I **had signed out**, I **went** home.*

more distant past

more recent past

Often, however, when the past perfect is possible, native speakers use the simple past because the order of events is made clear from words like *before* or *after*.

*After I **signed out**, I **went** home.*

more distant past

more recent past

The past perfect is formed with *had* and the past participle of the verb:

*present: He **wakes up**.*

*past: He **woke up**.*

*past perfect: He **had woken up**.*

Infinitive: back off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
back off & backs off	backing off	backed off	backed off

1. **back off** *p.v.* When you move away from danger or a person you are arguing or fighting with in order to avoid injury or a more serious fight or argument, you **back off**. When you tell people to **back off**, you are warning them that you are becoming angry and that a fight or argument is likely.

*I'm warning you! You'd better **back off**.*

Tom **backed off** when he saw that Jake had a gun.

Infinitive: come across

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come across & comes across	coming across	came across	come across

1. **come across** *p.v.* When people cross from one side of a space or distance to where you are, they **come across**.

*As soon as Sofia saw me, she **came across** the room and gave me a big hug.*

*By 1910, millions of immigrants had **come across** the ocean to America.*

2. **come across** *p.v.* When you **come across** people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. **Run across** is similar to **come across**.

*I asked the antique dealer if she had ever **come across** a Windsor chair.*

*On the trail, we **came across** some hikers from Australia.*

3. **come across** *p.v.* When something you say or do **comes across** a certain way, your attitude or feelings are perceived in this way by other people.

*I was just joking, but I don't think it **came across** that way.*

*His American humor didn't **come across** well in Britain.*

Infinitive: come up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come up & comes up	coming up	came up	come up

1. **come up** (to) *p.v.* When people move toward you to a higher level or position, or from the south to the north, they **come up**. **Come down** is the opposite of **come up**.

*Why don't you **come up** and see me some time?*

*My cousin from San Antonio **came up** to Detroit last week.*

2. **come up** *p.v.* When you move to a higher social or professional position, you **come up**.

*I saw Dan driving a Mercedes. He's really **coming up** in the world.*

*The major didn't go to the military academy. He **came up** through the ranks.*

3. **come up** *p.v.* When a new topic is introduced into a conversation, it **comes up**.

*I don't agree with Jim about anything, so if politics **comes up**, I just leave the room.*

*We were discussing possible candidates to manage the new office, and your name **came up**.*

4. **come up** p.v. When something unexpected happens that requires further attention, it **comes up**.

*I'm sorry I can't go to your party. Something important has **come up**.*

*Until this situation **came up**, we were having a nice, relaxing weekend.*

5. **come up** p.v. [always continuous] When something is **coming up**, it will happen soon.

*Mother's Day is **coming up**, so I need to buy my mother a gift soon.*

*The TV announcer told the audience what was **coming up** after the commercial.*

Infinitive: fall through

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall through & falls through	falling through	fell through	fallen through

1. **fall through** p.v. When people or things drop through an opening from one side to the other side, they **fall through**.

*When I heard the crashing noise, I realized that the roofer had **fallen through** a hole in the roof.*

*My Uncle Fred was ice fishing when he **fell through** a hole in the ice and was never seen again.*

2. **fall through** p.v. When a plan, an arrangement, or a business deal does not happen or is canceled because of a problem or because someone does not do what is expected, it **falls through**.

*The family reunion **fell through** after Dad got sick.*

*Our house is back on the market. The deal **fell through** because the buyers couldn't get a loan.*

Infinitive: put up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put up & puts up	putting up	put up	put up

1. **put . . . up** *p.v.* When you move something to a higher level, you **put it up**.

***Put** these knives **up** where the baby can't reach them.*

*He aimed the gun at me and said, "**Put** your hands **up** or I'll shoot."*

2. **put . . . up** *p.v.* When you attach something, such as a picture or a sign, to a wall, you **put it up**.

*The teacher had **put** some posters **up** in her new classroom.*

*Our real estate agent is **putting up** a "for sale" sign.*

3. **put . . . up** *p.v.* When you build or install something, such as a building, shelf, fence, or wall, you **put it up**.

*We need to **put up** a fence to keep the rabbits out of our garden.*

*I talked to a carpenter about **putting up** some shelves in the family room.*

4. **put . . . up** *p.v.* When you erect or assemble something that is collapsed, folded, or in several pieces, you **put it up**.

*The circus **put up** their tent outside of town.*

*The Native Americans stopped by the river and **put up** their teepees.*

5. **put . . . up** *p.v.* When you contribute money to pay for or help pay for something, you **put up** the money.

*The mayor offered to **put up** half the money necessary to build a new stadium for the team.*

*Mr. Taylor said he would **put** \$3 million **up** toward the cost of a new cancer treatment facility.*

6. **put up** *p.v.* When you fight, resist, or argue against something, you **put up** a fight or **put up** resistance.

*The union **put up** a fight when the company tried to lay off workers.*

*The enemy soldiers **put up** little resistance when the army attacked them.*

7. **put . . . up** *p.v.* When you **put** people **up**, you let them stay with you, usually temporarily, in your house or in a hotel.

*Sam didn't have anywhere else to go after the fire, so I said I would **put him up** for a couple of nights.*

*The hotel desk clerk apologized for not being able to **put us up**.*

Infinitive: screw on

PRESENT TENSE

-ING FORM

PAST TENSE

PAST PARTICIPLE

screw on & screws on	screwing on	screwed on	screwed on
----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **screw . . . on** *p.v.* When you **screw on** the top of a circular container, you turn it so that it becomes tight and keeps the contents of the container inside.

*I hadn't **screwed** the top of the gasoline can **on** tight enough, and all the gasoline leaked out.*

*If you don't **screw** the top of the bottle **on**, the soda pop will go flat.*

screwed on *part.adj.* After you turn the top of a circular container so that it becomes tight and keeps the contents of the container inside, the top is **screwed on**.

2. **screw . . . on** *p.v.* When you attach part of a mechanical device with spiral grooves to another part with spiral grooves, you **screw it on**.

*Make sure you **screw** each of the nuts **on** tightly.*

*Put the new ink cartridge in the bottom half of the pen and then **screw on** the top.*

screwed on *part.adj.* After you attach part of a mechanical device with spiral grooves to another part with spiral grooves, the first part is **screwed on**.

*The top of that water bottle isn't **screwed on**, and it might leak all over the place.*

Infinitive: sign in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sign in & signs in	signing in	signed in	signed in

1. **sign . . . in** *p.v.* When you **sign in**, you write your name on a list to show that you have arrived at your workplace or at some other place, such as a hotel or a club.

*I'm going to be late. Could you **sign** me **in**?*

*All visitors to the consulate are asked to **sign in**.*

Infinitive: sign out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sign out & signs out	signing out	signed out	signed out

1. **sign . . . out** *p.v.* When you **sign out**, you write your name on a list to show that you have left your workplace or some other place, such as a hotel or club.

*Jim isn't here. He **signed out** at 5:06.*

*Dr. Wood usually forgets to **sign out** when she leaves the clinic.*

2. **sign . . . out** *p.v.* When you **sign** something **out**, such as a book or something valuable or important, you write your name on a list to show that you have borrowed the item and are responsible for returning it.

*The professor **signed** the book **out** of the rare book room.*

*Remember to **sign out** your lab equipment before chemistry class.*

PRACTICE

12-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The information in this file is top secret. You have to _____ it _____ before you can remove it from this room.
2. Something _____ at the last minute, and I had to cancel my trip.
3. We'd better _____ the tent before it gets too dark.
4. I was in the library, and I _____ some interesting books.
5. I was sure Janice was still in the building somewhere because she hadn't _____ yet.
6. The attack _____ when a spy gave our plan to the enemy.
7. My son always _____ a big fight when I try to get him to go to bed.
8. I wasn't in the mood for a fight, so I decided to _____.
9. The search party found that the snowmobiler had _____ a hole in the ice and drowned.
10. No one said anything about you last night. Your name didn't _____ even once.
11. The store owner _____ a "no smoking" sign.
12. To attach the filter to the camera lens, you just _____ it _____.

13. The manager always checks to see who doesn't _____ on time.
14. The charity was asked to _____ \$2 million toward the purchase of new medical equipment.
15. Someone had _____ the lid _____ so tightly that I couldn't get it off.
16. My house was destroyed by a tornado. Can you _____ me _____ for a few days?
17. I was upstairs when my wife _____ to ask me what I wanted for lunch.
18. The applicant's criticism of his previous employer didn't _____ well with the interviewer.
19. I bought a plastic Christmas tree that's really easy to _____.
20. Nancy _____ the Golden Gate Bridge every morning to go to work.
21. I didn't go to a fancy Ivy League college. I _____ the hard way.
22. Can you _____ the window shade _____ so that we can get more light in here, please?
23. Susie's mother told her that Christmas was _____, so she had better be a good girl.

12-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Make all the phrasal verbs past perfect.

1. Mike told me that Jerry had been angry and was going to hit Bill, but that Jerry had then changed his mind and walked away. What had Jerry done?
2. Luis had written his name on a piece of paper to show that he had come to work. What had Luis done?
3. The carpenter had dropped suddenly from the second floor to the first floor through a hole in the floor. What had the carpenter done?
4. Timmy had argued with his mother because he didn't want to go to bed. What had Timmy done?

5. Todd's explanation made a good impression on the jury. What had Todd's explanation done?
6. The rich lady had given the money to build an animal shelter. What had the rich lady done?
7. The host of the TV talk show had said that the dancing bear act was going to take place right after the commercial. What had the host of the TV show said about the dancing bear act?
8. The cook had turned the lid of the jar so that it was tight. What had the cook done?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lid of the jar after the cook turned it so that it was tight?
10. The homeless shelter had allowed them to sleep there overnight. What had the homeless shelter done?
11. The president canceled his vacation because a serious problem had suddenly occurred. Why did the president cancel his vacation?
12. We'd had a deal to buy a new house, but we didn't buy it because of a problem. What had happened to our deal?
13. Marsha's name had been mentioned during the meeting. What had Marsha's name done?
14. The Ortegas had built a fence around their swimming pool. What had the Ortegas done?
15. You had found some old newspapers while cleaning the attic. What had you done?
16. Miguel had traveled from Miami to New York. What had Miguel done?
17. The doctor had written her name on a piece of paper to show that she had left the hospital. What had the doctor done?

12-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Try to make some of them questions, some negative, and some present or past perfect.

12-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back up, 11

call for, 4

fall off, 10

follow up, 11

go overboard, 4

put to, 4

try out, 11

wake up, 11

cut off, 11

get at, 4

take out, 11

work out, 11

drop off, 11

go after, 4

throw up, 2

wrap up, 4

1. My sister had a facelift, and now she can't smile or close her eyes. I think the plastic surgeon _____ a little _____.
2. The salesman got a good lead from a friend, and he _____ on it immediately.
3. We need to take the baby to the doctor right now. She's _____ twice in the last hour.
4. Sales have _____ by 13 percent in the last year.
5. That was a very interesting question you _____ Mark at the meeting.
6. Relax, everything's going to _____ OK.
7. Can you follow me in your car so that I can _____ my car _____ at the mechanic?
8. Erik _____ his son _____ and told him it was time for school.
9. I drove into the mountains to _____ my truck's four-wheel drive _____.
10. You should always _____ anything important before you install a new program.
11. The soup I made was awful. The recipe _____ 0.5 grams of salt, but I put in 5 grams.
12. It's getting pretty late. Let's _____ this meeting _____.
13. The guy behind the counter _____ a small piece of cheese so I could taste it.
14. You were happier before we were married? Just what are you _____?
15. The censor told the film director to _____ some of the violent scenes.
16. Jane's going to _____ that new job in the Boston office.

Unit 13

Passive Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

The *passive voice* is used when what happened (the verb) is more important than who did it (the subject):

*The scene of the crime was **closed off** by the police.*

when the subject is obvious:

*The tests were **handed in**. (by the students—who else?)*

or when the subject is unknown:

*My dog was **run over**. (by an unknown person)*

The passive is formed with *be* and the past participle of the verb. *Be* can be in any tense and can be continuous:

*The game has been **called off**.*

*My name was **left off**.*

*The tent is **being set up**.*

*The criminals will be **tracked down**.*

As we saw in the first three examples, saying who performed the action with a *by* phrase is optional, but it is always possible. This is a good way to test a sentence to see if it is in the passive:

*The game has been **called off** by the referee.*

*My name was **left off** by Charles.*

*The tent is being **set up** by the campers.*

*The criminals will be **tracked down** by the police.*

Infinitive: call off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
call off & calls off	calling off	called off	called off

1. **call . . . off** *p.v.* When you **call off** an event, such as a party, game, or something else that had been previously planned, you cancel it.

*The football game was **called off** because of rain.*

*We can't **call** the party **off**—it's going to start in half an hour.*

Infinitive: close off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
close off & closes off	closing off	closed off	closed off

1. **close . . . off** *p.v.* When you **close off** an area, you prohibit people from entering it or passing through it by locking the door or blocking the entrance.

*The police **closed** several streets **off** because of the parade.*

*The house was so expensive to heat that the owners **closed** several rooms **off**.*

closed off *part.adj.* An area that you are prohibited from entering or passing through because the door has been locked or the entrance has been blocked is **closed off**.

*Three rooms in the museum are **closed off**.*

Infinitive: hand in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hand in & hands in	handing in	handed in	handed in

1. **hand . . . in** (to) *p.v.* When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work, you **hand it in** or **hand it in** to that person. **Turn in** is similar to **hand in**.

*The tests must be **handed in** no later than 11:00.*

*He finished his investigation and **handed** his report **in** to the committee.*

2. **hand . . . in** *p.v.* When you **hand in** your resignation or letter of resignation, you inform your employer that you are quitting your job.

*I was so furious that I **handed** my letter of resignation **in** the next day.*

*The President asked the cabinet members to **hand in** their resignations.*

3. **hand . . . in** (to) *p.v.* When you give something to a person of authority who has demanded it or because you no longer need or want it, you **hand it in** or **hand it in** to a person of authority. **Turn in** is similar to **hand in**.

*The guard was ordered to **hand** his gun **in** after he shot the window washer.*

*The drivers return to the factory at 5:00 and **hand** their keys **in** to the dispatcher before they leave.*

Infinitive: hit on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hit on & hits on	hitting on	hit on	hit on

1. **hit on** *p.v.* When you think of an interesting idea or a solution to a problem, you **hit on** it.

*I think I've **hit on** a way to solve this problem.*

*After two years of tests, they finally **hit on** the solution.*

2. **hit on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hit on** a person, you approach and aggressively try to interest that person in you romantically or sexually.

*Lydia had a terrible time at the party. She was **hit on** by every guy there.*

*Let's go somewhere else—Mark keeps **hitting on** me, and I'm tired of it.*

Infinitive: leave off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
leave off & leaves off	leaving off	left off	left off

1. **leave . . . off** *p.v.* When you do not include people or things on a list, either accidentally or deliberately, you **leave** them **off**.

*After what happened at the last party, Dan wasn't surprised that he was **left off** the guest list.*

*Check to make sure you don't **leave** anyone **off** the list.*

2. **leave off** *p.v.* When you interrupt something that you intend to finish later, you **leave off** at the point where you stop.

*OK class, we **left off** on page 92 last week, so open your books to page 93.*

*Finish your story, Uncle Fred. You **left off** where the giant octopus was about to eat you.*

Infinitive: let off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
let off & lets off	letting off	let off	let off

1. **let . . . off** *p.v. [always separated unless passive]* When you **let** someone **off** a bus or other form of transportation, you stop it so that person can leave it.

The driver **let her off** at the corner.

That's my house there. Can you **let me off** please?

2. **let . . . off** p.v. [always separated unless passive] When you are **let off** by a person in authority, you are not punished or you are given only a light punishment.

*It was Jake's first offense, so the judge **let him off** with a warning.*

*People were shocked that he had been **let off** so lightly.*

3. **let . . . off** p.v. When you fire a gun or explode bombs or fireworks, you **let them off**. When you **let off** steam, you express angry feelings or frustration or do something to relieve those feelings.

*The high school was evacuated after someone **let off** a smoke bomb.*

*When I was a kid I used to love **letting off** firecrackers on the Fourth of July.*

*I'm sorry I was so angry this morning. I was just **letting off** steam.*

Infinitive: light up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
light up & lights up	lighting up	lit up	lit up

1. **light . . . up** p.v. When you shine lights on something or attach lights to something, you **light it up**.

*Airport runways are **lit up** so that pilots can see them in the dark.*

*The police **lit** the house **up** with their spotlights.*

lit up part.adj. After a light is shined on something or you put lights inside or attach lights to the outside of something, it is **lit up**.

*The signs aren't **lit up**, so it's hard to see them at night.*

2. **light . . . up** p.v. When you **light up** a cigarette, cigar, or pipe, you use a match or lighter to start it burning.

*Here are the matches—let's **light up**.*

***Lighting** a cigarette **up** next to the gasoline truck was the last thing he ever did.*

Infinitive: track down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
track down & tracks	tracking down	tracked down	tracked down

down			
------	--	--	--

1. **track . . . down** *p.v.* When you find things or people after looking very hard for them, you **track them down**.

*The terrorists were **tracked down** by Interpol.*

*I finally **tracked down** that book I've been looking for.*

PRACTICE

13-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The judge _____ her _____ with a warning.
2. It wasn't cold enough, so we _____ the hockey game.
3. As soon as Nancy's boyfriend went to the washroom, the guy at the next table _____ her.
4. Every Christmas my father used to _____ our house with thousands of lights.
5. The police finally _____ the killers _____ and arrested them.
6. The principal caught me as I was _____ a cigarette in the washroom.
7. The room that was damaged by the fire was _____ to the public.
8. I was really angry that I was _____ the list.
9. That's a great idea! You've really _____ something.
10. Three students got a zero because their projects weren't _____ on time.
11. Driver, can you _____ me _____ at the next corner?
12. Dr. Smith resumed his lecture where he had _____ before the lunch break.
13. After Wilson screwed up the Finance Department, he was asked to _____ his letter of resignation.

14. Even though the enemy soldiers were half a mile away, we _____
_____ a few shots.

15. The dishonest police officers were ordered to _____ their badges
_____.

13-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The bride hasn't *called off*. (the wedding, it)
2. Are they *closing off*? (the gallery, it)
3. The accountant *handed in*. (her report, it)
4. Have you *left off*? (Carmen, her)
5. The judge *let off*. (the pickpocket, him)
6. I told him not to *light up*. (the cigarette, it)
7. The EPA *tracked down*. (the polluters, them)

13-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.

1. He discovered the source of the rumor. What happened to the source of the rumor?
2. The students finished their quizzes and gave them to the teacher. What happened to the quizzes?
3. The judge never sends first-time offenders to jail. What always happens to first-time offenders?
4. A guy started talking to Heather at the dance. What happened to Heather?
5. The list of candidates didn't include your name. What happened to your name?
6. The referee canceled the game. What happened to the game?
7. They are putting ropes around the plaza so that no one can go in. What is happening to the plaza?
8. In Question 7, after they finish putting ropes around the plaza, how would you describe it?

9. The battleship shined lights on the enemy submarine. What happened to the enemy submarine?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe the submarine after the battleship shined lights on it?

13-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

burn down, 5	let out, 7	run into, 1	take apart, 7
give back, 1	look at, 5	run over, 7	take off, 1
give off, 4	pile up, 5	screw out of, 3	talk down to
hand back, 5	point out, 7	set up, 5	

- Most of the city was _____ by the invading soldiers.
- Teacher, will points be _____ for spelling?
- Dan is so rude—I have never been _____ like that before.
- A conference will be _____ between the lawyers for each side.
- The Taylors were _____ their life savings by their stockbroker.
- The children were happy to be _____ of school early.
- Several flaws in the plan were _____.
- Rosa was almost _____ by a cement truck while she was driving to work.
- There wasn't enough room inside the cabin, so the firewood had to be _____ outside.
- The general said the occupied territory would never be _____.
- The test will be _____ to the students tomorrow.
- This engine has been _____ three times, but no one can figure out what's wrong with it.

13. The sun _____ both heat and light.
14. My neighbor stopped at the side of the road to change a flat tire, and he was _____ and killed by a truck.
15. Each proposed design for the new flag was _____ and rejected.

Unit 14

Participle Adjectives Formed from Phrasal Verbs, Part 1

The past participles of many English verbs can also be used as adjectives. You will see that sentences with adjectives formed from past participles are very similar to sentences with verbs in the passive voice: in both cases a form of *be* is used with the past participle. For this reason, it is not always easy to say whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice:

The door was closed. (Is this a passive sentence or is *closed* an adjective?)

Sometimes, whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice is clear from the sentence structure:

The door was closed by the secretary. (passive)

The door was closed when I came home last night. (adjective)

or the context:

question: *What happens if the health inspector finds rats in a restaurant?*

answer: *It's closed.* (passive)

question: *Is the window open?*

answer: *It's closed.* (adjective)

But in some cases it is not possible to say absolutely whether a sentence contains an adjective formed from a past participle or a verb in the passive voice. Fortunately, it is usually not very important because the meaning is often essentially the same. For that reason, throughout this book true adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives are both classified as *participle adjectives*.

Much more important than the difference between adjectives formed from past participles and past participles functioning as adjectives is what the words mean.

Some participle adjectives are written with a hyphen (*make-up*), some without a hyphen (*fixed up*), and some as one word (*rundown*). Not everyone agrees which participle adjectives should be hyphenated, which should not, and which should be written as one word, so you will occasionally see the same participle adjective written with or without a hyphen or written as one word. Also, British English hyphenates many participle adjectives that are not normally hyphenated in American English. Many of the participle adjectives shown unhyphenated in this book are hyphenated in British English.

Infinitive: butt in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
butt in & butts in	butting in	butt in	butt in

1. **butt in** *p.v.* When you enter a conversation, situation, or place (especially a line) aggressively, rudely, and without invitation, you **butt in**.

*I was trying to talk to Jim at the party, but Bob kept **butting in**.*

*My father taught me that it's not polite to **butt in** line. You have to go to the back and wait your turn.*

Infinitive: dress up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
dress up & dresses up	dressing up	dressed up	dressed up

1. **dress . . . up** *p.v.* When you **dress up**, you wear very nice clothes, often for a special occasion. When you **dress** people **up**, you put very nice clothes on them, often for a special occasion.

*You should always **dress up** for a job interview.*

*The Taylors **dressed** their children **up** so they could take some pictures.*

dressed up *part.adj.* When you are **dressed up**, you are wearing very nice clothes, often for a special occasion.

*Where are Tom and Nancy going? They're all **dressed up**.*

*I felt like an idiot at the party—everyone was really **dressed up** except me.*

2. **dress up** (like/as) *p.v.* When people wear old-fashioned clothes or costumes, they **dress up**, **dress up** like someone, or **dress up** as someone.

*Did you see Charles at the Halloween party? He **dressed up** like a cowboy.*

*At Jane's costume party, everyone has to **dress up** as a clown.*

Infinitive: dry up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
dry up & dries up	drying up	dried up	dried up

1. **dry . . . up** *p.v.* When something **dries up** or something **dries** it **up**, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.

*The sun came out and **dried up** all the rain.*

*The Great Salt Lake is slowly **drying up**.*

dried up *part.adj.* After all water or other liquid in something goes away, it is **dried up**.

*The hikers reached the river only to find that it was **dried up**.*

*These leaves will burn now that they're **dried up**.*

2. **dry up** *p.v.* When the amount or supply of something gets smaller and then disappears completely, it **dries up**.

*The factory switched to synthetic rubber after the supply of natural rubber **dried up**.*

*The small grocery store's business **dried up** after a huge supermarket opened across the street.*

Infinitive: fill out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fill out & fills out	filling out	filled out	filled out

1. **fill . . . out** *p.v.* When you **fill out** a form, you put information in the correct spaces. **Fill in** is the same as **fill out**.

*The human resources guy asked Sofia to **fill out** an application.*

***Fill** the withdrawal slip **out** and give it to the bank teller.*

filled out *part.adj.* After all the information is in the correct spaces of a form, the form is **filled out**.

*Here's my application. It's all **filled out**.*

*Are these forms blank or **filled out**?*

2. **fill out** *p.v.* When slender people gain weight, they **fill out**.

*Jake was really thin when he got out of prison, but he has really **filled out** since then.*

*Nicole started to **fill out** after she started working at the candy shop.*

Infinitive: put away

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put away & puts away	putting away	put away	put away

1. **put . . . away** *p.v.* When you return something to the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, you **put it away**.

*I told you to **put away** your toys before you go outside.*

*Todd always dries the dishes, and I **put them away**.*

put away *part.adj.* If something is in the place where it is usually stored while it is not being used, it is **put away**.

*Where is my tool kit? I looked in the closet, and it's not **put away**.*

*The dishes are **put away**. Now let's watch TV.*

2. **put . . . away** *p.v.* When people are **put away**, they are sent to prison or a mental institution.

*I hope they **put** that maniac **away** and throw away the key.*

*Jake was **put away** for ten years after he was convicted of murder.*

3. **put . . . away** *p.v. [informal]* When you consume large quantities of food or drink (especially alcoholic drink), you **put it away**.

*Be sure to buy plenty of beer if David is coming to the party. He can really **put it away**.*

*I don't feel well. I **put away** four hot dogs and a bag of cookies.*

Infinitive: stick up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stick up & sticks up	sticking up	stuck up	stuck up

1. **stick . . . up** *p.v.* When you use a gun or other weapon to rob people, banks, or stores, you **stick them up**. **Hold up** is the same as **stick up**.

*Call the police! They're **sticking up** the bank.*

*If we need some money, we can always **stick up** a liquor store.*

stickup *n.* When someone uses a gun or other weapon to rob a person, bank, or store, there is a **stickup**. A **holdup** is the same as a **stickup**.

*A man wearing a ski mask yelled, "This is a **stickup**!"*

*The detective was asking questions about the **stickup** last night.*

2. **stick . . . up** *p.v.* When you put something, such as a picture, sign, or notice, in a place where people can see it, you **stick it up**.

Sam **stuck** a notice **up** about his lost dog.

I'm going to **stick** these "no smoking" signs **up** all over the school.

3. **stick . . . up** *p.v.* When you push something inside a container or space that is long and narrow, you **stick** it **up**.

*We had to take Susie to the emergency room after she **stuck** a paper clip **up** her nose.*

*Mark **stuck** his hand **up** the chimney to try to find the hidden key.*

4. **stick up** *p.v.* When something long and narrow is raised above the surface, it **sticks up**.

*Be careful walking around a construction site—there might be a nail **sticking up**.*

*My hair was **sticking up** in the back after I woke up from my nap.*

stuck-up *part.adj.* [informal, although the participle adjective **stuck-up** derives from **stick up**, the verb form is never used in this sense] When you think you are better than other people because you are more beautiful or more intelligent or because you come from a higher level of society, you are **stuck-up**.

*Heather is the most popular girl in the school, but she isn't **stuck-up**.*

*They're so **stuck-up**—they'll never sit at our table.*

Infinitive: use up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
use up & uses up	using up	used up	used up

1. **use . . . up** *p.v.* When you **use up** something, you use all of it.

*After you **use** something **up**, be sure to write it on the grocery list.*

*I **used up** all the glue; we need to buy more.*

used up *part.adj.* After all of something has been used, it is **used up**.

*Do we have another tube of toothpaste in the house? This one's **used up**.*

Infinitive: wind up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wind up & winds up	winding up	wound up	wound up

1. **wind . . . up** *p.v.* When you turn the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock to make it operate, you **wind** it **up**.

*I overslept because I forgot to **wind up** my alarm clock.*

*This toy doesn't use batteries. You have to **wind it up**.*

wound up *part.adj.* After someone turns the handle or key of a mechanical toy, watch, or clock, it is **wound up**.

*The toy soldier is **wound up**. Just push the button to make it walk.*

*What is wrong with this watch? It's **wound up**, but it still doesn't work.*

wound up *part.adj.* When you are nervous or tense, you are **wound up**.

*Don't even talk to Joe today. He's really **wound up**.*

*I'm feeling really **wound up**—I need a drink.*

2. **wind up** *p.v.* When you say that someone or something **winds up** a certain way or **winds up** doing something, you mean that this situation was the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. **End up** is similar to **wind up**.

*We got totally lost and **wound up** 100 miles from the campground.*

*If you don't start driving more carefully, you're going to **wind up** dead.*

3. **wind . . . up** *p.v.* When you **wind up** an activity or event, you finish it or get ready to finish it. **Wrap up** is similar to **wind up**.

*The detective **wound up** her investigation and made several arrests.*

*It's getting late. We'd better **wind things up**.*

4. **wind . . . up** *p.v.* When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, string, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, you **wind it up**.

*That's enough fishing for today. Let's **wind up** our lines and go home.*

*The firefighters **wound up** their fire hoses and went back to the station.*

wound up *part.adj.* When you wrap something long, such as an electrical cord, rope, or measuring tape, around and around so that it is in a ball or on a spool, it is **wound up**.

*This rope is a mess. You should keep it **wound up**.*

*This electrical cord is really **wound up** tight.*

PRACTICE

14-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. We couldn't decide where to go, so we _____ staying home.

2. Be sure you _____ this form _____ carefully.

3. Carlos loves to eat. He can _____ an extra large pizza in less than 15 minutes.
4. I'll _____ this notice _____ on the wall.
5. We're going out to a nice restaurant tonight, so be sure to _____.
6. Business at the ski shop always _____ in summer.
7. When you're finished with your Monopoly game, _____ it _____.
8. Congress is _____ some unfinished business before the summer recess.
9. The firefighter _____ her hand _____ the drain pipe to try to reach the kitten.
10. The meeting's almost over—they're _____ it _____ now.
11. Janice went to the costume party _____ like Marie Antoinette.
12. The desert is so hot that rainwater _____ almost immediately.
13. I don't know what time it is. I forgot to _____ my clock _____.
14. Be careful when you sail your boat in this shallow water. Sometimes logs _____ from the bottom.
15. Lydia has _____ a little since she had the baby.
16. Kathy finished cleaning and _____ her vacuum.
17. Frank and Jesse James _____ a bank in Northfield, Minnesota, in 1876.
18. I hope they catch those criminals and _____ them _____ for a long time.
19. I _____ all my time _____ on the first half of the test and didn't have any time left for the second half.
20. My brother is so rude! Whenever I try to talk to my friend Karen, he _____ and won't let me talk.

14-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this unit.

1. I hope it rains soon. Our lawn is really _____.
2. Why are you _____? Are you going to a party?
3. Some of these forms are blank and others are _____.
4. All the people who live in that neighborhood think they're better than everyone else in town. They're so _____.
5. I can't use my printer. The toner cartridge is _____, and I need to buy a new one.
6. The clock isn't working because it isn't _____.
7. Timmy, are your toys all over the floor where they were last night, or are they _____?

14-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Janice *dressed up*. (her son, him)
2. The sun quickly *dries up*. (the water, it)
3. *Filling out* isn't necessary. (the form, it)
4. Ed *put away* in an hour. (six beers, them)
5. They *stuck up*. (notices, them)
6. I'm *winding up*. (my clock, it)

14-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. David was riding his motorcycle too fast and not being careful. Now he is in the hospital with a broken leg. What happened to David?
2. It was hard talking to my mother because my sister kept rudely interrupting our conversation. What did my sister keep doing?

3. A lot of rain fell and made a small lake in the field. Now, after a week, the water is not there anymore. What happened to the water?
4. Alex was playing with his toy trains. Now they are in the box where he keeps them when he is not playing with them. What did Alex do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe Alex's toys?
6. It rained three hours ago, but now there is no more water in the streets. How would you describe the streets?
7. I turned the key in this grandfather clock, and now it is working. What did I do to the clock?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the clock?
9. Daniela put on her best clothes for the dance. What did Daniela do?
10. In Question 9, how would you describe Daniela?
11. Luis wrote all the necessary information on the form. What did Luis do?
12. In Question 11, how would you describe the form?
13. Alex used all of the shampoo. What did he do to the shampoo?
14. In Question 13, how would you describe the shampoo?

14-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

backed up, 11	cutoff, 11	hooked up, 9	set up, 5
broken-down, 5	cut up, 7	hung up, 9	wake-up, 11
burned-out, 8	filled in, 10	piled up, 5	worked out,
caught up, 9	grown-up, 10	screwed up, 10	worked up, 1

1. The clothes are _____ in the closet.
2. Our entire vacation is planned. Everything is _____.
3. My DVR is connected to my TV. My DVR is _____.
4. We live far out in the country away from town, our friends, and our families. I don't like being so _____.

5. My car's _____, so I have to take the bus to work.
6. All the plans and arrangements for our vacation are ready. Everything is _____.
7. All the spaces in this form have the necessary information in them. The form is _____.
8. Nancy's four-year-old son was playing with her computer, and now it's all _____.
9. I was sick and missed several homework assignments in school. But I worked hard and finished all the homework I missed, and now I'm _____.
10. I'm very nervous and upset about something. I'm _____.
11. These DVDs aren't for children—they're _____ DVDs.
12. Timmy's mother used a knife to cut his meat into many small pieces. Timmy's meat is _____.
13. I'm tired all the time, I hate my job, and I need a vacation. I'm _____.
14. My computer crashed last night, but fortunately all my important files were _____.
15. The hotel forgot my _____ call, and I missed my plane.
16. The magazines are _____ in a big stack.

Unit 15

Phrasal Verbs and *Will* or *Be Going To*

Both *will* and *be going to* are used to talk about the future in English, but they are not the same.

Predictions: *will* or *be going to*

Use *will* or *be going to* for predictions. When you predict the future, you say what you think will happen:

*The wind will **blow away** these paper plates.*

*The wind is going to **blow away** these paper plates.*

Willingness: *will*

Use only *will* for willingness. When you offer to do something that you do not have to do, you are willing to do it:

*I will **put up** the shelves for you.*

Plans: *be going to*

Use only *be going to* for plans. When you decide to do something in the future, whether it is long and complicated or short and simple, you plan to do it:

*He is going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

The future with *will* is formed by using *will* plus the infinitive form of the verb:

statements: *He will **come through** San Francisco.*

question: *Will he **come through** San Francisco?*

negative: *He will **not come through** San Francisco.*

These contractions are used with *will*:

I will = I'll

you will = you'll

<i>he will</i>	=	<i>he'll</i>
<i>she will</i>	=	<i>she'll</i>
<i>it will</i>	=	<i>it'll</i>
<i>they will</i>	=	<i>they'll</i>
<i>will not</i>	=	<i>won't</i>

When two contractions are possible, it is more common to contract *will* with *not* rather than with a pronoun:

common: *He won't **come through** San Francisco.*

uncommon: *He 'll not **come through** San Francisco.*

The future with *be going to* is formed with a form of *be* plus *going to* plus the infinitive form of the verb:

statement: *He is going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

question: *Is he going to **head for** Mexico next week?*

negative: *He is not going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

These contractions are used with *be going to*:

<i>I am</i>	=	<i>I'm</i>
<i>you are</i>	=	<i>you're</i>
<i>he is</i>	=	<i>he's</i>
<i>she is</i>	=	<i>she's</i>
<i>it is</i>	=	<i>it's</i>
<i>they are</i>	=	<i>they're</i>
<i>are not</i>	=	<i>aren't</i>
<i>is not</i>	=	<i>isn't</i>

When two contractions are possible, both are equally common:

common: *He 's not going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

common: *He isn't going to **head for** Mexico next week.*

In informal spoken English, *going to* is often pronounced *gonna*. It is not necessary to pronounce *going to* in this way, but it is necessary to understand it.

Infinitive: blow away

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
blow away & blows away	blowing away	blew away	blown away

1. **blow . . . away** *p.v.* When the wind moves something away from where it was, it **blows** it **away**.

*Don't leave the newspaper outside. The wind will **blow** it **away**.*

*The picnic wasn't much fun. It was really windy, and everything kept **blowing away**.*

2. **blow . . . away** *p.v. [informal]* When a person or company has an ability, product, or service that is much better than that of a competing person or company, it **blows away** the competing person or company.

*Apple's new computer is so fast it's going to **blow away** the competition.*

*I thought I had a chance to win the race, but Erik just **blew me away**.*

3. **blow . . . away** *p.v. [informal]* When something you have seen or heard makes you very shocked, amazed, or emotional, it **blows** you **away**.

*The first time I saw the Great Pyramid in Egypt, it just **blew me away**.*

*I was **blown away** when my mother told me that I was adopted.*

Infinitive: come through

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come through & comes through	coming through	came through	come through

1. **come through** *p.v.* When you are in a place and people or things **come through** it, they pass from one side to the other side where you are.

*Betty **came through** the door and sat down at our table.*

*The soldiers were **coming through** the hole in the wall.*

2. **come through** *p.v.* When people travel to your town, stay for a while, and then leave, they **come through** or **come through** town.

*Aunt Sally promised she'd **come through** Milwaukee on her way to Indianapolis.*

3. **come through** *p.v.* When important information, authorization, or permission that you have been waiting for is received, it **comes through**.

*We can buy the house—the loan finally **came through**.*

*The execution was stopped when the call from the governor **came through**.*

4. **come through** (with) *p.v.* When you promise to do something or produce something and keep your promise, you **come through** or **come through** with what you promised to do or promised to produce.

*We were all surprised when Bob **came through** with front row tickets just like he said he would.*

*The state legislature promised to provide the financing for a new stadium, but they didn't **come through**.*

5. **come through** *p.v.* When you **come through** a difficult or dangerous experience, you survive it.

*My Uncle Fred saw lots of action during the war, but he **came through** without a scratch.*

***Coming through** the earthquake alive was a miracle.*

6. **come through** *p.v.* When someone's feelings, attitudes, or opinions can be perceived by someone else, they **come through**.

*The author's hatred of the dictatorship **came through** in the novel.*

*The professor's enthusiasm for the subject really **comes through** in his lectures.*

Infinitive: dry out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
dry out & dries out	drying out	dried out	dried out

1. **dry . . . out** *p.v.* When something **dries out** or something **dries** it **out**, all the water or other liquid in it goes away.

*Before you put this tent away, be sure you **dry** it **out**.*

*After the flood, it took weeks for our house to **dry out**.*

dried out *part.adj.* After all the water or other liquid in something goes away, it is **dried out**.

*My skin always gets **dried out** in the winter.*

*We shampooed our carpet a week ago, and it's still not **dried out**.*

Infinitive: fix up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fix up & fixes up	fixing up	fixed up	fixed up

1. **fix . . . up** *p.v.* When you **fix up** a place, such as a building, street, or park, you repair and decorate it.

*I am going to **fix** this place **up** and try to sell it.*

*The city decided to **fix up** the park.*

fixed up *part.adj.* After you repair and decorate a place, such as a building, street, or park, it is **fixed up**.

*Now that his house is **fixed up**, it looks pretty nice.*

*When you see how **fixed up** Jim's apartment is now, you'll be surprised.*

fixer-upper *n.* A **fixer-upper** is a building in poor condition that can be repaired, renovated, or redecorated in order to increase its value.

*The way to make money in real estate is to buy a **fixer-upper** and do as much of the work yourself as you can.*

2. **fix . . . up** *p.v.* When you **fix yourself up**, you style your hair nicely and put on nice clothes.

*If you're going to that fancy restaurant, you'd better **fix** yourself **up**.*

*David is upstairs **fixing** himself **up** for the party.*

fixed up *part.adj.* After you style your hair nicely and put on nice clothes, you are **fixed up**.

*Where's Michael going? He's all **fixed up**.*

*I got all **fixed up**, and my boyfriend took me to a fast food restaurant.*

3. **fix . . . up** (with) *p.v.* When you **fix people up** with something, you arrange for them to have or to use something that they need or want.

*We told the hotel desk clerk that we wanted their best room, and she **fixed us up** with the honeymoon suite.*

*The travel agent **fixed me up** with a limo to take me to the resort.*

4. **fix . . . up** (with) *p.v. [informal]* When you **fix people up** or **fix them up** with someone, you arrange a date for them with someone.

*Linda and Tom are perfect for each other. I'm going to **fix** them **up**.*

*I asked Jerry if he'd **fix me up** with his sister.*

Infinitive: go with

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go with & goes with	going with	went with	gone with

1. **go with** *p.v.* When one thing is usually or always found with another, they **go with** each other.

*A lot of responsibility **goes with** being a doctor.*

*I never wanted to own an old house because of all the maintenance that **goes with** it.*

2. **go with** *p.v.* When two things are part of one unit or set or if they are meant to be with each other, they **go with** each other.

*One of the fringe benefits of that job was the car that **went with** it.*

*You can't buy the cup without the saucer that **goes with** it.*

3. **go with** *p.v.* When one item of clothing looks nice with another, they **go with** each other.

*She needs to find a blouse that **goes with** her new skirt.*

*I like white shirts because they **go with** everything.*

4. **go with** *p.v.* When you **go with** people, you agree with them and support their idea or plan.

*Senator Dolittle has no opinions. He just **goes with** the majority.*

*We've decided to **go with** the committee's recommendation.*

5. **go with** *p.v.* When you choose someone or something from a group, you **go with** your choice.

*That gray suit was nice, but I think I'm going to **go with** the black one.*

*Everyone who applied for the job is highly qualified. I don't know who I'm going to **go with**.*

Infinitive: head back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
head back & heads back	heading back	headed back	headed back

1. **head back** (to) *p.v.* When you **head back** or **head back** to a certain location, you return to a place where you were before. When you are **headed back** or are **heading back** to a certain location, you are returning to a place where you were before.

*We'll spend a month in California and then **head back** to Des Moines.*

*We got to the beach around 10:00, and we **headed back** when it started to get dark.*

Infinitive: head for

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
head for & heads for	heading for	headed for	headed for

1. **head for** *p.v.* When you **head for** a certain location, you move toward it. When you are **headed for** or are **heading for** a certain location, you are planning to go there or you have stopped and will resume going there. **Head toward** is the same as **head for**.

*Tomorrow we're going to leave Des Moines and **head for** California.*

*I told the guy at the gas station I was **headed for** Santa Fe.*

2. **head for** *p.v.* When you are **headed for** or are **heading for** a certain situation, condition, or consequence, it is becoming more likely.

*If you don't shut your mouth you're **headed for** trouble.*

*This is going to be a great vacation—we're **heading for** a good time!*

Infinitive: tell on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
tell on & tells on	telling on	told on	told on

1. **tell on** *p.v. [informal, used primarily by children]* When you **tell on** people, you inform someone in authority, such as a parent or teacher, that they have made a mistake or broken a rule.

*I broke a glass. You're not going to **tell on** me, are you?*

*Timmy didn't do his homework, and his sister **told on** him.*

PRACTICE

15-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The first time I held my newborn son in my arms it just _____ me _____.

2. I asked Linda if she would _____ me _____ with her friend Nancy.

3. Bob said he could get us backstage after the concert, and he _____ just like he promised.

4. This house is a dump now, but after I _____ it _____, it'll look nice.
5. I saw you eating cookies before dinner when Mommy told you not to. I'm going to _____ you.
6. The composer's love for his native land really _____ in his music.
7. Can you help me? I'm _____ Toronto, but I'm lost.
8. I've never been to the opera before. I think I'd better _____ myself _____.
9. The train _____ town three times a week.
10. If you keep charging stuff like crazy on your credit cards, you're _____ bankruptcy.
11. Do you think these brown pants _____ this blue shirt?
12. All the books damaged in the flood have to be _____.
13. Coke's new sales promotion is going to _____ Pepsi _____.
14. We sat by the phone nervously waiting for the judge's decision to _____.
15. My brother works in a car rental place, and he said he can _____ me _____ with a Mercedes at no extra cost.
16. After looking at pictures of several models, the photographer decided to _____ Nicole.
17. Dr. Wood _____ the door and said hello.
18. All the clothes I left outside to dry were _____ by the storm.
19. My father hated being a salesman because of all the travel that _____ the job.
20. Two of my brothers went to Vietnam, but only one _____ it alive.
21. I asked the clerk in the computer store if the monitor _____ the computer.

22. It's getting late and I'm tired. I think I'm going to _____ to my house.

23. His proposal makes a lot of sense, so we're going to _____ it.

15-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Use *will* or *be going to* with all phrasal verbs.

1. I asked the restaurant manager for the best table in the house, and he is going to give us a table next to the fireplace. What is the restaurant manager going to do?
2. Linda's father promised to pay for her wedding, and she is sure that he will. What is Linda sure about?
3. Raquel's husband is going to be very surprised when she tells him she won \$10 million in the lottery. What is the news going to do to her husband?
4. He'll repair some things in his house and paint it before he puts it on the market. What will he do?
5. In Question 4, how will the house be after he makes some repairs and paints it?
6. Timmy won't tell the teacher that Susie didn't do her homework if she gives him a candy bar. What won't Timmy do?
7. Those mobile homes aren't going to be there after the tornado. What is the tornado going to do?
8. If there's an earthquake, no one in this old building will survive. What won't the people do if there's an earthquake?
9. She'll put on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry. What will she do?
10. In Question 9, how will she look after she puts on her nicest outfit and her best jewelry?
11. Tomorrow, you're going to leave San Diego and go to Tucson. What are you going to do tomorrow?
12. A month from now, you're going to leave Tucson and return to San Diego. What are you going to do a month from now?
13. Erik said he won't ask his sister if she will go on a date with Mike. What won't Erik do?
14. Lydia is at the paint store to choose a paint color for her house. She hates the color blue. What isn't Lydia going to do?

15. IBM has a new microchip that's twice as fast as the competition's fastest microchip. What is IBM going to do to the competition?
16. Uncle Fred is going to visit our town, stay for a short time, and then continue on his trip to Florida. What is Uncle Fred going to do?
17. This puddle is going to slowly evaporate and disappear. What is the puddle going to do?
18. In Question 17, after the puddle evaporates, how will it be?

15-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Try to use *will* and *be going to*.

15-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back off, 12	come up, 12	leave off, 13	screw on, 12
call off, 13	fall through, 12	let off, 13	sign in, 12
close off, 13	hand in, 13	light up, 13	sign out, 12
come across, 12	hit on, 13	put up, 12	track down,

1. During the discussion, your name _____ several times.
2. Our vacation plans _____ after Tom broke his leg.
3. I told you not to _____ that cigarette _____ in here.
4. Flying Mom here for the holidays is going to cost \$1,000. My brother is going to pay \$300, and I'm going to _____ the rest of the money.
5. So far, the police have been unable to _____ the stolen paintings.
6. The searchlights _____ the night sky, looking for enemy bombers.
7. You can't go in that part of the museum; it's been _____.
8. When you travel, always _____ the tops of your toiletries _____ tightly.
9. We decided to _____ our ski trip _____ because there wasn't enough snow.

10. I was getting really angry, and I told him that I was going to punch him in the nose if he didn't _____.
11. The teacher told the students to _____ their homework.
12. I didn't agree with that list of the 100 best movies. They _____ some of my favorites _____.
13. The manager reminded Maria not to forget to _____ when she comes to work in the morning.
14. Mrs. Nash isn't in the office anymore. She _____ about an hour ago.
15. The judge told Jake that the next time he got in trouble he wouldn't _____ him _____ with a warning.
16. I was going through some stuff in the attic, and I _____ some interesting old pictures.

Unit 16

Phrasal Verbs with Gerund Objects, Part 1

Gerunds—verbs in the *-ing* form that function as nouns—can serve as objects of many phrasal verbs. It is more common to use gerund objects with inseparable two- and three-word phrasal verbs:

*She's **counting on** getting that job.*

gerund

*I don't **feel up to** playing hockey.*

gerund

but gerund objects are sometimes used with separable phrasal verbs:

*I wouldn't **put** robbing a bank **past** him.*

gerund

*Mr. Taylor wants to **give** smoking up.*

gerund

Infinitive: act up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
act up & acts up	act up	acted up	acted up

1. **act up** *p.v.* When a mechanical object, a part of the human body, or a condition or ailment that affects the human body is not working properly or is causing problems, it **acts up**.

*I spent \$1,100 to get my car's transmission fixed last month, and it's **acting up** again.*

*I have to sit down. My bad back is **acting up** again.*

2. **act up** *p.v.* When children misbehave, they **act up**.

*Timmy's teacher called. She said he's **acting up** in class again.*

*We're having company for dinner. You kids had better not **act up**. Do you understand?*

Infinitive: carry on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
carry on & carries on	carrying on	carried on	carried on

1. **carry on** *p.v.* When you **carry on**, you continue as before, despite a difficult experience in your life.

*You'll have to **carry on** for the sake of the children.*

*It was difficult for Mrs. Nelson to **carry on** after her husband died.*

2. **carry on** (with) *p.v.* When you **carry on**, **carry on** with an activity, or **carry on** doing an activity, you continue it or continue doing it.

*The soldiers stopped working when the general entered the room, and he told them to **carry on**.*

*She plans to **carry on** with her career after the baby is born.*

*They knew I was trying to sleep, but they **carried on** talking and singing anyway.*

3. **carry . . . on** *p.v.* When you **carry** something **on** an airplane, you keep it with you in the passenger compartment instead of giving it to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment.

*This suitcase is pretty big. I hope they'll let me **carry it on**.*

*You should **carry** your laptop computer **on**. You don't want to take any chances.*

carry-on *n.* **Carry-on**, **carry-on** luggage, **carry-on** baggage, **carry-on** bags, etc., are not given to an airline agent to put in the baggage compartment but are kept in the passenger compartment of an airplane.

*I'm staying only one night in New York, so all I'll need is a **carry-on** bag.*

4. **carry on** (about) *p.v. [informal]* When you **carry on** or **carry on** about something, you are very persistent and vocal about something that upsets you.

*I forgot our anniversary, and my wife **carried on** all day.*

*I said I was sorry; now will you please stop **carrying on** about it?*

Infinitive: count on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
count on & counts on	counting on	counted on	counted on

1. **count on** *p.v.* When you need something important to happen or a certain condition to exist, you are **counting on** it. When you need someone to do something important, you are **counting on** that person.

*I'm **counting on** getting a ride to the airport with Betty.*

*Farmers **count on** a lot of rain in the spring.*

2. **count on** p.v. When you rely on someone or something for help or support if you need it, you are **counting on** that thing or that person.

*I'm going to sell this car and buy one that always starts. I need a car I can **count on**.*

*The governor said that she's **counting on** our support in the next election.*

3. **count on** p.v. When you are certain that something will happen or that a certain condition will exist, you are **counting on** it.

*Marty makes a fool of himself at every party. You can **count on** it.*

*You can **count on** crowds and long lines at Disney World if you go in August.*

Infinitive: get through

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get through & gets through	getting through	got through	gotten/got through

1. **get through** (with) p.v. When you **get through**, **get through** with an activity, or **get through** doing an activity, you finish it or finish doing it.

*I have so much homework that I might not **get through** with it until midnight.*

*After you **get through** washing the dishes, you can start ironing.*

2. **get through** (to) p.v. When you **get through** or **get through** to someone, usually on a telephone or radio, you are able to speak to that person.

*Nancy tried calling Jim last night, but she couldn't **get through**.*

*It wasn't easy, but I finally **got through** to my brother in Borneo.*

3. **get through** (to) p.v. When you **get through** or **get through** to someone, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view.

*Mr. Taylor has tried to make his daughter understand why it's important to work hard in school and get good grades, but he just can't **get through**.*

*I've explained it a hundred times! What do I have to do to **get through** to you?*

4. **get . . . through** p.v. [informal] When you **get** something **through** someone's head, you make that person understand your opinion or point of view. When you **get** something **through** your own head, you understand it.

*I finally **got it through** my son's head that I was serious about sending him to military school.*

*When are you going to **get it through** your head that our marriage is over?*

5. **get . . . through** *p.v.* When something **gets** you **through** a difficult experience, it comforts and supports you.

*Julia's faith in God was what **got** her **through** the loss of her husband.*

*He was very nervous about giving the speech, so he had a drink to help **get** him **through** the ordeal.*

Infinitive: go for			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go for & goes for	going for	went for	gone for

1. **go for** *p.v. [informal]* When you **go for** something, you like it a lot.

*Erik really **goes for** scuba diving.*

*Let's go to a different nightclub. I don't **go for** jazz.*

2. **go for** *p.v.* When you **go for** something, you try to achieve it.

*The gymnast said she was going to **go for** the gold at the next Olympics.*

*After she finished her master's degree, she **went for** a Ph.D.*

3. **go for** *p.v. [always continuous]* When you have something **going for** you, you have an advantage that makes it easier for you to do something or get something that you want.

*Sam's not especially good at basketball, but he has one thing **going for** him—he's seven feet tall.*

*I have ten years of experience **going for** me, so I think I have a good chance of getting the job.*

4. **go for** *p.v.* When you say that a statement about one person or thing **goes for** another person or thing, you mean that it is also true about the other person or thing. When you say "That **goes for** me," you are agreeing with someone else's opinion.

*Heather said that Tom was a jerk, and I said that that **goes for** Tom's brother Bill, too.*

*Betty's really angry about it, and that **goes for** me, too.*

Infinitive: hold off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hold off & holds off	holding off	held off	held off

1. **hold off** *p.v.* When you **hold off** or **hold off** doing something, you delay doing it.

*I **held off** selling our house until our youngest child moved out.*

*You'd better **hold off** accusing Mike until you're 100 percent sure.*

2. **hold . . . off** *p.v.* When you **hold off** an attack, you prevent the attacker from getting close to you or from winning the fight. If you **hold off** a competitor, you prevent the competitor from winning.

*The enemy was so strong that there was no way to **hold them off**.*

*The champion **held off** the challenger and won the game.*

Infinitive: put past

1. **put . . . past** *p.v.* [always separated, used only in the infinitive form and only in negative sentences] When you want to say that you think someone is capable of doing something wrong, you say that you “wouldn't **put it past**” (that person). When you want to warn someone that you think another person is capable of doing something wrong, you say “Don't **put it past** (that person).”

*Is he capable of murder? Well, I wouldn't **put** killing someone **past** him.*

*Nicholas is evil. There isn't any crime I wouldn't **put past** him.*

*You don't think Hank would steal money from his grandmother? I know him better than you do, so don't **put it past** him.*

Infinitive: think about

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
think about & thinks about	thinking about	thought about	thought about

1. **think about** *p.v.* When you **think about** something or **think about** doing something, you consider it before making a decision.

*The salesman tried to get me to sign the contract, but I said I'd **think about** it.*

*I'm **thinking about** quitting my job.*

PRACTICE

16-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. This house is too small for our family. We're _____ moving to a bigger one.
2. These skis are pretty big. Do you think they'll let me _____ them _____ the airplane?
3. This work is very important, and I know you can do it. I'm _____ you.
4. At the next Olympics, Raul's going to _____ a new record in the pole vault.
5. Where's the pain reliever? My arthritis is _____ again.
6. I tried several times to call Alex in Timbuktu, but I couldn't _____.
7. The roller coaster is very popular. If you go on the weekend, you can _____ waiting in line for three hours.
8. As soon as you _____ washing the car, come inside and eat lunch.
9. I wanted to buy a digital camera, but I _____ buying one until the prices fell.
10. Nicholas seems like a nice guy, but he isn't. I wouldn't _____ anything _____ him.
11. David asked me to buy coffee when I went to the store, but I forgot, and he _____ about it for an hour.
12. The defenders are going to _____ the attackers as long as they can.
13. Mike really _____ auto racing when he was young.
14. Sally has a good education and a pleasant personality. She has a lot _____ her.
15. How can I _____ after this terrible tragedy?
16. I've explained the rules a thousand times. Why can't you _____ it _____ your head that I'm the boss around here, not you?

17. When my sister and I were little, we would _____ in church and make our parents really angry.
18. Uncle John was the only one who knew how to run this business. Now that he's dead, we won't be able to _____.
19. I always knew that my brother was the one person I could _____ if I had a problem.
20. I've tried to get her to understand my point of view, but I can't _____ to her.
21. The Republicans are idiots, and that _____ the Democrats, too.
22. Letters from his family helped Jake _____ his prison sentence.

16-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Judy likes taking pictures a lot. How does she feel about taking pictures?
2. Maria didn't finish studying until 11:00 P.M. What didn't Maria do until 11:00 P.M.?
3. The Ortegas took two bags with them to keep in the passenger compartment when they flew to New York. What did they do to the two bags?
4. In Question 3, what kind of bags did the Ortegas keep with them?
5. Jane is considering spending the summer in Bolivia. What is Jane doing?
6. My furnace is not working properly again. What is my furnace doing?
7. Paul couldn't continue his career as a dancer after his accident. What couldn't he do after his accident?
8. We delayed having children until after we had done some traveling. What did we do?
9. You think stealing is something Marty would do. What do you think about Marty?
10. Nancy is going to try to call her sister in Nepal tonight. What is Nancy going to try to do tonight?
11. Hank isn't reliable. You can't be certain he will do what he says he will do. What can't you do to Hank?

12. Dan was very angry, and he yelled and complained for three hours. What did Dan do for three hours?

13. You can't be 100 percent certain that the weather will be nice in Florida in the winter. What can't you do to the winter weather in Florida?

14. I told my daughter to stop misbehaving in school. What did I tell my daughter?

16-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Try to use gerund objects.

16-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

built up, 2

filled out, 14

put away, 14

wound up, 1

closed off, 13

fixed up, 15

screwed on, 12

wrapped up,

dressed up, 14

ironed out, 2

stuck-up, 14

dried up, 14

lit up, 13

used up, 14

1. Charles is so _____. He thinks he's better than everyone else because he comes from a rich family.
2. Now that your house is _____, it's worth a lot more.
3. There isn't any more paper for the copier. It's _____.
4. I washed and dried the dishes, and now they're _____ in the cabinet.
5. Frank's really _____ about his wedding tomorrow.
6. The presents have wrapping paper on them. They're _____.
7. This form has all the information in the correct spaces. It's _____.
8. The floor of the bathroom isn't wet anymore. It's _____.
9. Why is Sarah all _____? Is she going out dancing?
10. Be sure the top of the Coke bottle is _____. If it isn't, the Coke will go flat.
11. You can't go in the east wing of the palace because it's _____.
12. I can see the road easily at night when I'm driving because it's _____.

13. On the map, the _____ areas of the city are shown in yellow.
14. We fixed all the problems. Everything's _____, and we're ready to launch the rocket.

16-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

break down, 5	get over with, 3	put up with, 3
break out, 9	give up, 9	see about, 7
butt in, 14	go in for, 3	take in, 7
feel up to, 3	leave off, 13	wind up, 14
get around to, 6	look forward to, 3	work out, 11
get out of, 6	put up, 12	

1. We couldn't decide where to go for dinner last night, so we _____ staying home.
2. Sally loves all outdoor sports, and she especially _____ swimming.
3. I hate cigarettes, and I will not _____ smoking in my house!
4. It's been seven years since Tom saw his sister. He's really _____ seeing her again.
5. My eyesight got so bad that I had to _____ driving.
6. I'm exhausted. I really don't _____ doing any more sightseeing.
7. The heat in my apartment doesn't work. I need to _____ the manager getting it fixed.
8. It's been three hours since I asked you. When are you going to _____ taking out the garbage?
9. I promised Sally I would lend her \$1,000, but now I don't want to give it to her. How can I _____ lending her the money?
10. Cleaning the house is a lot of work, but I have to _____ it _____ before my mother-in-law comes to visit.

11. The teacher continued her lecture where she _____ the previous week.
12. I haven't _____ all the details, but I've decided to quit my job and start my own business.
13. I was late to work because my car _____ on the expressway.
14. My TV was broken, so I _____ it _____ and had it fixed.
15. When you're camping, you should always _____ your tent _____ before it gets dark.
16. Fighting between protesters and government troops _____ after the general canceled the election.
17. The line to buy tickets for the football game was really long, so a lot of people tried to _____.

Unit 17

Adverbs and Phrasal Verbs

Adverbs are words that modify verbs. Many adverbs end with *-ly*, for example, *quickly*, *slowly*, *suddenly*, *foolishly*; but other adverbs, such as *always*, *sometimes*, and *never*, do not. The placement of adverbs in sentences with phrasal verbs depends on whether the verb is intransitive or transitive, and if transitive, whether it is separable or inseparable. In general, adverbs are placed like ordinary one-word verbs with the exception of inseparable phrasal verbs, which also allow for the placement of adverbs between the verb and the particle. All possible placements of adverbs in sentences containing the various types of phrasal verbs are shown with Xs:

Intransitive phrasal verbs

X subject X verb particle X.

Immediately he came over.

He immediately came over.

He came over immediately.

Separable phrasal verbs

X subject X verb particle object X.

X subject X verb object particle X.

Angrily she ripped up the paper.

Angrily she ripped the paper up.

She angrily ripped up the paper.

She angrily ripped the paper up.

She ripped up the paper angrily.

She ripped the paper up angrily.

Inseparable phrasal verbs

X subject X verb X particle object X.

Slowly we headed into town.

*We slowly **headed into** town.*

*We **headed** slowly **into** town.*

*We **headed into** town slowly.*

Placing adverbs within three-word phrasal verbs is sometimes possible, but it can be problematic. Sometimes an adverb between the verb and first particle sounds acceptable and other times it does not. Sometimes an adverb placed between the two particles sounds acceptable, and other times it will not. This is more a matter of style than of what is correct or incorrect, so unless you are sure it sounds OK, it is better not to place adverbs within three-word verbs.

Three-word phrasal verbs

X subject X verb ? particle preposition object X.

*Eventually I **grew out of** the sweater.*

*I eventually **grew out of** the sweater.*

*I **grew out of** the sweater eventually.*

Infinitive: come over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come over & comes over	coming over	came over	come over

1. **come over** (to) p.v. When people move from one side of a place to the other side, where you are, they **come over** or **come over** to where you are.

***Come over** here so that I can hear you better.*

*When he saw me, he immediately **came over** to my table and said hello.*

2. **come over** (to) p.v. When people come to your house for a visit, they **come over** or **come over** to your house.

*Would you like to **come over** tonight?*

*Jim **comes over** to my house every night.*

3. **come over** p.v. When people cross a river or cross the ocean from east to west or west to east, they **come over**.

*My grandparents **came over** from Sweden in 1904.*

*The ferry **comes over** to this side of the lake every day at 5:30 P.M.*

Infinitive: fall apart			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall apart & falls apart	falling apart	fell apart	fallen apart

1. **fall apart** *p.v.* When the parts of something become completely separated because it is old or in bad condition, it **falls apart**.

*These old shoes are starting to **fall apart**.*

*There's no way to fix this thing. It has completely **fallen apart**.*

2. **fall apart** *p.v.* When a plan, arrangement, system, or agreement fails, it **falls apart**.

*After five difficult years, their marriage totally **fell apart**.*

*The peace agreement is slowly **falling apart**.*

3. **fall apart** *p.v.* When people suddenly lose control and start laughing or become very upset or emotional, they **fall apart**.

*Sally **fell apart** when she heard the tragic news.*

*Tom was so funny at the party last night that I just **fell apart** laughing.*

Infinitive: get back at			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get back at & gets back at	getting back at	got back at	gotten/got back at

1. **get back at** *p.v.* When you **get back at** people, you do something bad to them because they have done something bad to you.

*John won't forget what you did to him. He'll definitely **get back at** you someday.*

*She wants to **get back at** her ex-husband for the way he treated her.*

Infinitive: go about			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go about & goes about	going about	went about	gone about

1. **go about** *p.v.* When you **go about** something or **go about** doing something, you begin or continue to follow all the steps necessary to do it.

*I have no idea how to **go about** opening a restaurant.*

*Every day he quietly **went about** his business and never caused any problems.*

Infinitive: grow out of

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
grow out of & grows out of	growing out of	grew out of	grown out of

1. **grow out of** *p.v.* When people become too tall or too big to wear an item of clothing, they **grow out of** the item of clothing.

*I bought Susie's shoes one size too big, but she's quickly **growing out of** them.*

*Do you want these clothes for your daughter? Mine has **grown out of** them.*

2. **grow out of** *p.v.* When people become too mature for a toy, for an interest, or for a form of behavior, they have **grown out of** it.

*Judy had a big crush on a pop star when she was in high school, but after a while she **grew out of** it.*

*Jim's son is going through a difficult stage, but he'll **grow out of** it in a couple of years.*

Infinitive: head into

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
head into & heads into	heading into	headed into	headed into

1. **head into** *p.v.* When you **head into** or are **headed into** a place or area, you begin to enter it.

*I almost had an accident as I was **heading into** town.*

*We scared away the bear, and it **headed** slowly **into** the woods.*

*Jim was **headed into** Ashland when his car broke down.*

Infinitive: rip up

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
rip up & rips up	ripping up	ripped up	ripped up

1. **rip . . . up** *p.v.* When you tear paper or cloth into many pieces, you **rip it up**.

*Nancy was furious when she read Tom's letter, and she angrily **ripped it up**.*

*Always **rip up** a check before you put it in the wastebasket.*

ripped up *part.adj.* After a piece of paper or cloth has been torn into many small piece, it is **ripped up**.

*After the kids opened their Christmas presents, the floor was covered with **ripped up** paper.*

Infinitive: wear down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wear down & wears down	wearing down	wore down	worn down

1. **wear . . . down** *p.v.* When something **wears down** or when someone **wears** something **down**, the top or surface gradually disappears because of friction.

*The feet of thousands of visitors a year have **worn down** the marble steps of this old church.*

*The mechanic told me that my car's brake pads have **worn down** badly and need to be replaced.*

worn down *part.adj.* After the top or surface of something has gradually disappeared because of friction, it is **worn down**.

*The marble steps are very old and **worn down**.*

*The tread on these tires is dangerously **worn down**.*

2. **wear . . . down** *p.v.* When people **wear you down**, they gradually persuade you, through persistent pressure, to change your mind about a decision.

*He wouldn't tell me the answer, but little by little, I **wore him down**.*

*She still will not give us permission, but I think we're **wearing her down**.*

PRACTICE

17-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I waved to Jim when I saw him across the street, and he _____
_____ and talked to me.
2. This company has been _____ since that idiot was made the manager.
3. Don't leave the newspaper where the dog can get it. He'll totally _____ it _____.
4. We need a lot of things from the supermarket. When are you _____ town?
5. Jake told the boss I was not doing my job, and I got fired, but I _____
_____ Jake—I told his wife about his girlfriend.
6. During the American Revolution, the French fleet _____ and helped the Americans fight the British.
7. The heels on my boots have _____ badly, and I need to get them replaced.
8. Can you help me get hooked up to the Internet? I have no idea how to _____ it.
9. Don't spend a lot of money on baby clothes—she'll _____ them in a few weeks.
10. I need a new car. This piece of junk is _____.
11. Sally asks her parents for a pony about a hundred times a day. She's trying to _____ them _____.
12. When his wife said she wanted a divorce, he just _____.
13. If you're not busy tonight, would you like to _____ and watch TV?
14. My four-year-old son thinks it's really funny to say bad words. I hope he _____ it.

17-2. On a separate piece of paper, rewrite these sentences and place the adverb in parentheses in two possible positions.

1. (frequently) Ms. Taylor *comes over*.
2. (sometimes) These cheap toys *fall apart*.

3. (nervously) He *went about* making the bomb.
4. (eventually) Sally will *grow out of* her childish behavior.
5. (reluctantly) Jim *headed into* the swamp.
6. (suddenly) Pat *ripped up* Mike's letter.
7. (soon) Frank will *get back at* Todd.
8. (gradually) He *wore down* my resistance.

17-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The contract was torn into many small pieces. What was done to the contract?
2. In Question 1, how would you describe the contract?
3. Her plan is not working properly, and there's a lot of confusion. What is happening to her plan?
4. My friends visited me last night. What did my friends do last night?
5. Mike doesn't know anything about applying for a mortgage. What doesn't he know?
6. Tomorrow we're going to drive from the country to the city. What are we going to do tomorrow?
7. When Judy was a teenager, she was very shy, but she's not shy anymore. What did she do to her shyness?
8. The old lion's teeth are not as sharp or as long as they used to be. What has happened to them?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the lion's teeth?
10. I did something bad to my brother, and now he has done something bad to me. What has my brother done to me?
11. The Vikings crossed the ocean before Columbus. What did the Vikings do before Columbus?
12. The teacher walked across the room and looked at your paper. What did the teacher do?

13. Jim became very sad and lost control when he heard that his brother had died. What did Jim do?
14. This sweater will be too small for my daughter soon. What will my daughter do to the sweater soon?
15. The pages are coming out of this old book. What is the book doing?
16. The police are pressuring the suspect to tell the truth. What are the police trying to do to the suspect?

17-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

boil down to, 6	fight back, 8	kick back, 10
chicken out of, 9	find out, 5	monkey around with
come down with, 6	get along, 9	set up, 5
come up, 12	go ahead, 10	work in, 8
fall over, 8	go through with, 6	

1. I don't know when the train to Boston leaves. I'll ask the ticket agent and _____.
2. I don't like our neighbors, and they don't like me. We don't _____.
3. Julia was nervous about bleaching her hair blond, and she decided not to _____ it.
4. Sarah was nervous about having plastic surgery, and she _____ it.
5. The ambassador will try to _____ a meeting between the president and the rebel leader.
6. We have a really busy day planned, but I'd like to _____ a visit to the museum.
7. If someone hits you, you have to _____.
8. I missed a week of work when I _____ German measles.

9. Having a mechanic fix my car will cost a lot of money, so I'll _____
_____ it to see if I can fix it myself.
10. The owner of the construction company was _____ thousands
of dollars to the mayor.
11. My boss doesn't know it, but we work only when she's around. Most of the time we just
_____.
12. The country's economic problems are very complicated. Can you tell me what it
_____?
13. I'm sorry I have to cancel our lunch date, but something very important has
_____, and I have to return to my office immediately.
14. After the car hit the telephone pole, the pole _____ and
crushed the car.
15. I was so angry at my boss that I told him I was going to quit, and he said,
"_____, I don't care!"

Unit 18

Phrasal Verbs and *Can, Could, Will, and Would*

Can, could, will, and would are *modal auxiliary verbs*, often called *modals*. Modals are very important in English, but they can be confusing because they are used to say many different things. Here is a basic review of *can, could, will, and would* and their most common uses.

Could is used as the past tense of *can*:

I can't come over tonight.

I couldn't come over last night.

Would is used as the past tense of *will* (the future use of *will* has already been discussed in [Unit 15](#)) to talk about something that was future in the past:

*I didn't buy that nice coat for my son because I knew he would quickly **grow out of** it.*

Would is used in place of *will* when repeating someone else's words:

*She said she would **get** next Friday **off**.*

Would is used as the past tense of *will* to talk about a repeated past action:

*When I was a boy, the bigger kids would **push** me **around**.*

Normally, *can, could, will, and would* have different uses, and it is important to use the correct one; however, in one special case—making requests—they can be used with very little difference in meaning:

*Can you **get off** the couch?*

*Could you **get off** the couch?*

*Will you **get off** the couch?*

*Would you **get off** the couch?*

Can and *could* are used, with little difference in meaning, to ask for permission:

*Can I **think about** it before I make a decision?*

*Could I **think about** it before I make a decision?*

Can, could, will, and would are used in *conditional* sentences. Conditional means that a condition, usually stated in an *if clause*, must be satisfied for the *main clause* to be true. When the condition is something that is actually possible, the verb in the *if clause* is normally in the present tense. If the condition in the *if clause* is something that could not actually be true, the past tense form of the verb is used.

When the condition in the *if clause* is something that is actually possible, *can* is used in the main clause to discuss a real ability:

If I have a car, I can come over.

When the condition in the *if clause* is something that is actually possible, *will* is used in the main clause to discuss a real willingness or intention:

If I have a car, I will come over.

When the condition in the *if clause* is not something that is actually possible, *could* is used in the main clause to discuss an unreal or imaginary ability:

If I had a car, I could come over.

When the condition in the *if clause* is not something that is actually possible, *would* is used in the main clause to discuss an unreal or imaginary willingness or intention:

If I had a car, I would come over.

Either the *if clause* or main clause can occur first in a sentence, with a small change in punctuation:

If I had a car, I would come over.

I would come over if I had a car.

Infinitive: break through			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break through & breaks through	breaking through	broke through	broken through

1. **break through** p.v. When you use force to go through a wall or other barrier, you **break through** it.

*The thieves **broke through** the wall of the jewelry store.*

*The attackers couldn't **break through** the thick walls of the fort.*

2. **break through** p.v. When you cannot do something because of a problem, and you find a way to solve or eliminate the problem, you **break through** or **break through** the problem.

*After the problem of tissue rejection is **broken through**, organ transplants will become more common.*

*It took three days of negotiation, but we finally **broke through** the deadlock.*

breakthrough *n.* An important discovery or development that solves or eliminates a problem that is preventing you from doing something is a **breakthrough**.

*Dr. Wood announced an important **breakthrough** in the search for a cure for AIDS.*

Infinitive: figure on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
figure on & figures on	figuring on	figured on	figured on

1. **figure on** *p.v.* When you **figure on** something, you expect it or plan for it.

*I didn't **figure on** such cold weather. I wish I'd brought a coat.*

*You can **figure on** spending at least \$200 if you're going to that restaurant.*

Infinitive: fizzle out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fizzle out & fizzles out	fizzling out	fizzled out	fizzled out

1. **fizzle out** *p.v.* When a plan, effort, or attempt to do something comes to a weak and unsuccessful end, it **fizzles out**.

*The revolution **fizzled out** when the rebel leader was captured.*

*Jim and Mary's romance **fizzled out** after Jim was transferred to a different city.*

Infinitive: get off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get off & gets off	getting off	got off	gotten/got off

1. **get off** *p.v.* When you **get off** a bus, airplane, or train, you leave it.

*The bus stopped and I **got off**.*

*You can't **get off** the train while it's moving.*

2. **get off** *p.v.* When you are standing, lying, or sitting on something, such as a horse, bicycle, motorcycle, stage, platform, or piece of furniture, and you step down from it onto the ground, you **get off** it.

*You're so lazy. Why don't you **get off** the couch and help me?*

***Get off** your bicycle and come inside.*

3. **get off** *p.v.* When you are standing within an area of ground, or on something that covers an area of ground, and you move to the side of it and step off of it, you **get off** it.

*The referee told the player to **get off** the field.*

*You're standing on our beach blanket—**get off** it!*

4. **get . . . off** *p.v.* When you **get** something **off**, you remove it even though it may be difficult.

*I can't **get** this paint **off** my hands.*

*The top of this bottle is on so tight I cannot **get it off**.*

5. **get . . . off** *p.v.* When you **get** a certain period of time **off**, you are allowed by your employer to miss work during this period.

*Pregnant women usually **get** three months **off** with pay.*

*Could I **get** tomorrow morning **off** to go to the doctor?*

6. **get off** *p.v.* When you **get off**, or **get off** work, you finish that day's work and leave your place of employment.

*Sally said she wouldn't **get off** work until 6:00.*

*I haven't **gotten off** early all week.*

7. **get . . . off** *p.v.* When you do something wrong but are not punished, or you are punished only lightly for it, you **get off**. Someone who helps you to avoid punishment **gets** you **off**.

*He killed four people, but he **got off** with only three years in jail.*

*If his lawyer hadn't been so incompetent, he could have **gotten** him **off** with a lighter sentence.*

8. **get off** *p.v.* When you stop talking on the telephone, you **get off** the telephone.

***Get off** the phone—I need to use it!*

*It's late, we'd better **get off** the phone.*

Infinitive: line up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
line up & lines up	lining up	lined up	lined up

1. **line . . . up** *p.v.* When people or things form a row, they **line up**. When you arrange people or things so that they form a row, you **line them up**.

*People **lined up** to buy Superbowl tickets.*

*Timmy is **lining** his toy cars **up**.*

lined up *part.adj.* People or things that form a row are **lined up**.

*People have been **lined up** outside the box office for three days.*

*The children are **lined up** for attendance.*

2. **line . . . up** *p.v.* When something **lines up** with something else, or when you **line up** something with something else, it is positioned correctly in relation to something else.

*If this bolt doesn't **line up** with that hole, the lock won't work.*

*The holes in part A have to **line up** with the holes in part B before you screw them together.*

3. **line . . . up** *p.v.* When you arrange for someone or something to be available at a future activity or event, you **line** that thing or person **up**.

*I couldn't **line** a clown **up** for Susie's birthday party.*

*Have they **lined up** a band and a singer for the wedding reception?*

lined up *part.adj.* Someone or something that you have arranged to be available for a future activity or event is **lined up**.

*Don't worry about the show; everything is **lined up**.*

*The singer is **lined up**, but the band isn't.*

lineup *n.* The people or things planned for an event are the **lineup**.

*The network has planned quite a **lineup** of entertainers for the half-time special.*

*There's always a trapeze act in the circus **lineup**.*

Infinitive: push around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
push around & pushes around	pushing around	pushed around	pushes around

1. **push . . . around** *p.v.* When you **push** people **around**, you tell them what to do in a rude and insulting way.

*Alex tries to **push** Carlos **around**, but Carlos won't put up with it.*

*I know my rights. You can't **push** me **around**.*

Infinitive: suck up to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
suck up to & sucks up to	sucking up to	sucked up to	sucked up to

1. **suck up to** *p.v.* When you **suck up to** a person in authority, such as a boss or a teacher, you act in a very flattering and subservient manner in order to gain an advantage with that person.

*Did you see how Jim is **sucking up to** the new manager? It's disgusting.*

*He got to be vice president of Taylor Industries at the age of twenty-five by **sucking up to** Mr. Taylor.*

Infinitive: tell apart

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
tell apart & tells apart	telling apart	told apart	told apart

1. **tell . . . apart** *p.v.* When it is possible to see how two similar things are different, you can **tell** them **apart**.

*The twins are identical. No one can **tell** them **apart**.*

*All the puppies look the same, and I have a hard time **telling** them **apart**.*

PRACTICE

18-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Could you _____ the phone? I want to make an important call.

2. Neither side would give an inch. There was no way to _____ the stalemate.

3. If you put this fake Rolex watch next to a real one, you can _____ them _____ easily.
4. Jim wanted to go to a movie tonight, but I told him I wouldn't _____ work until late.
5. If the holes don't _____, the screws won't go in.
6. Every day Maria tells her boss how handsome and smart he is. She really _____ him.
7. When Marty drinks, he gets abusive and tries to _____ people _____.
8. The lawyer was sure he could _____ him _____ with only two years in prison.
9. When I took this job after I finished high school, I never _____ spending thirty-five years here.
10. Mother was the last one to _____ the airplane.
11. Bob _____ everything in his cabinet so that it's easy to find what he's looking for.
12. Lydia told me she would try to _____ three weeks _____ so we can go on vacation.
13. There were police barricades around the palace, but some of the protesters _____.
14. Children, stop jumping on the bed with your dirty shoes. _____ right now!
15. After it started to rain, the beach party began to _____.
16. Some CDs come wrapped in plastic that's almost impossible to _____.
17. I couldn't _____ a magician for the birthday party.
18. _____ the carpet! I just shampooed it.

18-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Paul said he would remove his cat from the table. What did Paul say?
2. I can't see any difference between the original and the copy. What can't I do?
3. The company's attempt to go after a younger market is failing. What is the company's attempt doing?
4. Bill said he hadn't expected snow in May. What did Bill say?
5. Nancy arranged for a great band to play at the prom next week. What did Nancy do?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the band?
7. I'm not going to let Marty rudely tell me what to do. What am I not going to let Marty do?
8. The soldiers smashed a hole in the wall and entered the city. What did the soldiers do to the wall?
9. Carlos stops working at 5:00 every day. What does Carlos do at 5:00 every day?
10. You were arrested for reckless driving, but the judge gave you only a warning. What did you do?
11. The teacher moved all the desks in his classroom so that they were in straight rows. What did the teacher do?
12. In Question 11, how would you describe the desks?
13. She asked me if I would stop talking on the telephone. What did she say?
14. The new guy in our office keeps telling me that I'm the best assistant manager in the company and that I should be the president of the company. What is he doing?
15. The human resources manager at my new job said I wouldn't have to work on Sundays. What did the human resources manager say?
16. When you put a doorknob on a door, the two sides have to be directly across from each other. How do the two sides have to be?
17. Sam stepped from the train. What did Sam do?
18. Mark's father told him to move from the grass to the sidewalk. What did Mark's father tell Mark?

18-3. On a separate piece of paper, complete these sentences, using your own words, with phrasal verbs from this unit or previous units.

1. Last week, he couldn't

_____.

2. When I was younger, I could

_____.

3. He'll

_____.

4. When I _____, I would

_____.

5. Could you

_____?

6. Would you

_____?

7. Can I

_____?

8. Could I

_____?

18-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

act up, 16

go along with, 3

hold off, 16

carry on, 16

go for, 16

put past, 16

come over, 17

go with, 15

tell on, 15

come through, 15

grow out of, 17

think about, 16

count on, 16

head back, 15

get through, 16

head for, 15

1. I suggested that we go to Paris, and my wife really _____ the idea.

2. After I _____ it, I decided not to take the job.
3. I _____ buying a new computer because I thought they would be on sale in January.
4. Do you think this yellow tie _____ this blue shirt?
5. Her uncle promised to pay for her college education, and he _____.
6. It's very important that you do this work correctly. I'm _____ you.
7. Timmy broke a window, and his sister _____ him.
8. The detective asked me if Jake had robbed the bank, and I said I didn't know but that I wouldn't _____ it _____ him.
9. Todd said he would _____ to my house after dinner and help me with my homework.
10. The reason Charles is vice-president of the company is that he _____ the boss on every decision.
11. Tomorrow I'm going to leave Winnipeg and _____ Toronto.
12. I probably won't _____ to Winnipeg for a month or more.
13. I didn't get Sally what she wanted for her birthday, and she _____ about it all day.
14. You have so much work to do. When do you think you'll _____?
15. I bought these pants for my son a month ago, and he's _____ them already.
16. We need to buy a new photocopier for our office. The one we have now _____ all the time.

Unit 19

Phrasal Verbs and the Adverb *Right*

The adverb *right* is often used to intensify the meaning of a phrasal verb. Placed before the particle, *right* means *directly*, *immediately*, or *quickly*. It is not important whether the phrasal verb is intransitive, separable, or inseparable. What does matter is whether the action of the verb is something that can logically be done directly, immediately, or quickly. For example, it would be illogical to use *right* with *grow up* or *wear down*:

She aimed right at me. (She aimed directly at me.)

I'll bring it right over. (I'll bring it over immediately.)

The room warmed right up. (The room warmed up quickly.)

Right can be used when a separable phrasal verb is separated by its object; however, *right* cannot be used when the object follows the particle:

He brought my radio right back.

~~*He brought right back my radio.*~~

Infinitive: aim at

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
aim at & aims at	aiming at	aimed at	aimed at

1. **aim . . . at** *p.v.* When you point a weapon at people or things, you **aim** it **at** them.

The robber aimed the gun right at me.

He was aiming the arrow at the apple, but he missed.

2. **aim at** *p.v.* When you **aim at** something you want, you do what is necessary to get it.

The manager said she was aiming at a 14 percent increase in sales next year.

The new law is aimed at reducing crime in the streets.

3. **aim . . . at** *p.v.* When you do something designed to affect one class or type of people, you **aim** it **at** those people.

*Cigarette manufacturers were accused of **aiming** their advertising **at** young people.*

*The candidate's speech was **aimed at** female voters.*

Infinitive: bring back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
bring back & brings back	bringing back	brought back	brought back

1. **bring . . . back** *p.v.* When you take something to another place and then bring it from that place to the place where you were before, you **bring** it **back**.

*I told Tom to **bring** my pen right **back**.*

*Sally borrowed my blue sweater and **brought** it **back** yesterday.*

2. **bring . . . back** *p.v.* When something that was popular or current in the past is introduced again, it is **brought back**.

*Many schools are **bringing back** uniforms for children.*

*Every few years designers try to **bring** miniskirts **back**.*

3. **bring . . . back** *p.v.* When something causes you to recall memories and emotions from the past, it **brings** the memories and emotions **back**.

*Looking at these old pictures **brought back** wonderful memories.*

*I had tried to forget that awful incident, but this magazine article has **brought** it all **back**.*

Infinitive: chill out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
chill out & chills out	chilling out	chilled out	chilled out

1. **chill out** *p.v. [informal]* When people relax or do things that are pleasurable and fun, and not work, they **chill out**.

*I was going to clean my house yesterday, but I just **chilled out** instead.*

*My BFF is coming over tonight. We're just going to stay here and **chill out**.*

Infinitive: cool off

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cool off & cools off	cooling off	cooled off	cooled off

1. **cool off** *p.v.* When the temperature of a thing or place becomes lower, it **cools off**.

*It was really hot yesterday, but it **cooled off** in the evening.*

*This is too hot—I'll eat it after it **cools off**.*

2. **cool . . . off** *p.v.* When people or things cause a thing or place to become cooler, they **cool it off**.

*The coffee was really hot, but he put an ice cube in it and it **cooled right off**.*

*This bath is too hot. Put more cold water in it to **cool it off**.*

3. **cool off** *p.v.* When you become less angry or less excited, you **cool off**.

*He's furious now, but he'll **cool off** by morning.*

*Their passion for each other has **cooled off**.*

Infinitive: go back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go back & goes back	going back	went back	gone back

1. **go back (to)** *p.v.* When you return to a place where you were before, you **go back** or **go back** to that place.

*That restaurant was terrible. We'll never **go back**.*

*Dorothy left the Emerald City and **went back** to Kansas.*

2. **go back (to)** *p.v.* When a condition, problem, practice, or custom **goes back** to a certain time, it began at that time.

*The tradition of saluting in the military **goes back** to the Middle Ages.*

*His drug problem **goes back** to his college years.*

3. **go back (to)** *p.v.* When you are discussing the age of something, you **go back** or **go back** to when it was created or started.

*This table is very valuable. It **goes back** to the 1760s.*

*The archeologist found ruins that **go back** 5,000 years.*

Infinitive: hand over

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hand over & hands over	handing over	handed over	handed over

1. **hand . . . over** (to) *p.v.* When you give something to people because they demand it, because they require it, or because you are not its rightful owner, you **hand it over** or **hand it over** to them. **Turn over** is similar to **hand over**.

*I found some money in the street, and I **handed it over** to the police.*

*Those are my sunglasses—**hand** them right **over**!*

handover *n.* When you transfer ownership or control of something to someone because that person has demanded it or because you are not its rightful owner, this is called a **handover**.

*The Chinese celebrated Britain's **handover** of Hong Kong.*

*The President demanded the immediate **handover** of the occupied territory.*

2. **hand . . . over** *p.v.* When you give someone responsibility for an important project, duty, or problem, you **hand** that project, duty, or problem **over** or **hand it over** to someone.

*Mr. Wilson retired and **handed** control of the company **over** to his son.*

*The TV news anchor **handed** the show **over** to the reporter at the White House.*

Infinitive: pull over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pull over & pulls over	pulling over	pulled over	pulled over

1. **pull . . . over** *p.v.* When you are driving and then move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and then stop, you **pull over** or **pull** your vehicle **over**.

*I **pulled over** to fix a flat tire.*

*We're lost. Let's **pull** the car **over** and ask someone for directions.*

2. **pull . . . over** *p.v.* When you are driving and a police officer signals you to move your vehicle to the side of the road, reduce your speed, and stop, the police officer **pulls** you **over** or **pulls** your vehicle **over**.

*Jim was driving on the wrong side of the road, and he got **pulled over** by the state police.*

*When the police officer saw the driver go through a red light, he **pulled** the car right over.*

Infinitive: warm up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
warm up & warms up	warming up	warmed up	warmed up

1. **warm up** *p.v.* When the temperature of a thing or place becomes higher, it **warms up**.

*It's cold outside. I hope it **warms up** before the picnic.*

*I set the thermostat at eighty degrees, and the house **warmed** right up.*

2. **warm . . . up** *p.v.* When people or things cause a thing or place to become warmer, they **warm it up**.

*The fireplace doesn't really **warm** the house **up** much.*

*That soup is cold. You can **warm it up** in the microwave.*

warmed up *part.adj.* After a thing or place has become warmer, it is **warmed up**.

*Give the baby the bottle with the flowers on it. It's **warmed up**.*

3. **warm . . . up** *p.v.* When you allow a mechanical device to run for a short time before being used, you **warm it up**. When a mechanical device runs for a short time before being used, it **warms up**.

*You should always **warm** your car **up** for a few minutes before you go anywhere.*

*In the winter I always let my car **warm up** while I eat breakfast.*

warmed up *part.adj.* After a mechanical device has been allowed to **warm up** and is ready to be used, it is **warmed up**.

*We have to go. Is the car **warmed up** yet?*

4. **warm up** *p.v.* When you do light exercises before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort, you **warm up**. When performers play musical instruments or sing just before a performance in order to be ready, they **warm up**.

*Before a race most runners **warm up** with stretching exercises.*

*The singer **warmed up** in her dressing room before the concert.*

warm-up *n.* Light exercises done before playing a sport or exercising with greater effort are called a **warm-up**. When a performer plays an instrument or sings just before a performance in order to be ready, this is a **warm-up**.

*The runners got to the stadium early so they would have time for a **warm-up**.*

warm-up *n.* **Warm-up** clothes are worn during a **warm-up**. **Warm-up** exercises are done before playing a sport or exercising. A **warm-up** game, round, etc., is played in order to **warm up** for the actual game.

*The baseball players wore their **warm-up** jackets when they weren't on the field.*

PRACTICE

19-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The pizza was cold, so I put it in the microwave to _____ it _____.
2. My car was making a strange noise, so I _____ to look at the engine.
3. Can I use your lawn mower? I'll _____ it right _____ tomorrow.
4. Jim always puts milk in his coffee to _____ it _____.
5. The roots of the trouble in the Middle East _____ thousands of years.
6. The new police chief said that he thinks that abolishing capital punishment was a mistake and that it should be _____.
7. The judge ordered the thieves to _____ the stolen merchandise.
8. Hearing Uncle John's stories about the old country _____ a lot of memories.
9. With this new antipollution law we're _____ reducing the amount of pollution by 50 percent in ten years.
10. I had a bad day at work today, so this evening, I'm just going to stay home and _____.
11. The mechanic recommended letting the car _____ before driving it.
12. The robber changed his mind when he saw the guard _____ his gun right _____ him.
13. The local police chief _____ the investigation _____ to the FBI agents.

14. Your father's angry right now. Talk to him about your miserable report card after he's _____.
15. The changes at the factory are _____ reducing costs and increasing profits.
16. The mystery of the Pyramids _____ nearly 5,000 years.
17. The coach always makes the players _____ before the game.
18. After lunch Jerry _____ right _____ to work.
19. This coffee is too hot. I can't drink it until it _____.
20. I was _____ by the sheriff for going eighty miles per hour in a school zone.
21. It's cold now, but it'll _____ by noon.

19-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Could you *bring back*. (my tool kit, it)
2. The air conditioner quickly *cooled off*. (my apartment, it)
3. Todd *handed over*. (his wallet, it)
4. The sheriff *pulled over*. (the suspects, them)
5. The drivers are *warming up*. (their trucks, them)

19-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. Replace the underlined adverbs with *right*. Remember that *right* can be used only when the verb and the particle are separated.

1. They lit a fire, and the cabin became warm quickly. What did the cabin do?
2. You will return to work immediately. What will you do?
3. After the sun set, the backyard became cooler quickly. What did the backyard do?
4. If I saw the flashing lights of the police car, I would slow my car and stop at the side of the road immediately. What would I do?

5. Sergeant Jones pointed his rifle directly at the enemy soldier. What did Sergeant Jones do?
6. She told me to return her dictionary immediately. What did she say?
7. Linda's father told her to give him his credit card immediately. What did Linda's father tell her to do?
8. I called Lydia and told her I needed medicine for my son, and she took the medicine from her house to my house immediately. What did Lydia do to the medicine?

19-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back off, 12	fizzle out, 18	put up, 12
break through, 18	head into, 17	suck up to, 18
come across, 12	hit on, 13	tell apart, 18
come up with, 6	let off, 13	track down, 13
fall through, 12	push around, 18	wind up, 14
figure on, 18		

1. The prisoners _____ the wall of the prison and escaped.
2. They escaped because they were tired of being _____ by the rude and abusive prison guards.
3. I was a terrible student in college, but I _____ my professors and graduated easily.
4. The guards used dogs to _____ one of the escaped prisoners the next day.
5. The other prisoner _____ some dense forest.
6. The prisoner tried to steal a man's car, but when he saw the man's large dog, he _____.
7. The police had a meeting to try to _____ a way to capture the prisoner.
8. They finally _____ the idea of using a helicopter.
9. The helicopter plan _____ because the weather was so bad.

10. The police thought the prisoner would probably _____ at his family's house.
11. The prisoner has a twin brother, and the police couldn't _____ them _____.
12. That was one problem the police didn't _____.
13. One police officer walked behind the house and _____ some garbage cans.
14. The prisoner _____ a fight, but the police were able to capture him.
15. Their escape attempt had _____.
16. Both prisoners were charged with escaping from prison, but the judge _____ them _____ with a warning.

Unit 20

Phrasal Verbs Followed by the *-ing* Form

Some phrasal verbs can be followed by the *-ing* form of verbs:

He ended up staying home.

She lies around doing nothing.

The *-ing* form can be negative:

He ended up not going anywhere.

She lies around not doing anything.

Nouns and pronouns can come between the phrasal verb and the *-ing* form:

The doctor went around the hospital visiting his patients.

Jim hangs around Janice hoping she'll fall in love with him.

Prepositional phrases can come between the phrasal verb and the *-ing* form:

My luggage ended up on the wrong flight going to the wrong city.

I started out at the bottom working in the mailroom.

Other adverbs and adverbial expressions can come between the phrasal verb and the *-ing* form:

Bill goes around constantly looking for bargains.

She stayed up late watching TV.

I went around all day not knowing I had spinach in my teeth.

He ended up here asking for money.

Infinitive: end up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
end up & ends up	ending up	ended up	ended up

1. **end up** *p.v.* When people **end up** doing something or **end up** a certain way, it is the result of a series of decisions, actions, or unplanned and unexpected occurrences. **End up** is similar to **wind up**.

*A hurricane was approaching Florida, so we **ended up** coming home from our vacation early.*

*Judy has never gone skydiving before, so she'll probably **end up** in the hospital with two broken legs.*

2. **end up** *p.v.* When people or things **end up** in a place, this place is where their journey ends even though the outcome may have been unplanned or unexpected.

*How did London Bridge **end up** in Arizona?*

*The taxi driver didn't understand me, and we **ended up** in Newark instead of New York.*

Infinitive: go around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go around & goes around	going around	gone around	gone around

1. **go around** *p.v.* When people or things follow a circular path and return to the same place, they **go around**.

*The horse has **gone around** the track three times.*

*It took seven days to **go around** the island.*

2. **go around** *p.v.* When people or things follow an indirect or curved path in order to avoid an obstacle or to change direction, they **go around** or **go around** the obstacle.

*Heather **went around** the curve too fast, and she ended up in the ditch.*

*There was some broken glass in the street, but I **went around** it.*

3. **go around** *p.v.* When an object spins or turns, it **goes around**.

*The disk drives in computers **go around** very fast.*

*The children have to stay on the merry-go-round until it stops **going around**.*

4. **go around** *p.v.* When you **go around** a place, you visit various parts of it.

*The president **went around** the state giving the same speech at every stop.*

*The exterminator is **going around** the house looking for rats.*

5. **go around** *p.v.* When you **go around** in a certain condition or **go around** doing something, you go to various places and allow other people to see you.

*I was so embarrassed—I **went around** all day with my zipper open.*

*Are you going to **go around** all day wearing that stupid hat?*

6. **go around** *p.v.* When you **go around** doing something, you go to various places and deliberately do something that may bother or upset other people.

*The new manager **goes around** telling everyone how to do their jobs.*

*Don't **go around** sticking your nose in other people's business.*

7. **go around** *p.v.* When something **goes around**, it spreads to various parts of a larger place.

*A rumor **went around** that the plant was going to close.*

*He probably has the flu. It's been **going around**.*

8. **go around** *p.v.* When something is being distributed to a group of people and there is enough for everyone, there is enough to **go around**.

*There wasn't enough food to **go around**, and some of the famine victims got nothing.*

*Don't make the pieces of wedding cake too big; otherwise, there won't be enough to **go around**.*

Infinitive: go off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go off & goes off	going off	went off	gone off

1. **go off** *p.v.* When a gun **goes off**, it fires. When a bomb **goes off**, it explodes. When an alarm or alarm clock **goes off**, it makes a loud noise.

*The terrorists were killed when the bomb accidentally **went off**.*

*I was late for work because my alarm clock didn't **go off**.*

2. **go off** *p.v.* When an electrical device or system **goes off**, it stops operating. **Come on** is the opposite of **go off**.

*The electricity **went off** at 8:30 last night.*

*A thermostat makes the air conditioner **go off** if it gets below a certain temperature.*

3. **go off** (with) *p.v.* When you **go off**, you leave a place or the people you are with and go to a different place. When you **go off** with someone, you leave a place or the people you are

with and go to a different place with them.

Mark **went off** not realizing he had left his wallet at home.

At the museum Sally **went off** with her friends to see some things we weren't interested in.

4. **go off** *p.v.* When an event or plan **goes off** well, smoothly, without a problem, or without a hitch (a *hitch* is a problem), it happens as planned.

The wedding **went off** without a hitch.

The invasion didn't **go off** the way the general planned it.

5. **go off** *p.v.* When a road, trail, path, etc., **goes off**, it leaves the main road, trail, or path, and goes in a different direction.

This trail that **goes off** to the left will take you to the campground.

We didn't know which way to go—one path **went off** to the left, the other to the right.

Infinitive: go on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go on & goes on	going on	went on	gone on

1. **go on** *p.v.* When an electrical device or system **goes on**, it begins to operate.

A thermostat makes the air conditioner **go on** if it gets above a certain temperature.

The light **goes on** automatically if someone walks near the door.

2. **go on** *p.v.* When something **goes on**, it happens. "What's **going on**?" is a common informal greeting.

Tell me what **went on** at the party last night.

If you see anything illegal **going on**, call the police immediately.

3. **go on** *p.v.* When people **go on**, they continue doing something. Sometimes, **on** is repeated for emphasis.

I asked her to be quiet, but she **went** right **on** singing.

Just **go on** with what you're doing. I'll wait until you're finished.

I told him to stop talking, but he **went on** and **on** and **on** and **on**.

4. **go on** *p.v.* When an event or activity **goes on**, it continues.

*The party **went on** until dawn.*

*I hate long meetings that **go on** for hours.*

5. **go on** p.v. When you **go on** information, you are able to continue an investigation or other project because you have this information.

*The detective said he needs more to **go on** and asked the public for information.*

*The auto company won't recall 75,000 cars because of one accident. That's just not enough to **go on**.*

6. **go on** p.v. When you **go on** a diet, you start a plan to lose weight.

*I **go on** a diet every January.*

*I have to **go on** a diet. My high school reunion is in two months.*

7. **go on** p.v. When you say “**Go on**” to people, you are encouraging them to do something. **Go on** is similar to **go ahead**.

*Yes, caviar is fish eggs, but it's good—**go on**, try it.*

*Oh, **go on**—don't be afraid.*

Infinitive: hang around

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hang around & hangs around	hanging around	hung around	hung around

1. **hang around** p.v. [informal] When you **hang around** or **hang around** doing something, you stay in a place without a purpose for being there or because you are waiting for someone or something.

*I had to **hang around** for three hours waiting for the bus.*

*Bob's been **hanging around** the house all day. Doesn't he have anything to do?*

2. **hang around** p.v. [informal] When people stay in a place instead of leaving, they **hang around**.

*What's the hurry? **Hang around** for a while, and when I finish my homework we can watch TV.*

*Do you have to go or can you **hang around** for a while?*

3. **hang around** p.v. [informal] When you **hang around** people, you spend a lot of time with them. When you **hang around** a place, you spend a lot of time there.

*Erik's mother is worried. She doesn't like the guys he's **hanging around** with.*

*Jim and Bill were good friends. They always **hung around** with each other when they were kids.*

Infinitive: lie around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lie around & lies around	lying around	lay around	lain around

1. **lie around** *p.v.* When you **lie around** or **lie around** doing something, you recline and relax and do not do anything important.

*Today is my day off, so don't ask me to do any work. I'm just going to **lie around**.
All my sister ever does is **lie around** watching TV.*

2. **lie around** *p.v. [always continuous]* When something is **lying around**, it is disorganized and no one is using it or paying attention to it.

*Jake is a slob. There is garbage and old newspapers **lying around** all over his house.
We need to do something about all that junk **lying around** in the backyard.*

Infinitive: start out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
start out & starts out	starting out	started out	started out

1. **start out** *p.v.* When you begin something, you **start out**. **Start out** is used to discuss how the end of something was different from its beginning.

*We **started out** thinking this project would take two weeks, but it ended up taking two months.
Nancy **started out** as a secretary, and now she's the president of the company.*

Infinitive: stay up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stay up & stays up	staying up	stayed up	stayed up

1. **stay up** *p.v.* When something **stays up**, it remains in a place that is higher than ground level.

*That shelf won't **stay up** if you put all those books on it.*

*The astronauts **stayed up** for 241 days.*

2. **stay up** *p.v.* When you **stay up**, you go to bed later than you normally do.

*Judy's tired because she **stayed up** until dawn studying for a chemistry test.*

*Don't **stay up** late—tomorrow's a school day.*

PRACTICE

20-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. This is a dangerous neighborhood, so stay with me and don't _____ by yourself.
2. Yesterday at work Leticia _____ showing everyone her engagement ring.
3. Wedding ceremonies in some countries can _____ for days.
4. The bomb will _____ at exactly 6:00.
5. Where are you going? Why don't you _____ until Jim comes home and then we can order a pizza.
6. The driver took a wrong turn, and we _____ in the middle of nowhere.
7. On Sundays my husband usually _____ on the couch watching football games.
8. My lazy son _____ the house all day not lifting a finger to help with anything.
9. She's going to _____ at her new job working only part-time, but later she'll switch to full-time.
10. Buy lots of cake for the party. You want to be sure there's enough to _____.
11. Bill likes to go to bed early—he can't _____ past 8:00 P.M.

12. Rosa wanted to study medicine in college, but she _____ studying law instead.
13. The paleontologist was amazed to find dinosaur eggs just _____ in the desert.
14. I can't believe you _____ town wearing those dirty clothes all day.
15. I'm sorry I missed the party. Did anything exciting _____?
16. I'm nervous about the wedding. I hope it _____ the way we planned it.
17. A rumor is _____ the school about two of the teachers.
18. It's normal for the power to _____ during a thunderstorm.
19. If that sign doesn't _____ with tape, we'll have to use glue instead.
20. In the morning Dr. Smith usually _____ the hospital visiting his patients.
21. Jim is usually a good boy, but when he _____ with Jake he gets in trouble.
22. He was trying to _____ a slow truck when he had the accident.
23. I _____ a diet two weeks ago, and so far I haven't lost an ounce.
24. In the past no one believed that the earth _____ the sun.
25. If you're leaving, what are you waiting for? _____, leave!
26. How can I make such an important decision with so little information? I need more to _____.
27. I'm surprised that the heat _____ last night—it's only September.
28. Miguel's new race car is really fast. Yesterday he _____ the track in record time.

29. After you cross the bridge, you'll see a gravel road that _____ a lake and heads toward the mountains.
30. I don't want to retire. I'm going to _____ working as long as I can.

20-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. You're going to spend the day on the sofa watching TV. What are you going to do all day?
2. Lydia walked to various places in her new house making decorating plans. What did Lydia do in her new house?
3. The letter was supposed to go to Austria, but it finally arrived in Australia. What happened to the letter?
4. The electricity stops working every day at 2:00. What does the electricity do?
5. Joe called and asked what was happening. What did Joe ask?
6. Bob goes to every office at work telling awful jokes. What does Bob do at work?
7. Janice didn't go to bed all night. What did Janice do?
8. Dan stays in his house all day. He doesn't go anywhere or do anything. What does Dan do all day?
9. You were late to work because your alarm clock didn't ring this morning. What didn't your alarm clock do this morning?
10. Jerry went to many places wearing a Hawaiian shirt. What did Jerry do?
11. When it gets dark the street lights begin to operate automatically. What do the lights do?
12. I bought only twenty-five hot dogs for the party, but thirty people showed up, so some people didn't get a hot dog. Why didn't some people get a hot dog?
13. There are a lot of potholes in the street, and I have to avoid them while I'm driving. What do I have to do while I'm driving?
14. I couldn't decide between the red car and the blue car, but I finally decided on the red car. What did I finally do?

15. Mr. Watson is the brains of this company. If he left we couldn't continue. What couldn't we do without Mr. Watson?

16. Jane began the project thinking it would take only a few weeks. What did Jane do?

20-3. On a separate piece of paper, write original sentences using these phrasal verbs from this unit and previous units followed by the *-ing* form. The first number after the verb is the unit; the second number is the meaning. It is only that meaning that can be followed by the *-ing* form. Try to make some of the sentences similar to those in the *unit introduction* section.

break down, 5/3

hang around, 20/1

stay up, 20/2

end up, 20/1

lie around, 20/1

take off, 1/7

go around, 20/4,5,6

push around, 18/1

wind up, 14/2

go off, 20/3

show up, 1/1

go on, 20/3

start out, 20/1

20-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

aim at, 19

call off, 13

give up, 9

rip up, 17

blow away, 15

chill out, 19

go about, 17

screw out of

break out, 9

cool off, 19

go overboard, 4

see about, 7

bring over, 19

dry out, 15

mess around, 8

work up, 9

1. My teacher made a mistake when he corrected my test and _____ me _____ ten points.

2. You'd better wear a jacket—it has _____ outside.

3. Her letter made me so mad that I _____ it _____.

4. You don't need to rake the leaves. The wind will _____ them _____.

5. We knew we didn't have any hope of winning the battle, so we _____.

6. You can't run ten miles on the first day of your exercise program. You have to _____ to it.

7. I want you to cut the dead branches off this tree, but don't _____ and cut too much.

8. Watch what you say! If you _____ with me, you're going to be sorry!
9. My family has been in Massachusetts since the 17th century. They _____ on the *Mayflower*.
10. Our trip to Miami was _____ because of the hurricane.
11. I'm going to _____ the dentist _____ getting my teeth whitened.
12. Do you know how to _____ getting a passport?
13. This rug is wet. Let's take it outside to _____ in the sun.
14. The new restrictions on cigarette advertising are _____ reducing the level of teenage smoking.
15. They _____ of prison by tunneling under the prison wall.
16. My sister called and asked me what we were doing, and I said "Not much, just _____."

Unit 21

Phrasal Verbs and *Should* and *Ought To*

A good idea: *should* and *ought to*

Should and *ought to* can be used to say that doing something is a very good idea because it will benefit the person you are speaking about:

*You should **look** that contract **over** before you sign it.*

*You ought to **look** that contract **over** before you sign it.*

or because the person you are speaking about is expected, though not required, to do something:

*You should **dress up** when you go to a fancy restaurant.*

*You ought to **dress up** when you go to a fancy restaurant.*

Very probable based on knowledge or previous experience: *should* and *ought to*

Both *should* and *ought to* are used to make predictions based on an understanding that comes from knowledge of or previous experience with people or situations. Because we already know about these people and situations, we use *should* and *ought to* to say that we think that something is very probable, very likely, almost certain to happen—that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably exist or something will very probably happen:

*The rebel territory should **settle down** once winter comes.*

*The rebel territory ought to **settle down** once winter comes.*

*The mechanic said I should **count on** the repairs costing around \$600.*

*The mechanic said I ought to **count on** the repairs costing around \$600.*

Questions and negative sentences

In the examples above, either *should* or *ought to* can be used—they have the same meaning; however, in modern English, only *should* is used in questions:

*Should you **dress up** when you go to a fancy restaurant?*

~~*Ought you to dress up when you go to a fancy restaurant?*~~

and only *should not* or *shouldn't* is used in negative sentences:

You should not point out your boss's grammar mistakes.

~~*You ought not to point out your boss's grammar mistakes.*~~

Should not (or *shouldn't*) is used to say that something is not probable. It means that something is very improbable, very unlikely, almost certain not to happen—that if everything is normal, as expected, or as planned, a condition will very probably not exist or something will very probably not happen:

Learning this program is really easy. You shouldn't run into any problems.

Infinitive: back out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
back out & backs out	backing out	backed out	backed out

1. **back out** (of) *p.v.* When you withdraw from an agreement or arrangement, you **back out** or **back out** of the agreement or arrangement.

*You've already signed the contract, so you can't **back out** now.*

*The USA is worried that Russia will **back out** of its agreement.*

2. **back . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you drive a vehicle in reverse to exit a parking space or garage, you **back** the vehicle **out** or **back** it **out** of the parking space or garage.

*I almost ran over my husband when I **backed** my car **out** of the garage.*

*Always look behind you when you **back** your car **out** of a parking space.*

Infinitive: come to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come to & comes to	coming to	came to	come to

1. **come to** *p.v.* When we discuss the total cost of a project or the total cost of several items, we say it **comes to** this amount.

*Having the gutters cleaned, the grass cut and that dead tree cut down **came to** \$450.*

*All the food we bought for the party **came to** \$245.*

2. **come to** *p.v.* When we want to make a comment about a certain subject or person in order to say that that subject or person is an excellent example of a certain quality or behavior, we say *When it **comes to** that subject or person* before we make the comment.

*When it **comes to** Mexican food, Taco Loco is the best Mexican restaurant in town.*

*When **comes to** lying, no one is a bigger liar than Nicholas. Don't believe a word he says.*

3. **come to** *p.v.* When you regain consciousness after being unconscious, perhaps because of illness, injury, drugs or alcohol, you **come to**.

*Larry passed out on the floor, but he **came to** after we poured cold water on his face.*

*I lost consciousness after I got hit in the head by a baseball, and when I **came to**, I was in an ambulance.*

Infinitive: look over

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look over & looks over	looking over	looked over	looked over

1. **look . . . over** *p.v.* [usually separated] When you **look** something **over**, you look at it or read it carefully and thoroughly.

*He ought to **look** the car **over** before he buys it.*

*Here's the first chapter of my new book; **look** it **over** and tell me what you think.*

Infinitive: melt down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
melt down & melts down	melting down	melted down	melt down

1. **melt . . . down** *p.v.* When something solid becomes hot enough to become liquid, it **melts down**. When you heat a solid until it becomes liquid, you **melt** it **down**.

*The nuclear reactor core **melted down** and released radioactive material into the air and water.*

*The old cars were **melted down** so the steel could be recycled.*

meltdown *n.* When people become extremely angry or upset and behave irrationally, they have a **meltdown**.

*My wife had a **meltdown** after I sold her diamond ring to get money to buy drugs. After I got fired, discovered I had cancer, and crashed my car all on the same day, I had a **meltdown**.*

Infinitive: pick on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pick on & picks on	picking on	picked on	picked on

1. **pick on** *p.v.* When you **pick on** people, you continually tease and criticize them.

*Susie, you shouldn't **pick on** your little brother.
The teacher never criticizes anyone else—she **picks only on** me.*

Infinitive: settle down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
settle down & settles down	settling down	settled down	settled down

1. **settle . . . down** *p.v.* When you **settle down**, you become less active, nervous, or upset. When you **settle** other people **down**, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. **Calm down** is similar to **settle down**.

*Why are you so nervous about the test? Just **settle down**—you'll do just fine.
Can't you **settle the children down**? All that noise is driving me crazy.*

2. **settle . . . down** *p.v.* When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it **settles down**. When you **settle** a confused or violent situation **down**, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. **Calm down** is similar to **settle down**.

*Rioting and arson continued for three days before the area **settled down**.
The head of the union spoke to the angry strikers to try to **settle them down**.*

3. **settle down** *p.v.* When people **settle down**, they start to live a less active life and perhaps get married, buy a house, and start a family.

*Mike led a pretty wild life when he was in his early twenties, but he got married when he was twenty-nine and **settled down**.*

*My son is forty-one. I wish he'd **settle down** and raise a family.*

Infinitive: stick together

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stick together & sticks together	sticking together	stuck together	stuck together

1. **stick . . . together** *p.v.* When you attach things so that they stay joined, you **stick** them **together**.

*When you assemble the furniture, you need to **stick** the parts **together**.*

*I repaired the broken dish by **sticking** the parts **together** with super glue.*

2. **stick together** *p.v.* When things remain attached to each other, they **stick together**. When people remain with each other, they **stick together**.

*The top and the bottom **stick together** with Velcro.*

*If we get separated in this big store, we'll never find each other, so let's **stick together**.*

stuck together *part.adj.* Things that are attached to each other are **stuck together**.

*Be careful when you look at this old photo album. Some of the pages are **stuck together**.*

Infinitive: take out on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take out on & takes out on	taking out on	took out on	taken out on

1. **take . . . out on** *p.v.* When you **take** something **out on** people, you unfairly criticize or punish them because you are angry about something that has occurred or about something that someone else has done.

*If you're mad at your boss, you shouldn't **take it out on** your wife.*

*Hey! It's not my fault you got a speeding ticket. Why are you **taking it out on** me?*

PRACTICE

21-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. It's not your brother's fault you failed the math test. You shouldn't _____ it _____ him.
2. Getting all the things that are wrong with my car fixed is going to _____ at least \$2,000.
3. There's a guy in my class who's really mean and makes jokes about me. I told the teacher that he's always _____ me.
4. After the war ended, the captured guns were _____ to make a memorial statue to the fallen soldiers.
5. Jane is thirty-four already, but she's not interested in _____ and having children.
6. When it _____ beaches, many people think the best ones in the USA are in Hawaii.
7. Timmy and Susie were running around the house like crazy, so I played their favorite YouTube channel to try to _____ them _____.
8. The company _____ of the negotiations after they discovered that the other side wasn't being truthful.
9. The two countries have a history of border clashes, but things have _____ in the last few years.
10. I tried to _____ these _____ with glue, but they keep separating. 11. I almost ran into Rosa's car when I was _____ of my garage.
12. We can't win this fight individually, but if we _____, we'll have a better chance.
13. After Nicholas got hit in the head by a falling rock, he was unconscious and never _____ before he died.
14. I've _____ your résumé, and I think you're the right person for this job.

21-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Dan ought to look at the car very carefully before he decides whether to buy it. What should Dan do?
2. The cashier said, "The total is \$37." What did she say?

3. Our neighbors were arguing all evening, but they stopped arguing and got quieter at around 1:00 A.M. What did our neighbors do around 1:00 A.M.?
4. I worked out a deal with some partners for a new business, but then I changed my mind about the deal. What did I do?
5. I heated some old gold jewelry to make liquid gold. What did I do to the old gold jewelry?
6. Maria put her car in reverse and left her garage. What did Maria do?
7. Frank unfairly criticizes his son. What does Frank do to his son?
8. Mark had a bad day at work, and when he came home he yelled at his wife. What did Mark do to his wife?
9. Linda and her husband have stayed with each other for forty-three years. What have Linda and her husband done for forty-three years?
10. Carlos said that when the subject is fixing cars, Frank Smith is the best mechanic in town. What did Carlos say?

21-3. Review On a separate piece of paper, rewrite the underlined words in the sentences using these phrasal verbs from previous units and *should* or *ought to*. Remember that *ought to* is not usually used in negative sentences.

break through, 18

burn out, 8

come over, 17

come through, 15

come up, 12

cool off, 19

fall off, 10

get off, 18

get through, 16

go for, 16

hold up, 7

pull through, 2

warm up, 19

wind up, 14

Example: If they go to that restaurant, they will very probably expect to pay \$200.

If they go to that restaurant, they should figure on paying \$200.

or

If they go to that restaurant, they ought to figure on paying \$200.

1. Business in this restaurant will very probably decrease in January.
2. They are very probably finishing the investigation.
3. These cheap shoes will very probably not stay in good condition for more than three months.

4. Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim will very probably travel to Boston soon.
5. It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it will very probably get cooler soon.
6. Raul's disease is not serious, so he will very probably be well again.
7. Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He will very probably stop working in a few minutes.
8. Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she will very probably like the idea.
9. The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they will very probably smash a hole in the wall soon.
10. Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She will very probably come to my house soon.
11. This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you will very probably finish around 1:00.
12. The train passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train will very probably pass through town in five minutes.
13. I put a lot of wood on the fire, so it very probably will not stop burning before morning.
14. The car heater is on maximum, so it will very probably get warm soon.

21-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

bring back, 19	go around, 20	hand over, 19	pig out, 8
end up, 20	go back, 19	hang around, 20	pull over, 19
fall apart, 17	go off, 20	lie around, 20	start out, 20
get back at, 17	go on, 20	line up, 18	stay up, 20

1. After Mark's father died, Tom _____ the office collecting money to buy some flowers for the funeral.
2. Who said you could use my camera? _____ it _____ right now!

3. The smoke alarm in our kitchen _____ every time I fry chicken.
4. We've been driving for five hours straight. Let's _____ and rest for a few minutes.
5. Our travel agent is trying to _____ a hot air balloon to take us to the top of Mt. Everest.
6. Last night I _____ late watching *Casablanca* on TV.
7. My old bicycle is in very bad condition. I ought to buy a new one before it completely _____.
8. I'm mad at Sarah for telling my husband what happened at the office party. I'll _____ her someday.
9. I _____ thinking it wouldn't cost more than \$300 to fix my car, but I've already spent more than \$700.
10. Jimmy didn't used to get in trouble until he started to _____ with Jake.
11. If you don't quit smoking and lose some weight, you're going to _____ dying before you're 50.
12. Visiting my old high school last week _____ a lot of great memories.
13. Are you going to do anything today or just _____ watching TV?
14. I'm sorry I interrupted your story. Please _____.
15. Look at Carlos over there. He just ate three tacos, a burrito and a bunch of nachos. He's just totally _____.
16. Julie left her credit card at the restaurant, so she had to _____ to get it.

Unit 22

The Particle *Up* and the Adverbs *Right* and *All*

The particle *up* is used in many phrasal verbs, and one of its meanings is to say that something has been done thoroughly or completely:

*The building **burned**.* (The building was damaged but not destroyed.)

*The building **burned up**.* (The building was completely destroyed.)

Right, discussed in [Unit 19](#), is often used in phrasal verbs with *up* to indicate that the action of the verb not only happened thoroughly and completely but also quickly:

*They **ate it up**.* (They ate all the food.)

*They **ate it right up**.* (They ate all the food, and they ate it quickly.)

Remember that *right* can be used in this way only after an object that is separating the verb and particle:

*They **ate the pizza right up**.*

*They **ate up the pizza**.*

Even though *up* indicates that the action of the verb is thorough and complete, *all* is sometimes used for further emphasis with participle adjectives derived from phrasal verbs with *up*:

*My taxes are **all paid up**.*

*The drain is **all plugged up**.*

Infinitive: burn up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
burn up & burns up	burning up	burned up	burned up

1. **burn up** *p.v.* When something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it **burns up**.

*The meteor **burned up** in the atmosphere.*

*The rocket's fuel will **burn up** after only forty seconds.*

2. **burn . . . up** *p.v.* When people or things destroy something with heat or fire, they **burn** it **up**.

*There's no more firewood. We **burned** it all **up**.*

*Jet engines **burn up** fuel at a tremendous rate.*

burned up *part.adj.* After something is completely destroyed by heat or fire, it is **burned up**.

*There isn't anymore firewood. It's all **burned up**.*

*The house is all **burned up**. There's no way it can be saved.*

3. **burned . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When something makes you very angry, it **burns** you **up**.

*It really **burns me up** when other people take credit for my work.*

*I have to say something to Sally about what she did. It's **burning me up**.*

burned up *part.adj. [informal]* When you are very angry, you are **burned up**.

*Jim was **burned up** when his boss criticized him during the meeting.*

*Relax—it's nothing to get all **burned up** about.*

Infinitive: clear up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
clear up & clears up	clearing up	cleared up	cleared up

1. **clear up** *p.v.* When a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it **clears up**.

*The misunderstanding **cleared up** right away after we talked about it.*

*My rash is **clearing up** by itself. I don't need to go to the doctor.*

cleared up *part.adj.* After a problem, misunderstanding, or disease goes away, it is **cleared up**.

*After I started taking antibiotics, my sinus infection **cleared** right **up**.*

*Everything's OK. It was a big misunderstanding, but it's **cleared up** now.*

2. **clear . . . up** *p.v.* When you do something to solve a problem or misunderstanding or do something to cure a disease, you **clear** it **up**.

*Everyone was confused about the new policy, so a memo was issued that **cleared everything up**.*

*The medicine Dr. Smith gave me **cleared** the infection **up**.*

3. **clear up** *p.v.* When clouds in the sky go away, the weather **clears up**.

*Unless it **clears up**, we'll have to cancel the picnic.*
*It was a beautiful day after the sky **cleared up**.*

Infinitive: count up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
count up & counts up	counting up	counted up	counted up

1. **count . . . up** *p.v.* When you count all of something to see how many of them there are, you **count** them **up**.

*Count the money **up** and tell me what the total is.*
*Counting **up** the yes and no votes is going to take a long time.*

Infinitive: eat up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
eat up & eats up	eating up	ate up	eaten up

1. **eat . . . up** *p.v.* When you **eat** food **up**, you eat all of it.

*There's no more pizza. David **ate** it all **up**.*
*Don't **eat up** the cake before your father gets a piece.*

2. **eat . . . up** *p.v.* When something **eats up** something else, such as money or time, it uses all of it.

*I'm broke. Fixing my car last week **ate up** my entire paycheck.*
*I don't want to go shopping with you. It'll **eat** the whole day **up**.*

Infinitive: heat up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
heat up & heats up	heating up	heated up	heated up

1. **heat . . . up** *p.v.* When something or someone makes something hotter, they **heat** it **up**.

*Waiter, this soup is cold. Would you **heat it up** for me?*
*Sometimes the sun **heats up** the desert to 120 degrees.*

heated up *part.adj.* After something or someone makes something hotter, it is **heated up**.

*Don't give the baby that cold bottle. Give her this **heated up** one.*

*The spaghetti has been in the microwave for five minutes, so I'm sure it's **heated up** by now.*

Infinitive: man up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
man up & mans up	manning up	manned up	manned up

1. **man up** *p.v.* When a boy or man behaves in a mature, adult manner and does something he must do or should do even though he doesn't want to do it or is afraid to do it, he **mans up**.

*When are you going to **man up** and deal with your problems instead of making excuses?*

*I didn't want to tell the police the truth, but I decided I had to **man up** and stop lying to them.*

Infinitive: pay up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pay up & pays up	paying up	paid up	paid up

1. **pay up** *p.v.* When you **pay up**, you pay all the money you owe to a person, bank, etc., usually as a result of pressure to pay the money.

*A guy from the collection agency called and told me I'd better **pay up**.*

*I wasn't surprised when the insurance company refused to **pay up**.*

paid up *part.adj.* After you are **paid up**, you have paid all the money you owe to a person, bank, etc.

*I told the bill collector that he had made a mistake. I'm all **paid up**.*

*Betty's VISA card is **paid up**, so there won't be any finance charge next month.*

Infinitive: plug up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
plug up & plugs up	plugging up	plugged up	plugged up

1. **plug . . . up** *p.v.* When people or things block a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, so that nothing can flow through it, they **plug it up**.

*Don't pour bacon grease in the sink—it'll **plug up** the drain.*

*I need to **plug up** the hole in the roof where the rain is leaking in.*

plugged up *part.adj.* When a narrow passage, such as a pipe, drain, or hole, is completely blocked so that nothing can flow through it, it is **plugged up**.

*Call the plumber. The sink's **plugged up**.*

*My nose is all **plugged up**, and I can't smell anything.*

PRACTICE

22-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Don't _____ the potato chips. Leave some for me.
2. We have to _____ the hole in this boat _____ fast before it sinks.
3. It _____ me _____ when people smoke in a nonsmoking section.
4. There was a lot of confusion about the new plan, so we asked Tom to _____ it _____ for us.
5. The bill collector threatened to repossess my car if I didn't _____.
6. The pain I had in my shoulder _____ right _____ after I tried the new therapy.
7. OK, let's _____ the points to see who won the game.
8. It was cloudy in the morning, but around 11:00 it _____ right _____.
9. It hasn't rained in months, so this dry forest will really _____ if there's a fire.
10. I know you're afraid, but you need to _____ and face your problems, not run away from them.
11. I'll put your dinner in the refrigerator, and you can _____ it _____ when you come home.
12. I'm going to _____ all these old papers in the fireplace.

13. I didn't have any insurance, so paying for those hospital bills really _____
_____ all my savings.

22-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. They *burned up*. (the wood, it)
2. He ought to *clear up*. (the misunderstanding, it)
3. Would you *count up*? (the votes, them)
4. Have they *eaten up*? (all the candy, it)
5. I can't *plug up*. (the hole, it)

22-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. You completely blocked the drain so that water couldn't go through it. What did you do to the drain?
2. In Question 1, how would you describe the drain?
3. I'm putting my coffee in the microwave to make it hotter. What am I doing to my coffee?
4. In Question 3, how would you describe my coffee after I take it out of the microwave?
5. Erik hasn't counted all the money. What hasn't Erik done?
6. You'll pay all your late mortgage payments. What will you do to your mortgage?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe your mortgage after you pay all your late payments?
8. The police used fire to destroy all the drugs. What did the police do?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the drugs now?
10. My disease went away immediately. What did my disease do?
11. John is in prison for a crime that Nicholas committed. Nicholas needs to be a man and admit that he committed the crime. What does Nicholas need to do?
12. Carlos always eats all his baby food, and he eats it quickly. What does Carlos do?

22-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back out, 21	dry up, 14	head for, 15	sign out, 12
come to, 21	go with, 15	melt down, 21	stick together, 12
count on, 16	hand in, 13	put away, 14	suck up, 18
dress up, 14	head back, 15	sign in, 12	take out on, 12

- I'll be there when you need me. You can _____ me.
- Do you think these shoes _____ my dress?
- My son is _____ some small candles _____ to make one big one.
- Linda is here in the office somewhere—she _____ at 8:52.
- Linda always leaves at 5:00, and it's almost 6:00 now, so I'm sure she has already _____.
- That guy is crazy. He ought to be _____.
- When you finish with the job application, you can _____ it _____ to the secretary.
- I don't think we should make any changes now. Let's _____ our original plan.
- The party will be casual, so you don't have to _____.
- There's no way getting all of your teeth fixed is going to _____ less than \$1,000.
- You have to pull hard to separate these two parts because sometimes they really _____.
- I hope it rains soon. The lake is starting to _____.
- Hey, you made a deal! You can't _____ now. I'm counting on you.
- Janice hates her job, and she _____ it _____ her husband.

15. I'm _____ San Diego, and I should get there by late afternoon.

16. I'll stay in San Diego for a week and then _____ to Los Angeles.

17. I think if I _____ my new boss, I might get promoted soon.

Unit 23

Two-Word Phrasal Verbs that Require a Preposition when Used with an Object, Part 2

As we saw in [Unit 9](#), many phrasal verbs that can be used both intransitively and transitively require a preposition when they are used transitively, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs.

Although these phrasal verbs have a three-word version, they remain classified as two-word verbs because the two-word and three-word phrasal verbs have the same meaning—they are variations of the same verb:

*He **filled in**.*
*He **filled in** for Mike.*

There are, however, three-word phrasal verbs that share the same verb and particle as another two-word phrasal verb but have an entirely different meaning. These are two different phrasal verbs and are classified separately:

*He **put up** a poster.*
*He **put up with** her rudeness.*

Infinitive: crack down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
crack down & cracks down	cracking down	cracked down	cracked down

1. **crack down** (on) *p.v.* When you **crack down** or **crack down** on someone or something, you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before or you make new, stronger rules and laws.

*The chief of police said he was going to **crack down** on car theft.*
*The students have been coming to class later and later every day. It's time to start **cracking down**.*

crackdown *n.* When you enforce rules and laws more than you enforced them before, this is a **crackdown**.

*The FBI is planning a major **crackdown** on organized crime.*
*After the **crackdown**, the crime rate plunged.*

Infinitive: cut down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cut down & cuts down	cutting down	cut down	cut down

1. **cut . . . down** *p.v.* When you **cut down** a tree, you use a saw or an axe to cut it and make it fall to the ground.

*You should **cut** that dead tree **down** before it falls on your house.*

*The builder was criticized for **cutting down** so many trees when he built the house.*

2. **cut . . . down** *p.v. [informal, always separated]* When you **cut** people **down** to size, you do or say something to make them feel less important or less powerful.

*I'm tired of that jerk. I'm going to **cut** him **down** to size.*

*Hank thinks he's such a tough guy. Someone ought to **cut** him **down** to size.*

3. **cut down (on)** *p.v.* When you **cut down** or **cut down** on something that you consume, you use it less. When you **cut down** or **cut down** on something you do, you do it less. **Cut back** is similar to **cut down**.

*If you can't quit smoking, you should at least **cut down**.*

*My doctor said **cutting down** on fat in my diet would lower my cholesterol.*

Infinitive: drop out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
drop out & drops out	dropping out	dropped out	dropped out

1. **drop out (of)** *p.v.* When you **drop out** or **drop out** of a school, a training course, or other program, you leave before graduating from the school or completing the course or program.

*The program is very difficult, and about 70 percent of the students **drop out**.*

*Linda's father was very disappointed when she **dropped out** of college.*

dropout *n.* A **dropout** is someone who has left school, usually high school or college, before graduating.

*Many successful people are college **dropouts**.*

Infinitive: get away			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get away & gets away	getting away	got away	gotten/got away

1. **get away** (from) *p.v.* When you escape from people who are chasing you because they want to hurt you or because you have committed a crime, you **get away** or **get away** from them.

*When he took the knife out of his pocket, I **got away** from him fast.*

*By the time the police arrived, the robbers had already **gotten away**.*

- getaway** *n.* When you escape from people who want to capture or hurt you, you make a **getaway**.

*The robbers made their **getaway** in a blue Ford.*

*The car used for the **getaway** was found abandoned in the next town.*

2. **get away** (with) *p.v.* When you do something that is sneaky or wrong and you are not punished or criticized for it because no one knows or cares about it, you **get away** with it.

*Jake has been cheating on his taxes for years, and he always **gets away** with it.*

*He **got away** with stealing the money even though everyone knew he was guilty.*

3. **get away** (from) *p.v.* When you **get away** from people or places, you leave them even though it may be difficult.

*I'm tired of this town. I need to **get away**.*

*Frank was talking and talking, and I couldn't **get away** from him.*

4. **get away** *p.v.* When you **get away**, you go on vacation.

*I have a lot of work to do, but I'll try to **get away** for a week or two.*

*We always try to **get away** in January and go skiing.*

Infinitive: hold out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hold out & holds out	holding out	held out	held out

1. **hold . . . out** *p.v.* When you **hold out** your hand, you extend it in front of your body so that someone can shake hands with you or put something in your hand. **Hold out** is

similar to **put out**.

*Maybe Mr. Young is mad at me. I **held out** my hand, but he didn't shake it.
The street was filled with beggars **holding** their hands **out**.*

2. **hold out** p.v. When a supply of something is enough for your needs, the supply **holds out**.

*The hot dogs **held out** until the end of the party, but we didn't have enough hamburgers.
This is all the money I have, so it has to **hold out** until I get paid again.*

3. **hold out** p.v. When you **hold out**, you resist an attack, pressure, or temptation or you continue to survive in a dangerous situation.

*More than 1,000 enemy soldiers attacked the fort. There were only 98 of us inside, but we **held out** for two weeks.
I haven't had a cigarette in three days, and I don't know how much longer I can **hold out**.*

holdout n. Someone who resists an attack, pressure, or temptation is a **holdout**.

*The enemy soldiers are in control of the country, but there are some **holdouts** hiding in the mountains.
There are still a few **holdouts** who don't have credit cards.*

4. **hold out** (for) p.v. When you **hold out** or **hold out** for something, you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands.

*The basketball player is **holding out** for a million dollars a game.
The union spokesman said the union members would **hold out** until their demands were met.*

holdout n. When you refuse to compromise in a negotiation and accept anything less than your original demands, you are a **holdout**.

*All the players have signed contracts except for two **holdouts**.*

Infinitive: make up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
make up & makes up	making up	made up	made up

1. **make . . . up** p.v. When you invent a story to entertain or fool people, you **make** the story **up**. When you invent a lie to deceive people, you **make** the lie **up**.

*My son asked me to **make up** a story about monsters.*

*Hank told his boss he was late for work because he had to go to the doctor, but he just **made** that excuse **up**.*

made-up *part.adj.* When a story is invented or fictional, it is **made-up**.

*There's no truth to any of this—it's just a **made-up** story.*

2. **make up** (of) *p.v. [often passive]* When people or things **make up** a larger thing, they together form that larger thing. When a larger thing is **made up** of people or things, they together form that larger thing.

*Children under fifteen **make up** 50 percent of the population.*

*An airplane is **made up** of thousands of parts.*

3. **make . . . up** *p.v.* When you **make up** your mind, **make up** your mind about something, or **make up** your mind about doing something, you decide which choice to make or which action to take.

*I like the blue dress and the red dress. I can't **make up** my mind.*

*My daughter still hasn't **made up** her mind about which college to attend.*

*Marsha **made** her mind **up** about quitting her job and joining the Navy.*

made up *part.adj.* After you **make up** your mind or **make up** your mind to do something, your mind is **made up**.

*Don't waste your time talking to Tom about it—his mind is **made up**.*

4. **make . . . up** *p.v.* When you have an amount of money that is not enough for a certain requirement and you add more money so that it will be enough, you **make up** the difference between the amount you have and the amount you need.

*The cashier was supposed to have \$755 at the end of her shift, but she had only \$735, so she had to **make the shortage up** with her own money.*

*I didn't have enough saved to pay for college, but my Uncle Fred **made up** the difference.*

5. **make . . . up** *p.v.* When you do something that you were required to do earlier but did not, such as attend a class, take a test, or complete a homework assignment, you **make it up**.

*Karen asked the teacher about **making up** the test that she missed.*

*The teacher told her she could **make it up** tomorrow after school.*

6. **make . . . up** *p.v. [the noun and adjectives derived from this phrasal verb are much more commonly used than the phrasal verb itself]* When you **make yourself up**, you put lipstick, eye shadow, etc., on your face.

*She **made herself up** and went to the party.*

make-up *n.* **Make-up** is cosmetics: lipstick, mascara, etc.

*Heather's father thinks she wears too much **make-up**.*

made-up *part.adj.* After people have put on **make-up**, they are **made-up**.

*Did you see Lydia? She's really beautiful when she's all **made-up**.*

7. **make up** (with) *p.v.* When two people **make up** or **make up** with each other, they end an argument and resume friendly relations.

*Sally and Jim had a big fight, but they **made up** the next day.*

*Mr. Baker said he won't **make up** with his wife until she apologizes.*

Infinitive: stay out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stay out & stays out	staying out	stayed out	stayed out

1. **stay out** *p.v.* When you **stay out**, you do not return to your house.

*Do you let your kids **stay out** past 7:00?*

*I **stayed out** late last night, and today I'm really exhausted.*

2. **stay out** (of) *p.v.* When you **stay out** of a place, you do not go inside it.

*Your father's busy cooking dinner, so **stay out** of the kitchen.*

*You can't come in here. **Stay out!***

3. **stay out** (of) *p.v.* When you **stay out** of a situation, such as an argument, fight, battle, or war, you do not get involved in it.

*This fight doesn't involve you, so **stay out**.*

*Jake has **stayed out** of trouble since he left prison.*

Infinitive: watch out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
watch out & watches out	watching out	watched out	watched out

1. **watch out** (for) *p.v.* When you **watch out** or **watch out** for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to **watch out** or **watch out** for something, you are warning them of possible danger. **Watch out** is the same as **look out**.

Watch out when you're crossing a busy street.

Karen said she would meet us here at 12:00, so **watch out** for her.

Watch out! There's a snake in the grass.

I dropped a glass in the kitchen, so **watch out** for broken glass.

PRACTICE

23-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Are you telling me the truth, or did you _____ that _____?
2. You're going to a dangerous area. _____ for robbers.
3. I have to _____ on salt in my diet because of my high blood pressure.
4. We had to _____ two trees to make room for the new swimming pool.
5. _____ of the water—someone saw a shark.
6. The soldiers in the fort couldn't _____ against such a huge and powerful army.
7. The United States is _____ of people from many different races and cultures.
8. It was too hard to work and go to school at the same time, so Todd had to _____ of college.
9. Carmen can pay only half of the money she owes me, but Luis promised to _____ the difference.
10. A group of concerned citizens is demanding that the police _____ on crime in their neighborhood.
11. The bank robbers _____ in a white car with Florida license plates.
12. When the President walks past you, _____ your hand _____ and maybe he'll shake it.
13. I really need a vacation. I haven't _____ in three years.

14. I told my son that if he can't _____ of trouble, I'm going to send him to military school.
15. The airline pilots are _____ for a 15 percent raise, and they will not accept anything less.
16. The store's closing in five minutes, so you need to _____ your mind about which pair of shoes you want.
17. After fourteen years he thought he had _____ with the murder, but he was wrong.
18. All Joe does is complain and criticize. I need to _____ from him.
19. Mike didn't come home until 4:30 in the morning, and his father was furious that he had _____ so late.
20. He thinks he's so smart. I hope someone _____ him _____ down to size someday.
21. Be careful about how much you spend—this money has to _____ until payday.
22. Bob and Marsha had a big argument, but they _____ with each other, and now everything is OK.
23. The professor warned the students that if they missed the final examination, they could not _____ it _____.

23-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. The principal is going to *crack down* _____ smoking in the bathroom.
2. If you want to lose weight, *cut down* _____ cake and cookies.
3. He *dropped out* _____ college before graduation.
4. After Jake robbed the bank, he was arrested and sent to jail. He didn't *get away* _____ robbing the bank.
5. The French workers are *holding out* _____ a 100 percent raise and a two-day workweek.
6. There are a lot of rattlesnakes around here, so *watch out* _____ them.

7. Timmy's mother told him to *stay out* _____ the cookie jar.

23-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The union members are on strike, and some will not go back to work unless they get the 10 percent raise they demanded in the beginning. What are the union members doing?
2. Some union members accepted a 7 percent raise and went back to work, but not the union members in Question 1. What would you call the union members in Question 1?
3. Jim and his sister had a big fight, but they apologized to each other, and now everything is OK. What did Jim and his sister do?
4. Jake stopped going to high school before he graduated. What did Jake do?
5. In Question 4, what is Jake?
6. You considered buying either a Toyota or a Nissan, and then you made your decision. What did you do?
7. My elbow is very sore, so my doctor told me to play less tennis. What did my doctor tell me?
8. Most of the Democrats will vote in favor of the new law, but a few are resisting pressure to vote yes. What are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes doing?
9. In Question 8, what are the Democrats who don't want to vote yes?
10. Mr. and Mrs. Ortega went to a party and didn't come home until 3:00 A.M. What did they do?
11. The explorer's supply of food and water has to last for three months. What does the explorer's supply of food and water have to do for three months?
12. Erik invented a funny story for his daughter. What did Erik do?
13. In Question 12, Erik's funny story wasn't true. How would you describe it?
14. Mr. Flores cheats on his taxes, but so far he hasn't been caught. What has Mr. Flores done so far?
15. There are a lot of big trucks on the road, so when you drive, you have to be careful. What do you have to do when you drive?

16. The police are going to start working harder to prevent crime. What are the police going to do?

17. In Question 16, what can you call the plan to work harder to prevent crime?

23-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

act up, 16

count up, 22

hold off, 16

aim at, 19

fall apart, 17

man up, 22

break through, 18

get through, 16

put past, 16

burn up, 22

go for, 16

tell apart, 18

come over, 17

grow out of, 17

think about, 16

1. Do you want these baby clothes? My daughter has _____ them.
2. It's always a good idea to _____ installing a new software version until they get all the bugs out.
3. You lied to your wife about losing all your money in a poker game? You've got to _____ and tell her the truth.
4. I'm not sure what I will do. I have to _____ it.
5. I have a lot of work to do, so I probably won't _____ until 4:00.
6. The twins look exactly like each other. How do you _____ them _____?
7. The walls of this fort are ten feet thick. No one could _____.
8. We finished our card game, and Sean _____ the points.
9. The new law is _____ reducing air pollution.
10. I need to fix this table. It's _____.
11. Raquel suggested moving to the suburbs, and her husband _____ the idea.
12. That guy's a lunatic. There's nothing I wouldn't _____ him.

13. We _____ the old wood in the fireplace.

14. If you kids don't quit _____, I'm going to turn this car around and go home, and you can forget about going to the beach.

15. Would you like to _____ to my house tonight and have dinner?

Unit 24

Stress and Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns

As we saw in [Unit 5](#), two-word phrasal verbs are sometimes stressed on the verb and sometimes on the particle. When two-word phrasal verbs are used as nouns, however, they are always stressed on the verb, even if it is the particle of the two-word verb that is stressed:

verb: **SHOW** off noun: **SHOW**-off
verb: **slow** DOWN noun: **SLOW**down

Infinitive: come down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come down & comes down	coming down	came down	come down

1. **come down** (to) *p.v.* When someone moves toward you to a lower level position, or from north to south, that person **comes down** or **comes down** to where you are. **Come up** is the opposite of **come down**.

*It's been raining for an hour! It's really **coming down**.*

*My friend from Canada **comes down** to visit us in New Mexico once in a while.*

2. **come down** *p.v.* When you move to a lower level socially or financially and receive less respect from other people because of this change, you **come down** in life.

*Hank certainly has **come down** in life—he lost his job, house, and family because of his gambling problem.*

*Mark used to be successful, but now he has so many problems. He has really **come down** in life.*

comedown *n.* A **comedown** is a move to a lower level socially or financially that causes you to receive less respect from other people.

*A few years ago he was the manager of this restaurant, but now he's only a waiter—what a **comedown**.*

3. **come down** (to) *p.v.* When you lower the price you are asking for something, you **come down** or **come down** to a lower price.

*I won't buy her car unless she **comes down** to \$12,000.*

*The union won't **come down** in its salary demands.*

Infinitive: let up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
let up & lets up	letting up	let up	let up

1. **let up** (on) *p.v.* When something becomes less strong, less intense, or less severe, it **lets up**.

*The rain finally **let up** yesterday.*

*Mike's parents are very strict with him. He's only a boy. They should **let up** on him.*

letup *n.* A **letup** is a reduction in how strong, severe, or intense something is.

*There was no **letup** in terrorist bombings after the peace treaty was signed.*

Infinitive: print out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
print out & prints out	printing out	printed out	printed out

1. **print . . . out** *p.v.* When you make a computer write something on paper, you **print** it **out**.

*After I finished writing my letter, I **printed** it **out** and signed it.*

*I can't **print** this **out**—my printer is broken.*

printout *n.* When you make a computer write something on paper, the paper is a **printout**.

*I put the **printout** of the October sales report on the sales manager's desk.*

Infinitive: shake up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
shake up & shakes up	shaking up	shook up	shaken up

1. **shake . . . up** *p.v.* When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, it **shakes** you **up**.

*Seeing all those dead bodies really **shook** me **up**.*

*I was really **shaken up** when I learned that my uncle had been killed.*

shaken up *part.adj.* When something upsets, shocks, or frightens you badly, you are **shaken up**.

*Leave Frank alone. He just got some bad news, and he's a bit **shaken up** about it.*

2. **shake . . . up** *p.v.* When you mix something by shaking it, you **shake** it **up**.

*You have to **shake up** Italian dressing before you open the bottle.*

*Did you **shake** this can of paint **up**?*

3. **shake . . . up** *p.v.* When you make major changes in an organization or business, you **shake** it **up**.

*The new CEO **shook up** management at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.*

*People are getting a little lazy around here. It's time to **shake** things **up**.*

shake-up *n.* A major change in an organization or business is a **shake-up**.

*There was a big **shake-up** at my company, and a lot of people lost their jobs or were transferred.*

Infinitive: show off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
show off & shows off	showing off	showed off	shown off

1. **show . . . off** *p.v.* When you **show off**, you let people see something you have or something you can do in a very obvious and excessive way.

*Sally's boyfriend gave her a huge diamond engagement ring, and she **showed** it **off** to all her friends.*

*The boy was **showing off** by riding his bicycle with no hands when he fell and hurt himself.*

show-off *n.* Someone who **shows off** is a **show-off**.

*Did you hear Mark speaking French at the party so everyone could hear? What a **show-off**!*

Infinitive: slow down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
slow down & slows down	slowing down	slowed down	slowed down

1. **slow . . . down** *p.v.* When something causes people or things to do something more slowly, it **slows** them **down**.

*I was driving pretty fast, but I **slowed down** after I saw the police car.*

*Production at the factory **slowed down** when half the workers got sick.*

- slowdown** *n.* When people or things do something more slowly, a **slowdown** occurs.

*The snow caused a big **slowdown** on the highway this morning.*

Infinitive: stop over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stop over & stops over	stopping over	stopped over	stopped over

1. **stop over** *p.v.* When you interrupt a journey (usually an airplane journey) for a short stay somewhere, you **stop over**.

*Michael **stopped over** in London on his flight from New York to Moscow.*

***Stopping over** in Dubai on the way to Bangkok wasn't any fun—we couldn't even leave the airport.*

- stopover** *n.* When you interrupt a journey (usually an airplane journey) for a short stay somewhere, you make a **stopover**.

*I flew from Istanbul to Philadelphia with a four-day **stopover** in Amsterdam.*

2. **stop over** *p.v.* When you visit someone for a short time, you **stop over**.

*Would you like to **stop over** after dinner and see our vacation pictures?*

*Can you vacuum the living room, please? My boss and his wife are **stopping over** tonight, and I want the place to look nice.*

Infinitive: trade in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
trade in & trades in	trading in	traded in	traded in

1. **trade . . . in** *p.v.* When you give an old car or other piece of expensive equipment to someone that you are buying a new car or piece of equipment from in order to get a lower price, you **trade** the old car or piece of equipment **in**.

*After the twins were born, Raul **traded** his pickup truck **in** for an SUV.*

*We'll get a good price on our new photocopier if we **trade in** our old one.*

trade-in *n.* An old car or piece of equipment that you **trade in** for a newer one is a **trade-in**.

*Most of the used cars sold by dealers are **trade-ins**.*

PRACTICE

24-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. You're driving too fast. Please _____.
2. _____ that bottle of salad dressing before you open it.
3. The real estate agent says he thinks the sellers will _____ a little in their asking price.
4. My new car cost \$24,000, but I _____ my old car _____ for \$15,000.
5. Jim is upstairs. Ask him to _____ here for a minute, OK?
6. _____ in London for a few days on your way to India is a good way to get over jet lag.
7. I was pretty _____ by the news, but now I'm OK.
8. Luis _____ his new car _____ to his friends yesterday.
9. The fighting continued for four days before it finally _____.
10. Leticia used to be rich, but she lost all her money gambling, and now she can't even pay her bills. She's really _____ in life.
11. When you finish writing that story, _____ it _____ and give it to me. I want to read it.
12. This company was losing money until the new owners came in and _____ things _____.

13. I have to clean the house because Pat and Mike might _____ tonight.

24-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with nouns from this unit.

1. I worked for my company for 31 years before I got fired in the big _____.
2. I had a four-hour _____ in Los Angeles on my way to Hawaii.
3. Nicole used to have her own company, and now she's driving a taxi. That's quite a _____.
4. The wind blew all night without any _____.
5. New car dealers usually have a lot of _____ for sale at low prices.
6. The snow caused a big _____ on the highway this morning.
7. After the computer finished with the data, I took the _____ upstairs to the sales department.
8. He's lost a lot of weight, and now he wears really tight pants every day. What a _____ he is.

24-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The rain *slowed down*. (traffic, it)
2. He *printed out*. (his letter, it)
3. The bad news has *shaken up*. (Jim and Nancy, them)
4. I got \$5,000 for *trading in*. (my old car, it)
5. Chelsea's parents *showed off*. (her perfect report card, it)

24-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. After the computer finished the calculations, I printed the answers on a piece of paper. What did I do?
2. In Question 1, what would you call the paper with the answers?

3. Todd's friend in Minnesota is going to visit him in New Orleans. What is Todd's friend going to do?
4. Ned walks around without a shirt so the girls can see his muscles. What does Ned do?
5. In Question 4, what is Ned?
6. When I buy my new car, I'll give the dealer my old car so that I can get a lower price on the new car. What will I do with my old car?
7. In Question 6, what would you call my old car?
8. The new boss fired a lot of employees, hired new employees, and made a lot of changes. What did the new boss do?
9. In Question 8, what would you call what the new boss did?
10. Sandra used to be married to a prince, but now she's divorced and broke. What has Sandra done?
11. In Question 10, what would you call what happened to Sandra?
12. It rained for two weeks straight before it stopped. What did the rain do?
13. In Question 12, what would you call what the rain did?
14. There was a big accident on the highway yesterday morning, and traffic was awful. What did the accident do to the traffic?
15. In Question 14, what would you call the traffic situation?
16. You flew from Denver to Miami, but you had to spend a few hours in Atlanta on the way. What did you do in Atlanta?
17. In Question 16, what would you call my visit to Atlanta?
18. Mike saw a terrible accident this morning while he was driving, and it upset him a lot. What did the accident do to Mike?
19. In Question 18, how would you describe Mike after he saw the accident?

24-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these nouns from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

backup, 11

drop-off, 11

lineup, 18

tryout, 11

build up, 2	dropout, 23	melt down, 21	workout, 11
crackdown, 23	follow-up, 11	stick together, 21	

1. The doctor said I was cured, but he wants me to see him in a year for a _____.
2. Drugs are getting to be a big problem in my son's school. I think it's time for a _____.
3. When I was nineteen, I was a _____ with no future, but then I got smart and finished school.
4. After the accident, the human cannonball was dropped from the circus _____.
5. The _____ for the basketball team will be next Saturday at 10:00 A.M.
6. Janice just got back from the gym, and she's really exhausted from her _____.
7. I use the program on the hard disk, but I have a _____ on a CD.
8. Business at the restaurant used to be good, but there was a big _____ after that case of food poisoning.
9. The general expected an attack soon after she saw the big _____ in the enemy's troop numbers.
10. Marty goes crazy even about small problems, so when he finds out that you just put a big dent in his car, he's going to have a _____.
11. These are very strong magnets, so when they get _____, it's very hard to separate them.

24-6. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

chill out, 19	figure on, 18	man up, 22	stay out, 23
come to, 21	fizzle out, 18	melt down, 21	tell on, 15
cool off, 19	hang up, 9	push around, 18	watch out, 2
count up, 22	hold out, 23	settle down, 21	

1. Young man, if you don't _____ of trouble at school, I'm going to take away your car!
2. The strike _____ after management threatened to fire the striking workers and hire new ones.

3. Nicholas is a bully. He _____ his employees _____ and fires them for no reason.
4. Todd got in trouble with his mother after he broke a window and his sister _____ him.
5. If you're going to that bad neighborhood late at night, please be careful and _____ for robbers.
6. That museum is huge. If you want to see everything, you should _____ spending the entire day there.
7. This coffee's way too hot. Can you get me an ice cube so I can _____ it _____?
8. That company wants to hire me, but I'm _____ for more money.
9. I should have worked on my school project last night, but I was tired, so I just _____ with some friends.
10. When it _____ making money, no one is worse at it than I am.
11. My husband was very angry when our thirteen-year-old daughter came home at 4:00 in the morning, so I told him to _____ and let me talk to her.
12. The thieves _____ the stolen jewelry _____ and sold it.
13. After the votes were _____, Senator Dolittle was declared the winner.
14. You're twenty-five years old. You need to _____ and stop depending on Mommy and Daddy to solve all your problems.
15. Leticia said good-bye and _____ the telephone.

Unit 25

Phrasal Verbs and *Have to*, *Have Got to*, and *Must*

Have to, *have got to*, and *must* have two important uses in English. One is familiar to most students; the other is not.

But before discussing that, let's pay special attention to *have got to*. *Have to* and *have got to* mean exactly the same thing. Both are commonly used, and both are acceptable standard English. *Have to* derives from *have*, and *have got to* derives from *have got*. So why the *got* in *have got to*? A good question. *Got* in *have got to* means nothing and serves no purpose whatsoever. *Have got to* is a unique, idiomatic variation of *have to*. There is no point in trying to understand the grammar of *have got to* because there isn't any. Like other idioms, it must simply be memorized. Though *have to* and *have got to* mean the same thing, their forms are different, especially in questions and negative sentences. The examples below on the left and right have the same meaning. In each case, the contracted form is more common in everyday spoken English:

statement:	<i>You <u>have to</u> come down.</i>	=	<i>You <u>have got to</u> come down.</i>
	<i>You <u>have to</u> come down.</i>	=	<i>You've <u>got to</u> come down.</i>
question:	<i><u>Do</u> you <u>have to</u> come down?</i>	=	<i><u>Have</u> you <u>got to</u> come down?</i>
negative:	<i>You <u>do not have to</u> come down.</i>	=	<i>You have <u>not got to</u> come down.</i>
	<i>You <u>don't have to</u> come down.</i>	=	<i>You <u>haven't got to</u> come down.</i>

Requirement

Have to, *have got to*, and *must* are all used to say that something is required, necessary, mandatory—that there is no choice in the matter:

You have to make up the test.
You've got to make up the test.
You must make up the test.

Although most students learn this use of *must* early in their studies, it is actually the least common way to use *must*. Both *have to* and *have got to* are much more commonly used for this purpose.

Near certainty

The other important use of *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* is to say that something is almost 100 percent certain—that based on the facts and based on what we see and know, no other conclusion is possible about something. We are almost 100 percent certain, and all we need is confirmation to be 100 percent certain:

Janice, you have been working for twelve hours without a break. You have to be tired. (A logical assumption, but until Janice confirms that she is tired, the speaker cannot be 100 percent certain.)

I would never take that book out of this room. It s got to be here somewhere. (A logical assumption, but until the speaker finds the book, he cannot be 100 percent certain that it is in the room.)

That man is from Japan. I've never spoken with him, but he must speak Japanese. (A logical assumption, but until the speaker hears the man speaking Japanese, he cannot be 100 percent certain.)

When *have to*, *have got to*, and *must* are used in this way, it is *must* that is more common than the others. *Have to* and *have got to*, when used for this purpose, have greater emphasis and are used for dramatic effect:

Mark has to be the biggest idiot in the entire world.

Where is Lydia? She s got to be here somewhere.

Infinitive: do with

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
---------------	-----------	------------	-----------------

1. **do with** p.v. [used only in the infinitive form and always with “have to”] When you say that one thing has something to **do with** another, you mean there is a connection between the two.

*Don't blame me for what happened. I had nothing to **do with** it.*

*I'm not sure what this part does, but I think it must have something to **do with** the transmission.*

Infinitive: have on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
---------------	-----------	------------	-----------------

have on & has on	having on	had on	had on
------------------	-----------	--------	--------

1. **have . . . on** *p.v.* When you wear something, such as an item of clothing, perfume, or cosmetics, you **have** it **on**.

*Sally **had** red pants and a blue shirt **on**.*

*I didn't **have** a raincoat **on**, and I got all wet.*

2. **have . . . on** *p.v.* When you **have** an electrical device **on**, you are using it.

*Last summer was so cool that we **had** the air conditioner **on** only two or three times.*

*What's that sound? Dan must **have** the radio **on**.*

Infinitive: hurry up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hurry up & hurries up	hurrying up	hurried up	hurried up

1. **hurry up** *p.v.* When you **hurry up**, you do something quickly.

*Nicole has to **hurry up** if she's going to finish her work before 5:00.*

*If we don't **hurry up**, we're going to miss the beginning of the movie.*

2. **hurry . . . up** *p.v.* When you **hurry** something **up**, you do it more quickly. When you **hurry** people **up**, you urge them to do something more quickly. When you say “**Hurry up**,” to people, you are telling them to do something more quickly.

*Everyone was really hungry, so I asked our cook to **hurry** dinner **up**.*

*There were only five minutes left to finish the test, so the teacher **hurried** the students **up**.*

***Hurry up!** I'm not going to wait for you all day.*

Infinitive: knock over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
knock over & knocks over	knocking over	knocked over	knocked over

1. **knock . . . over** *p.v.* When you **knock** people or things **over**, you use force to make them fall to a horizontal position.

*The force of the explosion **knocked** me over.*

*The children were playing, and they **knocked** the lamp over.*

Infinitive: lighten up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lighten up & lightens up	lightening up	lightened up	lightened up

1. **lighten up** (on) *p.v.* [informal] When you **lighten up** or **lighten up** on people, you become less harsh or less strict in your treatment of them.

*You're awfully hard on your daughter. Maybe you ought to **lighten up** on her.*

*You've been criticizing me all day. Will you please **lighten up**?*

2. **lighten . . . up** *p.v.* When you **lighten up** or **lighten** the subject of conversation **up**, you change the subject of conversation from something serious to something more cheerful and pleasant.

*Enough talk about business. Let's **lighten things up** around here.*

***Lighten up**—you've been talking about death and taxes all night.*

Infinitive: settle for			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
settle for & settles for	settling for	settled for	settled for

1. **settle for** *p.v.* When you **settle for** something, you accept it even though it may not be exactly what you want or need.

*The strikers wanted an 8 percent pay increase, but they **settled for** 5 percent.*

*Dr. Smith has very high standards. He won't **settle for** second best.*

Infinitive: think up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
think up & thinks up	thinking up	thought up	thought up

1. **think . . . up** *p.v.* When you **think up** something, such as an idea, solution, or plan, you use your imagination to create it. **Think up** is similar to **come up with**.

*I have to **think up** a way to solve this problem.*

*Maria **thought up** a great way to make some extra money.*

*Stop worrying—I'll **think** something **up**.*

Infinitive: weasel out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
weasel out & weasels out	weaseling out	weaseled out	weaseled out

1. **weasel out** (of) *p.v.* When you avoid doing something you don't want to do in a way that is deceptive or cowardly, you **weasel out** or **weasel out** of doing it.

*Sarah **weaseled out** of going to the party with David by pretending she was sick.*

*I have to give a presentation at the meeting, and I hate public speaking. How can I **weasel out** of it?*

PRACTICE

25-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. We're going to be late if you don't _____.
2. I told the store manager that I wanted a full refund and that I wouldn't _____ anything else.
3. Mr. Wolfe _____ a white suit _____ last night.
4. Joe's been angry all day. I wish he'd _____.
5. The truck hit the light pole and _____ it _____.
6. You have to talk to someone in the shipping department about your missing order. I have nothing to _____ shipping.
7. You're such a coward. You always _____ of things instead of manning up and doing what's right.
8. Mark is trying to _____ a way to make money without working.

9. Go upstairs and _____ your sister _____. I'm afraid she's going to be late for school.
10. We've been talking politics all night. Let's _____ things _____, OK?
11. I like to _____ the radio _____ when I go to bed.

25-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Charles wore a red shirt yesterday. What did Charles do?
2. Sean wants a 15 percent raise, and he won't accept less. What won't Sean do?
3. Nicholas didn't want to go to the meeting, so he lied and said that he had a doctor's appointment. What did Nicholas do?
4. Jake hit Jerry so hard that Jerry fell to the floor. What did Jake do to Jerry?
5. Ned told Todd to work more quickly. What did Ned tell Todd to do?
6. I got a letter about my income taxes. What was the letter about?
7. Sergeant Jones has been yelling at the soldiers all day. What should Sergeant Jones do?
8. Betty's got to make a Halloween costume, and she's using her imagination to create one. What is Betty doing?

25-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Use *have to*, *have got to*, or *must* in each sentence.

25-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

burned up, 22	lined up, 18	plugged up, 22	warmed up,
cleared up, 22	made-up, 23	ripped up, 17	worn down,
dried out, 15	paid up, 22	shaken up, 24	zipped up, 2
heated up, 22			

1. It's freezing outside—make sure your coat is _____.
2. Don't start driving yet. The car's not _____.
3. We talked about the problem, and now everything is _____.

4. I need lotion. My skin is really _____.
5. Hank is such a liar. Don't believe any of his _____ excuses.
6. After I give Bill ten dollars, I won't owe him another penny. I'll be totally _____.
7. Pat was pretty _____ after the accident.
8. Bill was furious at his ex-wife, and now all his photos of her are _____ and in the garbage.
9. People are _____ for three blocks to buy World Cup tickets.
10. Don't drink that coffee—it's not _____.
11. I can't smell or taste anything because my nose is all _____.
12. I was really _____ after he took my calculator without asking me and then lost it.
13. The heels of my old cowboy boots are _____. I need to get them fixed.

25-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure to use the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

call in, 5	hand out, 10	screw on, 12	stop over, 24
clear up, 22	hook up, 9	show off, 24	take after, 5
come down, 24	let up, 24	slow down, 24	trade in, 24
go back, 19	print out, 24	stick up, 14	warm up, 19

1. The car dealer is asking \$27,000 for the car I want, but I think he might _____ to \$24,000.
2. While you go to the library, I'll go to the supermarket, and we'll _____ at the corner in one hour.
3. Be sure you _____ the top of that mustard jar _____ tightly.
4. Erik checks the time every five minutes so that he can _____ his new Rolex watch.
5. Mike wasn't at work today. He _____ sick.

6. When Bill flies to Los Angeles, he always _____ in Bangkok.
7. The car dealer said he'll give me a good deal if I _____ my old car.
8. We _____ the notices _____ all over town.
9. The memo from the Human Resources office _____ a lot of confusion about the new vacation policy.
10. This weather is terrible. I wonder if this storm is ever going to _____.
11. Turn the heater on, and the room will _____ right _____.
12. Nancy was driving too fast, so I told her to _____.
13. The teacher won't _____ the tests until the students are quiet.
14. After you finish writing your report, _____ it _____ and give it to me.
15. Raul's from Colombia, but he hasn't _____ there for seven years.
16. My father was very serious and hard-working. His father was the same. My father _____ his father.

Unit 26

Phrasal Verbs and the Adverb *Back*

The adverb *back* is sometimes used with phrasal verbs to mean *again*. The following sentences have the same meaning:

*We **got together** again.*

*We **got back together**.*

Back is always placed directly before the particle. When *back* is used with separable phrasal verbs, the object must separate the verb and particle, and *back* must be placed between the object and the particle:

*I **put** the engine back **together**.*

~~*I **put back together** the engine.*~~

Do not confuse the adverb *back*, which modifies phrasal verbs, with the particle *back* that is part of some phrasal verbs (and has the same meaning of *again*).

Infinitive: get together			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get together & gets together	getting together	got together	gotten/got together

1. **get together** (with) *p.v.* When two people **get together**, they meet and spend time together. When you **get together** with someone, you meet and spend time with that person. When a man and woman resume a relationship after separating, they **get back together**.

*If you're not busy tomorrow night, would you like to **get together**?*

*We're going to **get together** with Bill and Nancy tomorrow.*

*Judy and Sam had separated, but now they've **gotten back together**.*

get-together *n.* An informal gathering is a **get-together**.

*I'm having a little **get-together** tonight. Would you like to come?*

2. **get . . . together** *p.v.* When you **get** things **together**, you collect them so they are in the same place.

*You should **get** all your tools **together** so you will have them when you need them.*
*Linda **got** all her tax records **together** to show to her accountant.*

3. **get . . . together** *p.v. [informal]* When you **get** yourself **together**, or **get** it **together**, you gain control of your emotions after you have become upset or emotional.

*Bob was very upset before the party, but he **got** it **together** before the guests came.*
*Hey, **get** yourself **together**! Everyone is watching you.*

Infinitive: go over

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go over & goes over	going over	went over	gone over

1. **go over** (to) *p.v.* When people move from where you are to a place, thing, or person that is farther away from you, they **go over** or **go over** to that place, thing, or person.

*I'm busy. **Go** back **over** there and stop bothering me.*
*I was hot, so Maria **went over** to the window and opened it.*

2. **go over** (to) *p.v.* When you go to someone's house for a visit, you **go over** or **go over** to that person's house.

*Have you **gone over** to Nicole's house to see her new baby yet?*
*I **went over** to Erik's for dinner last night.*

3. **go over** *p.v.* When you carefully read or review important written material, you **go over** it.

*Here's a magazine article I just finished writing. **Go over** it and tell me what you think.*
*The actor **went over** his lines before the audition.*

going-over *n.* When you examine or inspect something carefully, you give it a **going-over**.

*I gave his report a good **going-over** and found a lot of mistakes.*

4. **go over** *p.v.* When you carefully explain something, usually something that is complicated but important, you **go over** it.

*Before the trial Hank and his lawyer **went over** what Hank was going to say.*

*No one understood the manager's plan after he explained it, so he **went back over** it.*

5. **go over** *p.v.* When an idea, suggestion, or performance is accepted and liked by other people, it **goes over**.

*Senator Dolittle's plan to raise taxes didn't **go over** with the voters.*

*The singer's performance **went over** well with the critics.*

Infinitive: go up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go up & goes up	going up	went up	gone up

1. **go up** (to) *p.v.* When you move to a higher level or position, or from south to north, you **go up** or **go up** to that place. **Go down** is the opposite of **go up**.

*Suzie came down from her tree house to eat lunch, but she **went back up** after she finished.*

*I spend the winters in Mexico, and **go up** to my home in Ohio in the summer.*

2. **go up** (to) *p.v.* When the cost, rate, quality, quantity, or level of something increases, it **goes up**. **Go down** is the opposite of **go up**.

*The price of gas hasn't **gone up** in two years.*

*In the summer the temperature in Saudi Arabia can **go up** to 125 degrees.*

3. **go up** (to) *p.v.* When a schedule or plan ends at a certain time or date, the schedule or plan **goes up** to that time or date.

*Do you have the new schedule? This one **goes up** only to the end of April.*

*The teacher gave the students a syllabus that **went up** to the midterm.*

4. **go up** (to) *p.v.* When something extends to a certain point that is farther north or at a higher elevation, it **goes up** to that point. **Go down** is the opposite of **go up**.

*This trail **went up** to the base camp at the foot of the mountain.*

*Interstate 5 **goes up** to Seattle.*

5. **go up** (to) *p.v.* When you approach a person, you **go up** to that person.

*There's Sarah over there. **Go up** and introduce yourself.*

*Janice isn't shy—she **went right up** to the president of the company and asked for a raise.*

Infinitive: let in on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
let in on & lets in on	letting in on	let in on	let in on

1. **let . . . in on** *p.v.* When you tell people information that is secret or not widely known, you **let** that person **in on** the information.

*General Chambers **let** me **in on** the top secret information.*

*I'm going to **let** you **in on** something not many people know about me.*

Infinitive: open up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
open up & opens up	opening up	opened up	opened up

1. **open . . . up** *p.v.* When you **open** something **up**, you reveal what is inside so that people can see it.

*Sofia **opened** the box **up** and looked inside.*

*Mike's going to **open up** his computer to try to find the problem.*

2. **open . . . up** *p.v.* When you **open** a room or building **up**, you unlock or open the doors so that people can enter.

*The office closes at 12:00 for lunch and **opens** back **up** at 1:00.*

*The manager was late and didn't **open up** the store until 10:30.*

3. **open . . . up** *p.v.* When a new business starts, it **opens up** or is **opened up** by someone.

*I was driving through town, and I noticed that a new book store has **opened up** on Maple Street.*

*Jimmy wants to **open** a restaurant **up** near the new office building.*

Infinitive: put together

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put together & puts together	putting together	put together	put together

1. **put . . . together** *p.v.* When you assemble the parts of something, you **put it together**. **Put together** is the opposite of **take apart**.

*Sally got a bicycle for her birthday, and her father **put it together** after dinner.*

*It was easy taking my car's engine apart, but **putting it back together** was a lot harder.*

2. **put . . . together** *p.v.* When you organize some ideas, plans, or suggestions in order to show them to someone or discuss them with someone, you **put them together**.

*Mr. and Mrs. Flores want to redecorate their house, so they asked an interior designer to **put some ideas together**.*

*I have an interesting idea for a new business, and I'm **putting together** a proposal.*

3. **put . . . together** *p.v.* When you position people or things so that they are close to each other or touching, you **put them together**.

*The teacher told Timmy and Mike to **put their desks together** so they could work on their project.*

*When you plan your dinner party seating arrangement, **put** Heather and Jimmy **together**.*

Infinitive: shut off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
shut off & shuts off	shutting off	shut off	shut off

1. **shut . . . off** *p.v.* When you **shut off** an electrical or mechanical device, you cut the power going to it so that it stops operating. **Turn off** and **switch off** are similar to **shut off**.

*Timmy's mother told him to **shut off** the TV and go to bed.*

*I'm freezing. Would you mind **shutting** the air conditioner **off**?*

shut off *part.adj.* After you **shut off** an electrical or mechanical device, it is **shut off**. **Turned off** and **switched off** are similar to **shut off**.

*Now I know why it's so cold in here—the heat's **shut off**.*

shutoff *n.* When you **shut off** something, or when something **shuts off**, this action is a **shutoff**. When you **shut off** something, you use the **shutoff** switch, button, valve, etc.

*The electricity **shutoff** lasted twenty minutes.*

*In case of emergency, turn this **shutoff** valve here.*

Infinitive: start up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
start up & starts up	starting up	started up	started up

1. **start . . . up** *p.v.* When an electrical or mechanical device **starts up** or someone **starts it up**, it begins to operate.

*My car's engine died at a red light, and it wouldn't **start up** again.*

*You push this button here to **start** the computer **up**.*

start-up *n.* When you **start up** something, or something **starts up**, this action is a **start-up**. When you **start up** something, you use the **start-up** switch, button, etc.

*To **start** the computer **up**, push this **start-up** button.*

*If your computer's hard disk crashes, you can use this CD as the **start-up** disk.*

2. **start . . . up** *p.v.* When you **start up** a new business or company, you take the steps necessary to begin a new business or company.

*You should have a detailed business plan before **starting** a business **up**.*

*Jane borrowed the money she needed to **start up** her business from her uncle.*

start-up *n.* A **start-up** or business or company **start-up** is a new business or company.

*Most business **start-ups** aren't successful.*

PRACTICE

26-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Your important papers are all over the house. You should _____ them _____ and keep them in a safe place.
2. It was so cold this morning that it took half an hour to _____ my car _____.
3. This is awfully complicated. Could you _____ it one more time?
4. The police ordered the people in the house to _____ the door _____.
5. The sergeant _____ the hill to look for the enemy soldiers.

6. The account executive was asked to _____ some ideas _____ for a new advertising campaign.
7. I'm trying to sleep. Would you please _____ the lights?
8. Linda saw her favorite movie star, but she was too shy to _____ to him and ask him for his autograph.
9. I'll _____ you _____ a little secret.
10. I'm going to _____ back _____ to Todd's house to return his tools.
11. This calendar is useless—it _____ only to August.
12. Thank you for your application. I will _____ it carefully and call you in a few days.
13. This jigsaw puzzle has 1,000 pieces. It'll take forever to _____ it _____.
14. If that big discount store _____ outside of town, all these little shops will go out of business.
15. The level of water in the river always falls during the summer but _____ back _____ the next spring.
16. Sam's idea of giving all the workers a 10 percent pay raise didn't _____ well with management.
17. I know you're upset, but you have to _____ yourself _____.
18. On Saturday nights Mike usually _____ with some friends and plays poker.
19. As soon as we arrived at the party, David _____ to the buffet table and grabbed a plate.
20. Without the combination, there's no way to _____ this safe _____.
21. _____ all your Spanish books _____ on the same shelf.
22. This road _____ to the next town, but that's where it ends.
23. I'll need around \$25,000 to _____ my new business.

26-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. I wish they would *open up* near me. (a branch office, one)
2. Lydia *put together*. (the food processor, it)
3. Do you know how to *shut off*? (the photocopier, it)
4. Push this button to *start up*. (the generator, it)

26-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Frank read my report carefully. What did Frank do to my report?
2. In Question 1, what did Frank give my report?
3. Judy walked toward the king, stopped next to him, and gave him the petition. What did Judy do to the king?
4. Mike told me a secret. What did Mike do?
5. Bill and some friends are going to meet and spend some time together. What are Bill and his friends going to do?
6. In Question 5, what is this activity called?
7. My computer begins to operate from the hard disk. What does my computer do from the hard disk?
8. In Question 7, what would you call the hard disk?
9. The mayor's plan to fight crime in the streets was very successful with the voters. What impression did the mayor's plan have on the voters?
10. The heater stops operating automatically when the temperature reaches a certain point. What does the heater do?
11. In Question 10, what is the temperature that makes the heater stop operating called?
12. You quit your job so that you could begin your own company. Why did you quit your job?
13. In Question 12, what would you call your new company?

14. You assembled all the parts of your model airplane. What did you do to your model airplane?
15. This airplane schedule gives flight times until December 31. What does the airplane schedule do?
16. The supermarket unlocks its doors and lets people in at 7:00 A.M. every day. What does the supermarket do at 7:00 A.M. every day?

26-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

do with, 25	have on, 25	look over, 21	show off, 24
end up, 20	hurry up, 25	pick on, 21	take out on,
go off, 20	knock over, 25	put on, 1	think up, 25
go on, 20	lighten up, 25	settle for, 25	weasel out, 1

1. I'm asking \$10,000 for my car, but I'll _____ \$8,500.
2. That new manager is really hard on the employees. He ought to _____.
3. At the supermarket, Tom hit the stack of boxes with his shopping cart and _____ them _____.
4. We had planned to go to France on our vacation, but we _____ going to Spain instead.
5. Will you _____! If we don't leave soon we're going to be late.
6. Mark hates his job, and he comes home every night and _____ it _____ his family.
7. My doctor got the test results from the lab, and she _____ them _____ very carefully.
8. _____ your coat _____. It's cold outside.
9. Maria asked me to take her to the airport, but I want to stay home and watch the game. I'll _____ of taking her by saying that my car broken down and that she'll have to take a taxi.
10. The detective didn't believe that the gun had _____ accidentally.

11. I hated my older brother when I was a kid. He always _____
me.
12. How are we going to get \$500 in two days? We need to _____
a good plan.
13. I didn't understand everything the computer shop guy said, but it had something to
_____ memory.
14. Jim tries to answer every question the teacher asks. He's always _____
_____.
15. That meeting was so boring. It seemed like it was going to _____
_____ forever.
16. The police officer must be off duty. He doesn't _____ his uniform
_____.

Unit 27

Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Off* and the Adverb *Right*

The particle *off* is used in many phrasal verbs to say that something is separated or removed:

*The cup handle **broke**.* (The handle is broken, but it is still attached to the cup.)

*The cup handle **broke off**.* (The handle is no longer attached to the cup.)

Right, discussed in [Unit 19](#), is often used with these phrasal verbs to indicate that the action of the verb happened quickly:

*He **washed** the dirt **off**.* (The dirt was removed.)

*He **washed** the dirt **right off**.* (The dirt was removed quickly.)

Remember that *right* can be used in this way only after an object that separates the verb and the particle:

*He **washed** the dirt **right off**.*

~~*He **washed** **right off** the dirt.*~~

Infinitive: bite off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
bite off & bites off	biting off	bit off	bitten off

1. **bite . . . off** *p.v.* When you **bite off** something, you use your teeth to remove a piece.
When you **bite off** more than you can chew, you agree to do something that you do not have the time or the ability to do.

*The lion **bit off** a huge piece of the zebra's flesh.*

*You can't finish that huge project by tomorrow. I think you've **bitten off** more than you can chew.*

Infinitive: break off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break off & breaks off	breaking off	broke off	broken off

1. **break . . . off** *p.v.* When something **breaks off** or someone **breaks** something **off**, a part or smaller piece is separated from something larger by force.

*Jim **broke off** a piece of chocolate and gave it to his girlfriend.*

*One of the arms **broke off** the statue when it fell off the pedestal.*

broken off *part.adj.* After something **breaks off**, it is **broken off**.

*The handle of the coffee cup is **broken off**.*

2. **break . . . off** *p.v.* When you **break off** relations or contact with someone, you decide to end relations or contact with that person.

*The two countries **broke off** relations with each other.*

*I was so angry at my in-laws that I **broke off** all contact with them.*

Infinitive: dry off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
dry off & dries off	drying off	dried off	dried off

1. **dry . . . off** *p.v.* When something **dries off**, water or other liquids that are on it evaporate. When you **dry** something **off**, you remove water or other liquids that are on it.

*It rained for only a few minutes, so the streets **dried off** quickly.*

*Leave your wet clothes outside and let the sun **dry** them **off**.*

dried off *part.adj.* After something has dried off, it is **dried off**.

*They can't play baseball because the field isn't **dried off**.*

Infinitive: knock off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
knock off & knocks off	knocking off	knocked off	knocked off

1. **knock . . . off** *p.v.* When you **knock** something **off**, you either accidentally or deliberately use force to make it fall from a place above the ground to the ground below.

*Susie **knocked** a glass **off** the table and broke it.*

*The cat **knocked** the clock **off** the shelf.*

2. **knock off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **knock off**, you finish working.

*I quit working at 5:00 last night, but Sean didn't **knock off** until 8:30.*

*You've been working all day. Why don't you **knock off**?*

3. **knock . . . off** *p.v. [informal]* When you say “**Knock it off**” to people, you want them to stop doing something that is bothering you.

*If you don't **knock** it **off**, you'll be sorry.*

*I'm tired of listening to you criticize me. **Knock it off**!*

4. **knock . . . off** *p.v.* When you **knock** something **off**, you make something quickly and not very carefully.

*The artist **knocked off** a quick sketch and gave it to the waiter.*

*Dan prefers writing novels, but he sometimes **knocks off** a magazine article to make a few dollars.*

5. **knock . . . off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **knock** people **off**, you kill them.

*Jake was sent to prison for **knocking off** his brother-in-law.*

*Mario was the head of a gang of criminals until he was **knocked off** by a rival.*

Infinitive: nod off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
nod off & nods off	nodding off	nodded off	nodded off

1. **nod off** *p.v.* When you fall into a light sleep, often at an inappropriate time, you **nod off**. **Nod off** is the same as **doze off**.

*My students are so sleepy that they often **nod off** during class.*

*Jim crashed his car because he **nodded off** while driving.*

Infinitive: wash off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

wash off & washes off	washing off	washed off	washed off
-----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **wash . . . off** *p.v.* When you **wash** something **off** or **wash** the dirt **off** something, you use water and soap to remove dirt or unwanted items from a surface.

*Mike **washed off** his car.*

*Mike **washed** the dirt **off** his car.*

washed off *part.adj.* After you **wash** something **off** or **wash** the dirt **off** something, it is **washed off**.

*The maid said she had **washed** the grease **off** the wall, but the wall didn't look **washed off** to me.*

Infinitive: wear off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wear off & wears off	wearing off	wore off	worn off

1. **wear off** *p.v.* When the surface of something is gradually removed by friction or exposure to the elements so that what is beneath the surface is exposed, the surface **wears off**.

*You could see the wood where the paint had **worn off**.*

*The gold **wears off** this cheap jewelry right away.*

worn off *part.adj.* After something has worn off, it is **worn off**.

*These ancient temples used to be very colorful, but now all the paint is **worn off**.*

2. **wear off** *p.v.* When the effects of drugs or alcohol gradually go away, they **wear off**.

*The wounded soldier was in great pain after the morphine **wore off**.*

*He's going to have a big headache after the vodka **wears off**.*

3. **wear off** *p.v.* When an emotional feeling gradually goes away, it **wears off**.

*After the shock of getting fired **wore off**, I started to get angry.*

*When I met Jim I fell in love immediately, but that **wore off** quickly as I got to know him better.*

Infinitive: wipe off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

wipe off & wipes off

wiping off

wiped off

wiped off

1. **wipe . . . off** *p.v.* When you completely remove a liquid from a surface by moving a towel or sponge across it with a sweeping motion, you **wipe** the surface **off**. You can either **wipe off** something that is wet or **wipe off** the liquid.

Wipe off your face.

Wipe the food off your face.

wiped off *part.adj.* After something has been wiped off, it is **wiped off**.

That table doesn't look wiped off to me. Wipe it off again.

PRACTICE

27-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. My boss was angry when he saw that I was _____ at my desk.
2. After I washed the windows, I _____ them _____ with some old newspapers.
3. Jerry has to finish a lot of work before he goes home, so he probably won't _____ until late.
4. It rained last night, so don't play outside until the grass _____.
5. Be careful when you feed horses. They can _____ your finger right _____.
6. The doctor said the sedative would _____ after four or five hours.
7. The shop owner was afraid to _____ the gang graffiti _____ his wall.
8. After Jake _____ Hank, he was charged with murder.
9. During the storm, a tree branch _____ and fell on the roof.
10. You two kids have been arguing all day. _____ it _____ right now!
11. I can't use this old typewriter anymore. The painted letters have _____ the keys.

12. The two sides couldn't agree on a solution, and the negotiations _____
_____.
13. I'll try to _____ a few more pages of my book before I go to bed.
14. It was a long time before the shock of his brother's death _____
_____.
15. Don't put your glass of wine so close to the edge of the table. Someone might _____ it _____.

27-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place. Use *right* with questions 2 and 6.

1. Alex has *bitten off*. (the head of the gingerbread man, it)
2. The movers *broke off*. (the cup handle, it)
3. Please *dry off*. (the dishes, them)
4. Don't *knock off*. (the ash tray, it)
5. The janitor *washed off*. (the blood, it)
6. She didn't *wipe off*. (the milk, it)

27-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Try to use *right* with some of the answers. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I used water to remove the mud from my car. What did I do to my car?
2. Timmy forcibly removed the propellers of my model airplane. What did Timmy do to my model airplane's propellers?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the model airplane's propellers?
4. You put your arm in the water, and the shark immediately removed it with its teeth. What did the shark do to your arm?
5. You could see that the ring wasn't solid gold because the brass under the gold was visible. What happened to the gold?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the gold?

7. I accidentally hit the lamp with my arm, and it fell to the floor. What did I do to the lamp?
8. You used a paper towel to remove the glass cleaner from the mirror. What did you do to the mirror?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the mirror after you removed the glass cleaner?
10. You have to remove the water from the table before you paint it. What do you have to do to the table before you paint it?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe the table after the water is removed?
12. The plane almost hit a mountain after the pilot fell asleep. What did the pilot do?

27-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

clear up, 22	go up, 26	melt down, 21	put together
come down, 24	heat up, 22	open up, 26	shut off, 26
eat up, 22	let in on, 26	pay up, 22	start up, 26
go over, 26	let up, 24	plug up, 22	trade in, 24

1. If I don't come up with \$230 by Friday, they're going to _____ my electricity.
2. The guy from the collection agency demanded that Miguel _____ immediately.
3. It rained for forty days and forty nights before it _____.
4. After the revolution, statues of the king were cut into small pieces and _____.
5. We had a lot of questions about our school project, but the teacher _____ them _____.
6. Mark said his audition didn't _____ well, and he doesn't think he'll get the part.
7. Soldiers are trained to take their rifles apart and _____ them back _____.

8. I think \$15,000 is a little high for that car. If you _____ a little, I might be interested.
9. The police closed the illegal casino, but it _____ right back _____ a few days later.
10. No one at the party ate the carrot sticks, but they _____ the shrimp right _____.
11. I hate using the stove on really hot summer days because it _____ the whole house _____.
12. My salary hasn't _____ in more than three years.
13. The senator _____ her aides _____ her plan to run for the presidency.
14. I doubt if I'll get much if I _____ this old car _____.
15. The engine _____ right _____ when I turned the key.
16. My daughter put one of her stuffed animals in the toilet and _____ it _____.

Unit 28

Passive Phrasal Verbs, Part 2

When separable phrasal verbs are in the passive, they cannot be separated by the object of the verb because the object of the active verb is the subject of the passive sentence—there is no object:

active: *Jim called back* passive: *Mike was called back.*
Mike.

subject
object

subject

active: *Jim called Mike back.*

subject
object

Infinitive: beef up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
beef up & beefs up	beefing up	beefed up	beefed up

1. **beef . . . up** *p.v.* When you **beef up** security or some other arrangement to prevent or deal with a problem, you make this arrangement stronger.

*After the terrorist attack, security was **beefed up** at the embassy.*

*The hospital decided to **beef up** its emergency facilities.*

*The coach is planning to **beef the defense up**.*

beefed-up *part.adj.* After security or some other arrangement to prevent or deal with a problem has been made stronger, it is **beefed-up**.

*The ambassador is confident that the **beefed-up** security will prevent any further terrorist attacks.*

Infinitive: break up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break up & breaks up	breaking up	broke up	broken up

1. **break . . . up** *p.v.* When you **break up** a fight, you stop the fight.

*Two students were fighting, and the teacher **broke** them **up**.*

*There was no way I could **break up** the fight between the two dogs.*

2. **break . . . up** *p.v.* When a gathering of people separates, it **breaks up**. When the police tell people who are gathered together in a crowd to separate and leave the area, the police **break** the gathering **up**.

*The meeting should **break up** around 3:00.*

*The police ordered the gang members to **break it up**.*

*The demonstration was **broken up** by riot police.*

3. **break . . . up** (with) *p.v.* When two people end a romantic relationship, they **break up**. When you end a romantic relationship with another person, you **break up** with that person. When other people cause a couple to **break up**, they **break** the couple **up**.

*I was sad to hear that Jim and Nancy had **broken up**.*

*It was Jim's secretary who **broke** them **up**.*

breakup *n.* When two people end a romantic relationship, a **breakup** occurs.

*Nancy is very upset about the **breakup**.*

4. **break . . . up** *p.v.* When something breaks into smaller pieces, it **breaks up**. When you break something into smaller pieces, you **break** it **up**.

*The meteor **broke up** when it entered Earth's atmosphere.*

*Sally **broke** the cookie **up** before giving it to her baby.*

breakup *n.* When something breaks into smaller pieces, a **breakup** takes place.

*The **breakup** of AT&T created several smaller telephone companies.*

5. **break . . . up** *p.v.* When something **breaks up** the day or some other period of time, it interrupts that time and makes it less boring.

*The bank guard likes to chat with the tellers once in a while to **break up** the day.*

*My day was **broken up** by a going-away party for one of my coworkers.*

Infinitive: call back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
call back & calls back	calling back	called back	called back

1. **call . . . back** *p.v.* When you **call** someone **back**, you call a person on the telephone who has called you earlier.

*Janice left a message asking me to **call her back**.*

*Bob was **called back** by the salesman.*

2. **call . . . back** *p.v.* When you leave a place or walk away from a person and are then asked to return, you are **called back**.

*I remembered something after she walked away, and I **called her back**.*

*Mike handed his letter of resignation to his boss, but he was **called back** after he left the office.*

Infinitive: carry out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
carry out & carries out	carrying out	carried out	carried out

1. **carry . . . out** *p.v.* When you **carry out** a duty, task, assignment, or order, you perform or complete that duty, task, assignment, or order.

*Sean will **carry** your duties **out** while you're on vacation.*

*The boss was furious because his orders hadn't been **carried out**.*

2. **carry . . . out (of)** *p.v.* When you **carry** something **out** of a place, you hold it in your hands and take it from that place.

*It took four guys to **carry** the pool table **out**.*

*My three-year-old son fell asleep, so I had to **carry** him **out** of the restaurant.*

carryout *n.* Food that you take from a restaurant and eat in another place is **carryout** or **carryout** food. **Takeout** and **takeout** food are the same as **carryout** and **carryout** food.

*We usually bring **carryout** food when we go to visit Aunt Kathy.*

Infinitive: drown out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
drown out & drowns out	drowning out	drowned out	drowned out

1. **drown . . . out** *p.v.* When a sound or a person speaking makes it impossible to hear or understand another sound or another person speaking, it **drowns out** that sound or person speaking.

*There's a huge construction project next to my house, so I play music all day long to **drown** the noise **out**.*

*I wanted to hear her speech, but the audience made so much noise that everything she said was **drowned out**.*

Infinitive: give away			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give away & gives away	giving away	gave away	given away

1. **give . . . away** *p.v.* When you **give** something **away**, you give it to someone without asking for anything in return because you do not want it or because you want to help the person you are giving it to.

*This old furniture isn't worth very much, so I think I'll just **give** it **away**.*

*He made nearly a billion dollars, but after he retired he **gave** most of his money **away**.*

2. **give . . . away** *p.v.* When you **give** a secret **away**, you accidentally reveal that secret.

*I haven't seen that movie yet, so don't **give away** the ending.*

*You can trust me with the secret. I won't **give** it **away**.*

3. **give . . . away** *p.v.* When you **give** yourself **away**, you accidentally reveal something secret about yourself. When something **gives** you **away**, it accidentally reveals something secret about you.

*Mark tried to keep his affair a secret, but he was **given away** by his credit card bills.*

*Todd claimed he didn't care about Sally anymore, but he **gave** himself **away** when he asked who she had gone to the party with.*

giveaway *n.* A **giveaway** is a statement or action that reveals secret information.

*I knew I was going to be fired from my job when everyone stopped talking to me —that was the **giveaway**.*

Infinitive: mess up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

mess up & messes up	messing up	messed up	messed up
---------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

1. **mess . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **mess up** a place, you make it dirty or disorganized.

*Jim made spaghetti sauce, and he really **messed up** the kitchen.*

*You kids can play in the living room, but don't **mess it up**.*

messed up *part.adj.* After you **mess up** a place, it is **messed up**.

*It looks like Timmy was the last one in the bathroom—it's really **messed up**.*

2. **mess . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **mess up** a situation, you create problems. When you **mess up** a plan or arrangement, you interfere with it and prevent it from happening as planned. **Mess up** is similar to **screw up**.

*Everything was perfect until you **messed it up**.*

*Our honeymoon was **messed up** by the airline strike.*

messed up *part.adj.* When you interfere with a plan or arrangement and prevent it from happening as planned, it is **messed up**. **Messed up** is similar to **screwed up**.

*Bob changed my plan, and now it's totally **messed up**.*

Infinitive: stand up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stand up & stands up	standing up	stood up	stood up

1. **stand up** *p.v.* When you **stand up**, you change from a sitting position to a standing position. **Get up** is similar to **stand up**.

*Everyone **stands up** when the judge enters the courtroom.*

*When the students are sleepy, the teacher makes them **stand up**.*

2. **stand . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **stand people up**, you do not arrive at their house as you have promised or at a social event or meeting where you are expected.

*Heather had a date with Jim last Saturday night, but he **stood her up**.*

*The senator was scheduled to speak at our meeting, but he **stood us up**.*

PRACTICE

28-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. If you _____ a long airplane flight into two or three shorter flights, it isn't as boring.
2. My workroom was clean and neat, but my brother did some work and he _____ it _____.
3. It's going to be a surprise party, so don't _____ it _____.
4. The neighborhood council asked the police to _____ their patrols in high crime neighborhoods.
5. The explosions and screaming _____ the emergency instructions _____, so no one knew what the rescue plan was.
6. The general expects his orders to be _____ immediately.
7. In some countries, students always _____ when they speak in class.
8. The huge iceberg _____ when it drifted into warmer water.
9. Breaking my leg sure _____ my ski trip _____.
10. Janice didn't come to my house last night as she promised. She _____ me _____.
11. Timmy and his friend were fighting, and Timmy's mother _____ the fight _____.
12. These boxes are really heavy. Can you help me _____ them _____ of the house?
13. After the protest rally ended, the crowd quickly _____ and went home.
14. I'm too busy to talk on the phone now. Can you _____ me _____ later?
15. Bob claimed to have an excellent education, but he was _____ by his poor grammar.
16. Mark is very upset. His girlfriend just _____ with him.
17. Jim told the Girl Scouts that he didn't want to buy any cookies, but as they walked away he changed his mind and _____ them _____.

18. Instead of charging for the software program, the company decided to _____ it _____ for free.

28-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The White House *beefed up*. (security, it)
2. The police are *breaking up*. (the protest, it)
3. A trained technician ought to *carry out*. (the experiment, it)
4. The foundation *gave away*. (the money, it)
5. Susie always *messes up*. (the bathroom, it)
6. Todd *stood up*. (Heather, her)

28-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Make all the phrasal verbs passive.

1. Dr. Wood will do the test of the new drug. What will happen to the test?
2. The statue was smashed by thieves. What happened to the gold statue?
3. The children made the house dirty and disorganized. What happened to the house?
4. In Question 3, how would you describe the house?
5. Mike's friend promised to come to his house, but he didn't. What happened to Mike?
6. Karen called Sarah, but Sarah was at school. Sarah didn't call Karen later. What didn't happen to Karen?
7. A supermarket chain gave the food to charity and didn't receive any money for it. What happened to the food?
8. The palace is making security stronger. What is happening to security at the palace?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe the security now?
10. The jet engine noise was so loud that I couldn't hear the baby crying behind me. What did the engine noise do to the crying baby?

28-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and

person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back up, 11	fix up, 15	rip up, 17	tear down, 8
blow away, 15	hand out, 10	stick up, 14	track down,
cut off, 11	hold up, 7	take in, 7	use up, 14
drop off, 11	lay off, 10	take out, 11	wake up, 11

1. The hard disk is _____ by the computer operator every day.
2. The old buildings are being _____ to make room for a new office building.
3. There isn't any paper in the copier. It was _____ by Rosa.
4. Last night I was _____ by a loud noise.
5. I can't believe I was naive enough to be _____ by him.
6. The library book I wanted had already been _____.
7. Something amazing happened yesterday. You are going to be _____ when I tell you about it.
8. After the old house had been _____, it looked a lot better.
9. Many employees are really worried that they're going to be _____.
10. I was talking to my brother on the phone when I was suddenly _____.
11. My shirt was _____ when I fell off my bicycle.
12. The entire building is _____ by these four steel beams.
13. The pamphlets will be _____ in train stations and airports.
14. The supermarket was _____ again last night.
15. The passengers were _____ at the bus stop.
16. The escaped prisoner was easily _____ by the FBI agents.

Unit 29

Phrasal Verbs and *Might, May, and Can*

Possibility: *may* and *might*

Both *may* and *might* are used to express a medium level of possibility. When *may* and *might* are used to express possibility in the present or future, their meaning is the same, but *may* has a slightly more formal sound. *Might* is slightly more common in everyday American English:

Nancy might **drop in** tonight.

Nancy may **drop in** tonight.

Requests: *may* and *might*

Both *may* and *might* are used to make requests. *May* has a formal sound, and is less common than *might*. *Can* is the most common in American English:

most common: Can I **drop in** tonight?

formal: May I **drop in** tonight?

very rare: Might I **drop in** tonight?

Permission: *may* and *can*

May and *can* are also used to give permission. In this case, *may* is much more formal and is much less common than *can*. *Might* is not used for this purpose:

You can **drop in** after dinner.

You may **drop in** after dinner.

Infinitive: come apart			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come apart & comes apart	coming apart	came apart	come apart

1. **come apart** *p.v.* When something **comes apart**, the parts separate because it is old or in bad condition or because the parts were not strongly connected to each other.

*This toy airplane is such a piece of junk that it **came apart** in my hand.
Be careful with this old book. It's **coming apart**.*

Infinitive: drop in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
drop in & drops in	dropping in	dropped in	dropped in

1. **drop in (on)** *p.v.* When you **drop in** on people, you visit them unexpectedly.

*If you're ever in my neighborhood, **drop in**.
Sally **dropped in** on Marsha last night.*

Infinitive: flip out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
flip out & flips out	flipping out	flipped out	flipped out

1. **flip out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **flip out**, you become very upset or very angry.

*Bob **flipped out** when the city doubled his property taxes.
Keep your hands off Jim's computer—he'll **flip out** if you screw it up.*

Infinitive: go under

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go under & goes under	going under	went under	gone under

1. **go under** *p.v.* When a business fails and goes out of business, it **goes under**.

*Many new restaurants **go under** within a year of opening.
Joe said business is very slow, and he's worried that his shoe store might **go under**.*

Infinitive: look out

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look out & looks out	looking out	looked out	looked out

1. **look out** (for) *p.v.* When you **look out** or **look out** for something, you remain alert for someone or something that is dangerous or important. When you tell people to **look out**, you are warning them of possible danger. **Look out** is the same as **watch out**.

***Look out** for bears when you camp in the mountains.*

*There's a lot of ice on the road, so **look out**.*

lookout *n.* A **lookout** is someone who **looks out** for someone or something that is dangerous or important.

*The drug dealers had **lookouts** on every corner to warn them if the police came.*

Infinitive: luck out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
luck out & lucks out	lucking out	lucked out	lucked out

1. **luck out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **luck out**, something good happens to you or you avoid something bad happening to you.

*Todd **lucked out** when he found that lottery ticket on the ground. It was a \$1 million winner.*

*I missed my flight, and the plane crashed. I guess I **lucked out**.*

Infinitive: make out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
make out & makes out	making out	made out	made out

1. **make . . . out** *p.v.* When you can **make** something **out**, you can see it or hear it even though it is difficult to do so.

*The audio system is so bad in the bus station that I can never **make out** what the speakers are saying.*

*I think that might be a mountain goat up there near the top of the mountain. I can just barely **make it out** with these binoculars.*

2. **make . . . out** *p.v.* [*always used with “to be”*] When you **make** people or things **out** to be a certain way or a certain thing, you describe or consider them to be this way or to be this thing.

*Stop complaining—my food isn’t as bad as you **make it out** to be.*

*The critics **made** the film **out** to be a real bore, but I liked it.*

3. **make . . . out** (to) *p.v.* When you write the necessary information on the front of a check, you **make** the check **out**. When you write the name of a person, company, or other organization on the check, you **make** the check **out** to that person, company, or organization.

*How should I **make** this check **out**?*

*There must be a mistake. This check is **made out** to my brother, not to me.*

*Nancy **made** a check **out** to the IRS for \$17,000.*

made out *part.adj.* After the necessary information has been written on the front of a check, the check is **made out**.

*Is the check **made out**, or is it blank?*

4. **make out** (on) *p.v.* When you **make out** or **make out** on something, you do something successfully or survive a situation even though it may be difficult.

*Karen had a job interview yesterday. I wonder how she **made out**.*

*Even though my husband has lost his job, we’ll **make out** somehow.*

*How did you **make out** on the test yesterday?*

Infinitive: run across

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run across & runs across	running across	ran across	run across

1. **run across** *p.v.* When people or things **run across** a place, room, or building, they move from one side to the other very quickly.

*The receiver **ran across** the field and caught the ball.*

*It’s crazy to **run across** the street through the traffic instead of waiting for the light.*

2. **run across** *p.v.* When you **run across** people or things, you see or find them without planning or expecting to. **Come across** is similar to **run across**.

*I don’t go to that supermarket anymore because I may **run across** my ex-husband.*

*Bob **ran across** one of his army buddies at the baseball game.*

PRACTICE

29-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Can you tell me what this says? I can't _____ it _____ without my glasses.
2. The store we're going to is on the right side of the street, so _____ for it.
3. You didn't fix this very well. It's already _____ again.
4. OK, I'll give you the money. Who should I _____ the check _____ to?
5. I'm going to be in Dan's neighborhood tomorrow, so I might _____ on him for a quick visit.
6. Ann's going to _____ when she sees this cigarette burn on her antique table.
7. Sally thinks she _____ OK on her driving test.
8. I wasn't surprised when I _____ Sam at the beach; he goes there a lot.
9. That's enough! If you don't stop bothering me, you're _____ it.
10. A police officer stopped me for going forty miles over the limit, and all he did was give me a warning. I really _____, didn't I?
11. My father's company was losing money for years, and it finally _____ last month.
12. Leticia was right about that restaurant. It was just as good as she _____ it _____ to be.

29-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. You got very upset when I wrecked your car. What did you do?

2. Timmy might tell Santa Claus that he wants a new bicycle. What might Timmy do?
3. I unexpectedly met my college roommate at the airport this morning. What did I do at the airport this morning?
4. Tom wrote all the necessary information on the check. What did Tom do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the check after Tom wrote all the necessary information on it?
6. Betty isn't expecting me, but I might go to her house this evening to visit her. What might I do to Betty?
7. The pieces of this chair are becoming separated. What is the chair doing?
8. You didn't have your homework ready, but the teacher didn't find out because she forgot to ask you for it. What did you do?
9. I can't read what that sign says because it's so far away. What can't I do?
10. Susie's father told her to be careful about cars when she rides her bicycle in the street. What did Susie's father tell her to do?

29-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Use *can*, *may*, or *might* in each sentence.

29-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these nouns from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

crackdown, 23	handover, 19	start-up, 26	warm-up, 19
cutoff, 11	holdout, 23	stickup, 14	
fixer-upper, 15	shutoff, 26	takeout, 11	

1. The company is accepting applications for the position until the _____ date, March 6th.
2. A _____ before exercise is a good idea.
3. We bought a _____, fixed a few things, added a bathroom, and sold it a year later for a nice profit.
4. Mom doesn't feel like cooking tonight, so we're getting _____ food.

5. Except for a few _____ hiding in the hills, all the rebels surrendered after the peace treaty.
6. The angry citizens demanded a _____ on crime in their neighborhood.
7. Most business _____ fail in less than three years.
8. If there's a problem with the machine, the _____ switch is right here.
9. The prime minister demanded the immediate _____ of the hostages.
10. The convenience store _____ was recorded on videotape.

29-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back out, 21	do with, 25	go over, 26	mess up, 28
break up, 28	drown out, 28	go up, 26	settle for, 25
call back, 28	dry off, 27	knock off, 27	stand up, 28
carry out, 28	give away, 28	lighten up, 25	think up, 25

1. The teacher was too strict with her students, and the principal suggested that she _____.
2. Tom was expecting Nancy to come to his house for dinner, but she _____ him _____.
3. Letting Timmy use my computer was a mistake. He _____ it _____, and now it doesn't work.
4. They're asking \$340,000 for their house, but they might _____ \$300,000.
5. I told the school principal that Hank might have something to _____ the fish in the swimming pool.
6. Andrew Carnegie was a very rich man, but he _____ most of his money _____ before he died.
7. My husband was in the next room complaining, so I turned up the TV volume to _____ him _____.
8. Erik called while I was in the shower, so now I need to _____ him _____.

9. After the Soviet Union _____ in 1991, several new nations came into existence.
10. The coach is worried that the rain-soaked football field might not _____ in time for the game.
11. The company is planning to _____ a major reorganization.
12. Don't put the candle there; the cat might _____ it _____ and start a fire.
13. The students didn't understand the lesson, so the teacher _____ it again.
14. Manuela seems nervous about the deal we negotiated. Do you think she might _____?
15. The Wilsons aren't sure where they will spend their vacation. They may _____ to Alaska to visit their son.
16. Ned's a dreamer. He's always trying to _____ a way to make money without working.

Unit 30

Participle Adjectives Formed from Phrasal Verbs, Part 2

As we saw in [Unit 14](#), the past participles of many phrasal verbs can be used as participle adjectives. The adverb *all* is sometimes used to emphasize participle adjectives with the meaning of *very* or *completely*. But the sentence must be logical—*all* is used only to emphasize a participle adjective that describes a condition that can be partial, less than complete, etc. Look at this example with *very* and two ordinary adjectives:

makes sense: *He's very sick.*

does not make sense: *He's very dead.*

The first sentence above makes sense because it is possible to be very sick, but the second does not make sense because it is not possible to be very dead.

makes sense: *The man is all spaced-out.*

does not make sense: *The man is all locked in.*

The first sentence makes sense because it is possible to be slightly **spaced-out**, but it is not possible to be slightly **locked in** (a door is either locked or it isn't).

When *all* is used with the meaning of *very* or *completely* in a sentence with a plural subject, it is identical in appearance to *all*'s more common meaning of *all the people*, *all the things*, etc.

The men are all spaced-out.

This sentence is ambiguous: it could be understood to mean that every man is **spaced-out** or that the men are completely **spaced-out**.

Infinitive: lock in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lock in & locks in	locking in	locked in	locked in

1. **lock . . . in** *p.v.* When you **lock** people **in**, you lock a door or gate so that they cannot leave a room, building, or other place.

*Seven people died because they were **locked in** the burning building.*

*It's dangerous to **lock** children **in** a car.*

locked in *part.adj.* When people cannot leave a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are **locked in**.

*We're **locked in**—we'll have to break a window.*

2. **lock . . . in** *p.v.* When you **lock in** an interest rate, price, time slot, etc., you make it definite so that it will not change in the future.

*I met with the loan officer at the bank and **locked in** a mortgage interest rate.*

*If you want to use the condo at the beach this weekend, you need to pay a deposit to **lock it in**.*

locked in *part.adj.* After you make an interest rate, price, time slot, etc., definite so that it will not change in the future, it is **locked in**.

*The farmer isn't worried about what happens to the price of soybeans because the price of his crop is **locked in**.*

Infinitive: lock out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lock out & locks out	locking out	locked out	locked out

1. **lock . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **lock people out** or **lock people out** of a place, you lock a door or gate so that they cannot enter a room, building, or other place.

*The Youngs got home and found that their son had **locked them out** of their house.*

*I hide an extra key under the bumper of my car so that I won't get **locked out**.*

locked out *part.adj.* When people cannot enter a room, building, or other place because the door or gate is locked, they are **locked out**.

*We're **locked out**. We'll just have to wait outside until someone comes home.*

2. **lock . . . out** *p.v.* When a business **locks out** workers, the workers are prohibited from working by the business management.

*Management **locked** the workers **out** after they refused to sign the new contract.*

*When the owners heard talk of a strike, they **locked** the employees **out**.*

locked out *part.adj.* After a business **locks out** workers in order to prohibit them from working, the workers are **locked out**.

*We're **locked out**. How can we earn a living?*

lockout *n.* When a business **locks out** workers in order to prohibit them from working, it is a **lockout**.

*The **lockout** lasted for three months.*

Infinitive: pass out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pass out & passes out	passing out	passed out	passed out

1. **pass . . . out** *p.v.* When you distribute something to other people, you **pass** it **out**. **Give out** and **hand out** are similar to **pass out**.

*One of the students helped the teacher **pass** the tests **out**.*

*Some people are **passing out** religious brochures on the street corner.*

2. **pass out** *p.v.* When you lose consciousness for a short time, you **pass out**.

*Larry overdid it at the party last night, and he **passed out**.*

*People with low blood sugar can **pass out** sometimes.*

Infinitive: punch in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
punch in & punches in	punching in	punched in	punched in

1. **punch . . . in** *p.v.* When you come to your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have arrived, you **punch in**.

*Don't forget to **punch in** as soon as you get to work.*

*Mark was late, so I **punched him in**.*

punched in *part.adj.* When you are **punched in**, you are at your workplace, on duty, and being paid.

*If you're **punched in**, you shouldn't be sitting down smoking a cigarette.*

Infinitive: punch out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
punch out & punches out	punching out	punched out	punched out

1. **punch . . . out** *p.v.* When you leave your workplace and put your time card in the time clock to record the time you have left, you **punch out**.

*Sally's not at work. She **punched out** at 5:08.*

*Jim usually forgets, so his boss **punches him out**.*

punched out *part.adj.* When you are **punched out**, you are not at your workplace, or if you are there, you are off duty and not being paid.

*The manager asked why I wasn't working, and I told him I was **punched out**.*

Infinitive: put out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put out & puts out	putting out	put out	put out

1. **put . . . out** *p.v.* When you extinguish a fire or something that is burning, you **put it out**.

***Put** that cigarette **out** immediately.*

*It was two hours before the fire was **put out**.*

2. **put . . . out** *p.v.* When you take something from inside a building or storage place and leave it outside for someone to take, use, or deal with, you **put it out**.

*The garbage truck comes early tomorrow morning, so **put** the trash bags **out** tonight.*

*Judy **put** some clothes **out** for her daughter to wear the next day.*

3. **put . . . out** *p.v.* When you **put out** your hand, arm, foot, or leg, you extend it in front of your body.

*Mike **put out** his leg and tripped me.*

*I **put** my hand **out**, but she refused to shake it.*

4. **put . . . out** *p.v.* When you **put yourself out**, you try very hard to help someone.

*Sofia really **put** herself **out** to make her new daughter-in-law feel welcome.*

*Don't **put** yourself **out**. I can make my own dinner.*

5. **put . . . out** *p.v.* When you **put people out**, you inconvenience them.

*Erik really **put** Bill **out** when he asked him for a ride to the airport at 3:00 in the morning.*

*You've done so much to help me. I'm sorry to have **put** you **out**.*

6. **put out** *p.v.* When you are **put out** by people, you are annoyed by something they have said or done.

*I was really **put out** by having to take a taxi to work because Mike hadn't returned my car.*

*Dan was **put out** by Sam's ungrateful attitude.*

put out *part.adj.* When you are annoyed by something that someone has said or done, you are **put out**.

*Maria's **put out** because the manager thanked everyone who worked on the project except her.*

7. **put . . . out** *p.v.* When a book, magazine, newspaper, or musical recording is published or issued, it is **put out**.

*The publisher is planning to **put** a new magazine **out** that will appeal to teenage girls.*

*Frank Sinatra **put out** several classic recordings in the 1950s.*

Infinitive: sort out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sort out & sorts out	sorting out	sorted out	sorted out

1. **sort . . . out** *p.v.* When you **sort** a group of things **out**, you separate them into smaller groups according to one or more characteristics.

*After you take the laundry out of the dryer, you have to **sort** it **out**.*

*The mail arrives at the post office all mixed together, and it has to be **sorted out** before it can be delivered.*

sorted out *part.adj.* After you separate things into smaller groups according to one or more characteristics, they are **sorted out**.

*The mail is **sorted out** and ready to be delivered.*

2. **sort . . . out** *p.v.* When you do something to solve a problem or to correct a misunderstanding, you **sort** it **out**.

*Janice was angry with me about what happened last night, but I called her and we **sorted** everything **out**.*

*Everyone is confused about the new plan. We ought to talk to Mrs. Taylor and **sort** everything **out**.*

sorted out *part.adj.* After you do something to solve a problem or to correct a misunderstanding, it is **sorted out**.

Mike and Tom had a big fight, but everything is **sorted out** now.

Infinitive: space out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
space out & spaces out	spacing out	spaced out	spaced out

1. **space . . . out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **space out** or when something **spaces you out**, something or someone confuses you and causes you to forget what you were saying or doing at that moment.

*This place is really weird—it's **spacing me out**.*

*Sorry, what did you say? I wasn't listening—I **spaced out**.*

spaced-out *part.adj.* When something or someone confuses you and causes you to forget what you were saying or doing at that moment, you are **spaced-out**.

*Half of what Jerry says doesn't make any sense. He's all **spaced-out**.*

PRACTICE

30-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I had to break a window when I _____ myself _____ of my car.
2. Judy was all _____ by her brother's criticism of the way she's raising her children.
3. The guard _____ the prisoner _____ her jail cell.
4. The Bakers organized a nice party for their daughter's birthday. They really _____ themselves _____.
5. My brown socks are mixed with my black socks. I have to _____ them _____.
6. Joe was late to work, so the manager _____ him _____.
7. The forest fire was _____ by the rain.
8. Job applications were _____ to the unemployed people.
9. The factory workers finished their shifts and _____.

10. Thanks for helping me move my piano. I'm sorry to _____ you _____.
11. We got a fixed-rate mortgage so we could _____ a low rate.
12. The workers were _____ by management during a labor dispute.
13. I totally _____ and forgot about the cake in the oven.
14. Sally and her brothers had a big argument, but they got everything _____.
15. As I was falling, I _____ my arm _____ to protect my head.
16. Sarah has low blood pressure, and sometimes when she stands up, she _____.
17. Jim _____ bowls of peanuts _____ for his guests.
18. The band hasn't _____ a CD in three years.

30-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. He *locked in*. (the crazy guy, him)
2. Jim *locked out*. (his wife, her)
3. Did you *punch in*? (Rosa, her)
4. Would you *punch out*? (Linda and Erik, them)
5. They couldn't *put out*. (the fire, it)
6. The bright lights *spaced out*. (Janice, her)

30-3. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with participle adjectives from this unit.

1. Mark isn't working. He's taking a break. He must be _____.
2. You can't leave the building because you're _____.
3. The clothes were all mixed together, but now they're _____.
4. I forgot my key, and I can't get in my office. I'm _____.

5. We had a big misunderstanding, but it's all _____ now.
6. Joe went to the store, but when he got there, he couldn't remember what he wanted. He was _____.
7. Nancy invited her father-in-law for dinner, and after dinner he told Nancy that she was a bad cook. Nancy was really _____.
8. The manager asked, "If you're _____, why aren't you working?"

30-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense.

1. There was a fire in the wastebasket, so I got some water to extinguish it. What did I do?
2. I don't want the children in here while I'm working, so I'm going to push the button on the doorknob to lock the door. What am I going to do to the children?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe the children after I lock the door?
4. David forgot what he was going to say. What did David do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe David when he forgot what he was going to say?
6. John became very sick, and he lost consciousness. What happened to John?
7. The newspaper is published only once a week. What is done to the newspaper only once a week?
8. Lydia put Jim's time card in the time clock when Jim was late for work. What did Lydia do for Jim?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe Jim after Lydia put his time card in the time clock?
10. Your books are all mixed together and you ought to separate them into different groups. What should you do to your books?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe your books after you separate them into different groups?
12. I made the thief stay until the police came by putting him in the closet and using a key to prevent him from leaving the closet. What did I do to the thief?

13. In Question 12, how would you describe the thief after I used the key to prevent him from leaving the closet?
14. It really annoyed Erik when Jane told him that he needed to lose weight. How was Erik affected by Jane's remark?
15. In Question 14, how would you describe Erik after Jane told him he needed to lose weight?
16. The employees can't put their time cards in the time clock and go home before 4:30. What can't the employees do?
17. In Question 16, after the employees put their time cards in the time clock, how would you describe them?
18. Mary didn't try very hard to make her brother and his family comfortable when they stayed with her. What didn't Mary do?

30-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

beefed-up, 28	dried off, 27	made-up, 23	washed off,
broken off, 27	lit up, 13	messed up, 28	wiped off, 2
closed off, 13	made out, 29	shut off, 26	worn off, 27

1. The children baked cookies this morning, and they left the kitchen all _____.
2. The _____ security force can handle any terrorist attack.
3. Charles didn't pay his bill, and now his electricity is _____.
4. I can't read the sign because the paint is all _____.
5. Those apples aren't _____, so don't eat them.
6. You can't drive down that street. It's _____.
7. This check isn't blank. It's _____.
8. The Christmas tree isn't _____ now, but when it is it'll be beautiful.

9. I put the coffee cup with the _____ handle downstairs. I'm going to fix it later.
10. The kitchen counter isn't _____, so don't put those papers on it—they might get grease on them.
11. That was quite a rain we just had. I don't think I'll drive to work until the roads have _____.
12. I didn't believe a word he said. It was just a lot of _____ nonsense.

30-6. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

butt in, 14	go under, 29	make out, 29	trade in, 24
carry out, 28	have on, 25	nod off, 27	wash off, 27
drop in, 29	head into, 17	open up, 26	wipe off, 27
drop out, 23	hurry up, 25	stand up, 28	work out, 11
fill out, 14	knock over, 25	take after, 5	

1. _____ of school was the dumbest thing I ever did.
2. The loan application was rejected because it hadn't been _____ properly.
3. I'm going to ask the car dealer how much I can _____ my car _____ for.
4. My feet are killing me. I've been _____ all day.
5. Did you see what Sally was wearing yesterday? She _____ a green dress and purple shoes _____.
6. Many major companies _____ during the last recession.
7. We'll have to _____ if we're going to get to the theater before the movie starts.
8. David _____ his mother. She was a liar, and so is he.
9. Dad's hardware store went out of business after a huge discount store _____ across the street.

10. You won't be able to _____ that paint _____ with water. You'll have to use turpentine.
11. It was raining, so I had to _____ the water _____ my glasses after I came inside.
12. Sergeant Jones always _____ his orders without fail.
13. If you're ever in my neighborhood, _____. You're always welcome.
14. Things aren't _____ at my new job, and I think I'm going to quit soon.
15. Judy left her home in the suburbs and _____ the city.
16. When I met Jim I was surprised at how nice he was. Everyone always _____ him _____ to be a real jerk.
17. I would have been next, but then someone _____ line.
18. Don't leave that glass there—the baby might _____ it _____.
19. You shouldn't try to drive so far in one day. You might _____ while you're driving.

Unit 31

Phrasal Verbs and Gerund Subjects

As we saw in [Unit 16](#), *gerunds*—verbs in the *-ing* form that function as nouns—can serve as the objects of many phrasal verbs. But gerunds can also serve as the subject of a sentence:

*Eating meat every day was something we **did without**.*

gerund

*Voting was immediately **done away with** by the dictatorship.*

gerund

Infinitive: amount to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
amount to & amounts to	amounting to	amounted to	amounted to

1. **amount to p.v.** When you say that something **amounts to** a certain number, you mean this is the total of other numbers added together.

*All the repairs on our house after the fire **amounted to** nearly \$35,000.*

*Getting my daughter's teeth fixed **amounted to** \$4,000.*

2. **amount to p.v.** When you say that one thing **amounts to** another, you mean that they are equivalent, even if different names are used for each.

*The editor demanded so many changes in the book that it really **amounted to** an entirely new book.*

*The king said that the long list of reforms demanded really **amounted to** a revolution.*

3. **amount to p.v.** When you say that a thing or person **amounts to** something, you are making a judgment regarding that thing or person's quality, success, intensity, or importance.

*The weather guy was predicting a horrible storm with three meters of snow, but it didn't **amount to** anything—only seven or eight centimeters.*
*Jim's son had a good education and every chance at success in life, but he never **amounted to** much.*

Infinitive: cut out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cut out & cuts out	cutting out	cut out	cut out

1. **cut . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **cut** something **out** or **cut** something **out** of a piece of paper, cloth, or other material, you use scissors or a knife to remove part of it.

*The bank robber had a pillowcase over his head with two holes **cut out**.*
*I **cut** an interesting story **out** of the newspaper to show to my father.*

cutout *n.* Something that has been **cut out** of a piece of paper, cloth, or other material is a **cutout**.

*Timmy made some cardboard **cutouts** shaped like animals.*

2. **cut . . . out** *p.v.* When you **cut out** part of a film, television program, book, magazine, etc., you remove that part.

*The movie was too long, so the director **cut** a couple of scenes **out**.*
*Before the book was published, the parts that were critical of the king had to be **cut out** of Chapter 4.*

3. **cut . . . out** *p.v.* When you **cut out** something that you consume, you stop using it. When you **cut out** doing something, you stop doing it. When you say “**Cut it out**” to people, you want them to stop doing or saying something.

*Smoking is the first thing you've got to **cut out** if you want to improve your health.*
*If you want to lose weight, you'll have to **cut** cookies and ice cream **out**.*
*It bothers me when you do that, so **cut it out**!*

4. **cut out** *p.v.* When a motor suddenly stops working, it **cuts out**.

*I was driving when the motor suddenly **cut out**.*
*This plane has only one engine, so if it **cuts out**, we're in big trouble.*

Infinitive: do away with			

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
do away with & does away with	doing away with	did away with	done away with

1. **do away with** *p.v.* When you **do away with** something, you eliminate it or prohibit it.

***Doing away with** smoking is not something that will happen soon.*

*Some people think the electoral college is obsolete and should be **done away with**.*

2. **do away with** *p.v.* When you **do away with** people, you kill them.

*Marty inherited a fortune after he **did away with** his older brother.*

*The woman was accused of **doing away with** her husband with arsenic.*

Infinitive: do without

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
do without & does without	doing without	did without	done without

1. **do without** *p.v.* When you **do without** something, you continue living or working without something that you want or need because it is not possible or available.

*Washing your hair every day is something you have to **do without** when you go camping.*

***Doing without** is something you get used to when you're poor.*

Infinitive: look into

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look into & looks into	looking into	looked into	looked into

1. **look into** *p.v.* When you **look into** something or **look into** doing something, you investigate it or get more information about it.

*After receiving many complaints about the company, the attorney general decided to **look into** the matter.*

*Maybe leasing a car instead of buying one is something I should **look into**.*

Infinitive: put off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put off & puts off	putting off	put off	put off

1. **put . . . off** *p.v.* When you **put off** something or **put off** doing something, you delay or postpone it. When you **put** people **off**, you delay doing something they want you to do.

*Buying a new house will have to be **put off** until we can afford it.*

*The students begged the teacher to **put** the test **off** until the next week.*

*He pressured me for a decision, but I kept **putting** him **off**.*

2. **put . . . off** *p.v.* When people **put** you **off**, they do or say something that offends you.

*Everyone was **put off** by his racist jokes.*

*Todd went out to dinner with Nancy last night, and the way she treated the waiter really **put** him **off**.*

put off *part.adj.* After people do or say something that offends you, you are **put off**.

*What's wrong? You seem a little **put off**.*

Infinitive: rule out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
rule out & rules out	ruling out	ruled out	ruled out

1. **rule . . . out** *p.v.* When you **rule out** people or things, you eliminate them from a list. When you **rule out** doing something, you decide that it is something you will not do because you do not want to, because it is impossible, etc.

*The detective interviewed all the suspects and **ruled** everyone **out** except the victim's ex-wife.*

*After a hurricane destroyed half of Florida, my parents **ruled out** moving there.*

*With all these medical bills to pay, maybe we should consider **ruling out** buying a new car.*

Infinitive: string along

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
string along & strings	stringing along	strung along	strung along

along

1. **string . . . along** *p.v. [always separated unless passive]* When you **string** people **along**, you delay making a decision that they want from you, perhaps because you don't want to disappoint them with your decision or perhaps because you are unable to make a decision.

*I've been asking Carmen to marry me for five years. She keeps telling me that she'll decide soon, but she never does. She's just **stringing** me **along**.*

*The human resources manager said, "Don't **string** me **along**—do you want the job or not?"*

PRACTICE

31-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I suggested moving to Minnesota, but my wife _____ moving anywhere cold.
2. My doctor says I should _____ scuba diving until my ear gets better.
3. The health department wants to _____ smoking within 20 years.
4. I saw a funny cartoon in the paper, so I _____ it _____ and sent it to my brother.
5. Some countries have an excellent health care system. No one has to _____ medical treatment.
6. I was a little _____ by his unfriendliness.
7. I've been negotiating with a guy about buying my business, but he will never tell me his decision. He's just _____ me _____.
8. I'm going to _____ this situation to see what the problem is.
9. After the revolution, all members of the royal family were _____.
10. Several scenes of the film had to be _____ before the censors would approve it.

11. I thought our vacation was going to cost a fortune, but it _____
_____ only around \$2,500.
12. I had to take a taxi to work yesterday. My car's motor _____
right in the middle of an intersection.
13. David was expecting his new book to be a huge success, but it didn't _____
_____ much—only 900 copies were sold last year.
14. Getting your car's brakes fixed is not something you should _____
_____.
15. Nancy's attitude toward her boss is so negative that it really _____
_____ insubordination.

31-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. You changed your vacation plans. You're not going next week; you're going to go later. What did you do to your vacation?
2. Everyone likes Jim more now that he has stopped acting like such a big shot. What did Jim do?
3. The President said that nothing has been eliminated from the list of things that might be done about the crisis. What did the President say about what might be done about the crisis?
4. Maria demanded the truth from Jim, but he just kept telling her "soon" or "tomorrow." What did Maria do to Jim?
5. A law was passed that prohibits child labor. What did the law do to child labor?
6. There aren't any stores out here in the woods, so if you forget something, you'll just have to continue without it. What will you have to do if you forget something?
7. I'm so tired of this car's ugly color. I'm going to get information about having it painted. What am I going to do?
8. The captain said that the sailors' refusal to obey orders was the same as mutiny. What did the captain say about the sailors' refusal to obey orders?
9. Betty was a little offended by Sam's behavior. How did Betty react to Sam's behavior?
10. In Question 9, how did Sam's behavior make Betty feel?

11. The police suspected that Mr. Gara had been killed by a coworker. What did the police suspect about Mr. Gara?
12. Dr. Smith removed the entire tumor with a knife. What did he do?
13. My father kept his car in good condition, and it lasted for forty years. What did my father do to his car?

31-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Try to use gerunds as the subjects of some of the sentences.

31-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

beef up, 28	drop in, 29	get off, 18	luck out, 29
come apart, 29	flip out, 29	go about, 17	make out, 29
crack down, 23	get away, 23	go under, 29	make up, 23
cut down, 23	get back at, 17	look out, 29	run across, 2

1. I'm thinking about investing in the stock market, but I'm not sure how to _____ it.
2. The sound on the language lab tapes is so bad that I can't _____ what they're saying.
3. The world is _____ of many different countries.
4. We'll need to buy a new suitcase soon. This old one is _____.
5. That was a terrible thing he did to me—I'll _____ him someday.
6. Hank fell from a fifth-floor window, but he landed in a swimming pool and wasn't hurt at all. He sure _____, didn't he?
7. The hockey coach said that the team's offense is good, but the defense needs to be _____.
8. My dentist said I should _____ on sweets.
9. Frank really _____ when he found that big snake under his bed.
10. Look at this interesting old book I _____ at a used bookstore.

11. The professor is going to _____ on plagiarism.
12. Business is so slow that my store is in danger of _____.
13. The accountant tried to embezzle \$100,000, but he didn't _____ with it.
14. Isn't that where Jane lives? Let's _____ and say hello.
15. Jake was arrested and charged with bank robbery, but he _____ because none of the witnesses could identify him.
16. There are a lot of big trucks on this road. You've really got to _____ for them when you're driving.

Unit 32

Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Out*

The particle *out* is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. Among the most frequent meanings of *out* are to say that something or someone literally moves from the inside to the outside of a place:

*He **fell out** of a tree.*

*Melanie **came out** of the house.*

*We always **go out** through the back door.*

*Would you **take** the garbage **out**, please?*

that something is done completely or thoroughly:

*I **cleaned out** the closet.*

*The people quickly **cleared out**.*

*She **emptied** her purse **out** on the table.*

*Please **fill** this form **out**.*

that an action or activity has ended:

*The fire **went out**.*

*The light bulb **burned out**.*

*Hank **dropped out** of school.*

*Jane **chickened out** of asking her boss for a raise.*

that something or someone is chosen, organized, shared, or distributed:

*The manager **handed out** our paychecks.*

*Tom **picked** a new shirt **out**.*

*The mailroom clerk **sorted out** the mail.*

that something is produced by or released from a source:

*His last book **came out** two years ago.*

*Don't **let** the dog **out**.*

*That group hasn't **put out** a new CD in a long time.*

that something is removed, eliminated, or excluded:

*A page was accidentally **left out** of the book when it was printed.*

*She **cut** a cartoon **out** of the paper.*

*The negative test result **ruled out** cancer.*

*His editor **took** several paragraphs **out** of the article.*

that something is perceived, sensed, found, or acquired:

*I **figured out** the answer.*

*Did you **find out** when the movie starts?*

*That sign is too far away to **make out**.*

*Mike **screwed** me **out** of a hundred dollars.*

that something increases in size, capacity, length, or area:

*Paul started to **fill out** after he got married.*

*After I gained twenty-five pounds, I had to **let** my pants **out**.*

*It's dangerous to **stick** your head **out** a car window.*

that something important or dangerous should be watched for:

*Mike is supposed to meet us here, so **watch out** for him.*

***Look out**, this is a very busy intersection.*

or that something is done for a length of time:

*The criminals **held out** for three hours before surrendering.*

*College is hard work, but you've got to **stick it out**.*

Infinitive: clean out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
clean out & cleans out	cleaning out	cleaned out	cleaned out

1. **clean . . . out** *p.v.* When you **clean** something **out**, you clean the inside completely so that no dirt, dust, trash, etc., remains inside.

*Mark was fired and told to **clean** his desk **out** and leave.*

*We **clean out** our garage every spring.*

cleaned out *part.adj.* After you clean the inside of something completely so that no dirt, dust, trash, etc., remains inside, it is **cleaned out**.

*Now that the garage is **cleaned out**, there's room for my car.*

2. **clean . . . out** (of) *p.v. [informal]* When people **clean** you **out** or **clean** you **out** of your money, they deceive you or pressure you into giving them all your money or spending all your money for their benefit. When an expense **cleans** you **out**, it requires you to spend all your money.

*A con artist **cleaned** my grandmother **out** of \$50,000.*

*Having three kids in college at the same time really **cleaned** me **out**.*

3. **clean . . . out** (of) *p.v. [informal]* If thieves **clean** a place **out** or **clean** a place **out** of something, they take everything that is valuable.

*I got home and found that my place had been **cleaned out**.*

*The thieves **cleaned** the jewelry store **out** of all its diamonds and emeralds.*

Infinitive: clear out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
clear out & clears out	clearing out	cleared out	cleared out

1. **clear . . . out** *p.v.* When people **clear out** or **clear out** of a place or they are **cleared out** of a place, they leave it.

*After the police threw tear gas, the crowd **cleared** right **out**.*

***Clear out!** This is private property.*

2. **clear . . . out** *p.v.* When you **clear out** a place, you remove things that are unwanted or in the way in order to make more room or to make the place cleaner.

*Look how much more room we have in the attic now that we've **cleared** all that junk **out**.*

*The car dealer had a sale so that he could **clear out** some space for the new cars.*

Infinitive: come out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come out & comes out	coming out	came out	come out

1. **come out** (of) *p.v.* When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are not in, they **come out** of it.

*Susie's friend came to the door and asked her to **come out** and play.*

*The police held their fire when they saw the gunman **coming out** of the house with his hands in the air.*

2. **come out** (of) *p.v.* When something **comes out** of a certain place or area, it starts there.

*This speaker must not be connected. No sound is **coming out**.*

*The most wonderful aroma **came out** of the kitchen.*

3. **come out** (to) *p.v.* When people leave a city and travel to a place outside the city where you are, they **come out** to that place.

*Would you like to **come out** and visit our farm?*

*Ned loves it in the city. He hasn't **come out** to the suburbs in a long time.*

4. **come out** (of) *p.v.* When things or people go through an experience or treatment, the condition they are left in by that experience or treatment or the result of that experience or treatment is how they **come out**.

*It was a tough game, but our team **came out** on top.*

*How did the investigation **come out**?*

*I **came out** of that awful experience a wiser person.*

5. **come out** (with) *p.v.* When a book, magazine, musical recording, movie, or television show is finished and made available to the public, it **comes out**. When a book, magazine, musical recording, movie, or television show is finished and made available to the public, the company publishing it or the person who created it **comes out** with it.

*The band's new CD **came out** last month, and it's already number one on the charts.*

*Barron's is **coming out** with a new book on the TOEFL test soon.*

6. **come out** *p.v.* When information becomes known to the public, it **comes out**.

*Everyone was shocked when it **came out** that the accountant had stolen money from the company.*

*What really happened when President Kennedy was assassinated may never **come out**.*

7. **come out** (of) *p.v.* When dirt or a stain is removed by cleaning, it **comes out** or **comes out** of what it is in.

*Don't get grape juice on that white blouse—it'll never **come out**.*

*That paint might **come out** of the carpet if you try turpentine.*

8. **come out** *p.v.* When flowers or leaves start to grow, they **come out**.

*We had a very warm winter, and the flowers started **coming out** in February.*

Oak tree leaves always **come out** later than the leaves of other trees.

9. **come out** *p.v.* When clouds move and the sun becomes visible, it **comes out**.

*The rain stopped, the sun **came out**, and there was a beautiful rainbow.*

*Wait till the sun **comes out**. You'll get a better picture.*

10. **come out** (for/in favor of/against) *p.v.* When people with authority and influence **come out** for or **come out** in favor of people or things, they publicly announce support for them. When people with authority and influence **come out** against people or things, they publicly announce opposition to them.

*We were surprised when the mayor **came out** for legalizing gambling.*

*The senator from North Carolina **came out** against the tobacco legislation.*

Infinitive: fall out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall out & falls out	falling out	fell out	fallen out

1. **fall out** (of) *p.v.* When you fall from or through something that is above ground level to the ground below, you **fall out** or **fall out** of it.

*Did he **fall out** or was he pushed?*

*I found a baby bird that had **fallen out** of its nest.*

2. **fall out** (with/over) *p.v.* When you **fall out** with people, you become upset or angry with them. When two people **fall out** over something, they become upset or angry with each other because of a disagreement about that thing.

*Michael **fell out** with his sister when he criticized her husband.*

*Melanie and Sarah started a company, but they **fell out** over who would be president and who would be vice-president.*

3. **falling-out** *n.* When people have a **falling-out**, they become upset or angry with each other and no longer have friendly relations.

*The manager of the baseball team quit after he had a **falling-out** with the team's owner.*

Infinitive: go out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

go out & goes out	going out	went out	gone out
-------------------	-----------	----------	----------

1. **go out** (of) *p.v.* When people or things leave a place, room, or house that you are in, they **go out** or **go out** of it. **Come in** is the opposite of **go out**.

*I'm trying to study, so why don't you kids **go out** and play in the backyard.*

*Nancy was so sick that she didn't **go out** of the house for a week.*

2. **go out** (to) *p.v.* When people leave a city where you are and travel to a place outside the city, they **go out** to that place.

*Last weekend we **went out** to Jim's cabin on the lake.*

*This Thanksgiving I'm going to **go out** to my brother's house.*

3. **go out** *p.v.* When something that is burning **goes out**, it stops burning because it has no more fuel or because something, such as water or lack of oxygen, has caused it to stop burning.

*The campfire **went out** during the night.*

*The forest fire didn't **go out** until it started to rain.*

4. **go out** *p.v.* When an electrical light **goes out**, it stops producing light because it is no longer receiving power.

*The lights in the barracks **go out** every night at 10:00.*

*When the old tree fell on the power lines, every light in town **went out**.*

5. **go out** (with) *p.v.* When two people with a romantic interest in each other **go out**, they go together to a place of entertainment in order to have fun and spend time together.

*Mike's nervous—he's **going out** with Heather tonight.*

*Sally and Jim **went out** for three years before they got married.*

Infinitive: leave out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
leave out & leaves out	leaving out	left out	left out

1. **leave . . . out** *p.v.* When you **leave** people or things **out**, you accidentally or deliberately do not include them in a group.

*The director **left out** several parts of the book when she made the film.*

*Tell me the entire story from beginning to end. Don't **leave** anything **out**.*

left out *part.adj.* When you feel **left out**, you feel ignored and unappreciated by others in a group.

*No one talked to Jerry at the party. He just sat in the corner feeling **left out**.*

Infinitive: miss out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
miss out & misses out	missing out	missed out	missed out

1. **miss out** (on) *p.v.* When you fail to take advantage of an opportunity to do something beneficial or enjoyable, you **miss out** or **miss out** on the opportunity.

*Today's the last day of the big sale, so don't **miss out**.*

*I **missed out** on a chance to go on a cruise with my parents because I had final exams at college.*

Infinitive: stick out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stick out & sticks out	sticking out	stuck out	stuck out

1. **stick out** *p.v.* When something **sticks out**, it extends from what it is attached to.

*Be careful walking in the woods, there are a lot of branches **sticking out**.*

*I cut myself on a nail that was **sticking out** of the wall.*

2. **stick . . . out** *p.v.* When you **stick** something **out**, you extend it outward.

*Timmy **stuck** his tongue **out** when his mother gave him spinach.*

*We all **stuck** our heads **out** the window to get a better look.*

3. **stick . . . out** *p.v.* When you **stick out** an unpleasant or difficult experience, you continue with it until it is over, rather than quit.

*I hate this job, but I need the money, so I'll just have to **stick it out** until I find a better one.*

*College isn't easy, but if you **stick it out**, you'll be glad you did.*

4. **stick out** *p.v.* When a characteristic or feature of something **sticks out**, that feature is very noticeable.

*Alan's nearly seven feet tall and has red hair, so he really **sticks out** in a crowd.
One thing that really **stuck out** about him was the strange way he laughed.*

PRACTICE

32-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Susie _____ of her tree house and broke her arm.
2. The sun finally _____ in the afternoon.
3. I heard some strange voices _____ of the next room.
4. A sharp piece of wood was _____, and I got a splinter from it.
5. When the truth finally _____, you'll all be very surprised.
6. It was a good thing we had those candles when the lights _____.
7. This temporary job will last only two weeks, so even though I'm bored, I guess I can _____ it _____.
8. That crook _____ me _____ of everything I owned.
9. David's story didn't make any sense because he _____ the part about the missionaries and the cannibals.
10. Mike, it's starting to rain. _____ and close the car windows, please.
11. There are only two more days to register for classes. Hurry so you don't _____.
12. It's a sure sign of spring when the tulips start to _____.
13. This wood is wet. Even if you can get a fire started, it'll _____ right away.
14. The Bakers said they would love to _____ to visit us here at our ranch some weekend.
15. The soldiers were ordered to _____ the protesters _____ of the plaza.

16. Mike and Bob _____ over who would pay for the window they broke playing baseball.
17. The reporter said that he expected the governor to _____ against the proposed legislation.
18. Jim's going to be storing some of his stuff in the attic, so let's go up and _____ some space for it.
19. Scott _____ of the trial with his reputation badly damaged.
20. Betty has been _____ with Erik since high school.
21. It's not very smart to _____ your arm _____ the window of a moving car.
22. I like it here in the city. When I _____ to David's house in the country I get bored.
23. The talk show host asked the author about his new book, which is _____ soon.
24. The burglars _____ the coin shop _____ of its most valuable coins.
25. It's been an hour. Are you ever going to _____ of the bathroom?
26. Don't even bother washing this blouse—the ink will never _____.
27. Mike wants to sell his car, so he's going to _____ it _____ and wash it before anyone looks at it.
28. I don't remember much about Ned, but one thing _____—he always wore black.

32-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. The crooked lawyer *cleaned them out* _____ a small fortune.
2. Jake *came out* _____ the bank and surrendered.
3. Would you like to *come out* _____ my place in the country?
4. Several publishers are *coming out* _____ books on the subject.

5. The prime minister liked the idea, so we weren't surprised when he *came out* _____ the plan.
6. As expected, the leader of the opposition *came out* _____ the plan.
7. Mike *fell out* _____ his brother _____ who would pay their father's medical bills.
8. Timmy's father told him not to *go out* _____ the house.
9. We're *going out* _____ the suburbs next weekend.
10. Heather's *going out* _____ Tom tonight.
11. Hank *fell out* _____ a hot air balloon.

32-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. My son *cleaned out*. (the basement, it)
2. I need to *clear out*. (the storeroom, it)
3. The factory *left out*. (an important part, it)
4. Don't stick out. (your neck, it)

32-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Some important information is being revealed to the public. What is happening to the information?
2. All the people in the plaza left. What did the people do?
3. All the people in the plaza left. What happened to the plaza?
4. I'm going to take my girlfriend to a nightclub. What am I going to do with her?
5. The soldier was killed in the battle. What didn't the soldier do?
6. We didn't ask Mark to join our club. What did we do to Mark?
7. In Question 6, how does Mark feel because we didn't ask him to join our club?
8. After your bankruptcy you had no money. What did your bankruptcy do to you?

9. The music company released a new CD last week. What did the music company do?
10. Everyone notices Harry because he has very long hair and a long beard. What does Harry do?
11. The *Chicago Tribune* newspaper announced in an editorial that they were for the Republican candidate. What did the *Chicago Tribune* do?
12. Bill's angry with Jim, and they're not speaking to each other. What did Bill do with Jim?
13. In Question 12, what did Bill and Jim have?
14. Larry is paralyzed, and he can't do many things that his friends do. What does Larry do?

32-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

cut out, 31	lock in, 30	punch out, 30	sort out, 30
do away with, 31	look into, 31	put off, 31	space out, 30
do without, 31	pass out, 30	put out, 30	string along,
hold out, 23	punch in, 30	rule out, 31	watch out, 2

1. Susie, I told you to stop teasing your sister, so _____ it _____!
2. After I lost my job, I learned to _____ a lot of things that I used to think were necessities.
3. Watson made a real mess out of the project, so the boss asked me to _____ it _____.
4. I totally _____ and drove twenty miles past where I was going.
5. Hey, that's really dangerous, you'd better _____.
6. I'm going to get to work late tomorrow. Can you _____ me _____?
7. I'm really sick of this city. I'm going to fly to San Francisco and _____ the job situation there.
8. Most of the players have signed their contracts, but a few are _____.
9. Water won't _____ an electrical fire.

10. The manager reminded me to _____ before going home.
11. Scientists are trying to _____ cancer.
12. The chances that his horse will win the race are very small, but I wouldn't _____ it _____ completely.
13. Karen _____ answer sheets _____ to all the students taking the test.
14. I want to _____ a low interest rate before rates go up again.
15. Sarah, he's never going to marry you. He's been _____ you _____ for the last three years.
16. Millions of people _____ doing their taxes until the last minute.

Unit 33

Phrasal Verbs and Midsentence Adverbs

As we saw in [Unit 17](#), adverbs are words that modify verbs. Some adverbs are called *midsentence* adverbs because they are commonly placed in the middle of a sentence. Midsentence adverbs are usually placed before main verbs:

*He X **goofs** around.*

*She X **helped** him out.*

after any form of *be*:

*He is X **goofing** around.*

*She was X **helping** him out.*

and between an auxiliary (helping) verb and the main verb:

*He will X **goof** around.*

*She can X **help** him out.*

In questions, a midsentence adverb is usually placed between the subject and the main verb:

*Does he X **goof** around?*

*Is he X **goofing** around?*

*Has she X **helped** him out?*

The following are common midsentence adverbs.

Adverbs of frequency

<i>ever</i>	<i>typically</i>	<i>normally</i>	<i>hardly ever</i>
<i>always</i>	<i>ordinarily</i>	<i>occasionally</i>	<i>almost never</i>
<i>constantly</i>	<i>often</i>	<i>sometimes</i>	<i>never</i>
<i>almost always</i>	<i>frequently</i>	<i>seldom</i>	<i>not ever</i>
<i>usually</i>	<i>generally</i>	<i>rarely</i>	

Other midsentence adverbs

<i>already</i>	<i>merely</i>	<i>ultimately</i>	<i>probably</i>
----------------	---------------	-------------------	-----------------

just

finally

eventually

most likely

Infinitive: blow up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
blow up & blows up	blowing up	blew up	blown up

1. **blow . . . up** *p.v.* When something **blows up** or when someone **blows** something **up**, it explodes.

*Seven people were killed when the building **blew up**.*

*The hijackers ultimately **blew** the plane **up**.*

2. **blow . . . up** *p.v.* When something **blows up** or when someone **blows** something **up**, it becomes much larger because air or something else is being forced into it.

*It always takes me an hour or more to **blow up** the balloons for a party.*

*Hank **blew up** a beach ball and threw it in the pool.*

3. **blow . . . up** *p.v.* When you make a picture or photograph larger, you **blow** it **up**.

*I **blew** the photograph **up** and framed it.*

*When you **blow** this photo of the car **up**, you can make out the license plate number.*

blowup *n.* A **blowup** is a picture or photograph that has been made larger.

*I made a **blowup** of the photo and framed it.*

4. **blow up** (at/over) *p.v. [informal]* When you **blow up** or **blow up** at someone, you suddenly become very angry. When you **blow up** over something, you suddenly become very angry because of it.

*Heather **blew up** when she saw her boyfriend dancing with Linda.*

*Heather **blew up** at her boyfriend when she saw him dancing with Linda.*

*Dad **blew up** over the property tax increase.*

Infinitive: blurt out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
blurt out & blurts out	blurting out	blurted out	blurted out

1. **blurt . . . out** *p.v.* When you **blurt** something **out**, you say something that other people may find embarrassing, shocking, or offensive because you don't realize or care that other people may be shocked, embarrassed, or offended by it.

*I invited my friend Mark to dinner with my parents, and he **blurted out** that he thought my mother's cooking wasn't very good.*

*Sarah didn't want anyone to know that she has cancer, but Maria **blurted it out** in the office, and now everyone knows.*

Infinitive: catch on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
catch on & catches on	catching on	caught on	caught on

1. **catch on** *p.v.* When a fashion or habit becomes popular and is adopted by many people, it **catches on**. When a product or service becomes popular and is used or bought by many people, it **catches on**.

*Cell phones really **caught on**, and now everyone has one.*

*If his striped business suits **catch on**, the designer will become famous.*

2. **catch on** *p.v.* When you eventually begin to understand something or begin to learn a skill after practicing and studying, you **catch on**.

*When Sally studies something, she usually **catches on** right away.*

*Learning to dance the cumbia wasn't easy, but I eventually **caught on**.*

3. **catch on (to)** *p.v.* When you **catch on** or **catch on to** people, you realize that they are trying to trick or cheat you.

*If you keep lying to everyone, they'll eventually **catch on**.*

*It took me a while, but I finally **caught on** to him.*

Infinitive: come about			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come about & comes about	coming about	came about	come about

1. **come about** *p.v.* When something **comes about**, it happens, usually as a result of a series of events and actions.

*He was the richest man in town, and now he's bankrupt. How did that **come about**?*

*Several major medical advances have **come about** in the last fifty years.*

Infinitive: fall behind

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fall behind & falls behind	falling behind	fell behind	fallen behind

1. **fall behind** *p.v.* When you are in a group that is walking, running, driving, etc., and they move ahead of you because you are moving more slowly than the others, you **fall behind**. **Keep up** is the opposite of **fall behind**.

*Keith and Tom are walking so fast that I've **fallen behind**.*

*I was supposed to be following Linda to the party, but I **fell behind** and got lost.*

2. **fall behind** (in) *p.v.* When you are in a group that is studying, working, etc., and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you **fall behind** or **fall behind** in your work, studies, etc. When you do not complete work as fast as it was originally planned and expected, you **fall behind** schedule. **Get behind** is similar to **fall behind**. **Keep up** is the opposite of **fall behind**.

*Timmy was sick last semester, and he **fell behind** in his studies.*

*The sales manager wanted to know why I had **fallen behind** the rest of the department.*

*The building project will **fall behind** schedule if the construction workers go on strike.*

3. **fall behind** (in) *p.v.* When you do not make the regular payments you are required to make, you **fall behind** or **fall behind** in your payments.

*When I lost my job, I **fell behind** in my mortgage payments.*

*If you **fall behind** in your payments, your car might be repossessed.*

Infinitive: goof around

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
goof around & goofs around	goofing around	goofed around	goofed around

1. **goof around** *p.v. [informal]* When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you **goof around**. **Fool around** and **mess around** are the same as **goof around**.

*My brother drives his teachers crazy. He constantly **goofs around** and creates problems.*

*Stop **goofing around** and get to work.*

Infinitive: max out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
max out & maxes out	maxing out	maxed out	maxed out

1. **max . . . out** *p.v.* When you reach 100 percent of a credit card limit or the limit of any similar privilege to which you are entitled, you **max it out**.

*Can I borrow 100 dollars? I've **maxed out** my credit card.*

*My MasterCard was rejected at the restaurant. I guess I **maxed it out**.*

2. **max out** *p.v.* When something, such as a benefit, capacity, or output, reaches its limit, it **maxes out**.

*Salaries at this company range from \$50,000 at the low end and **max out** at \$110,000.*

*The jet flew faster and faster until it **maxed out** at 700 k.p.h.*

Infinitive: pull off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pull off & pulls off	pulling off	pulled off	pulled off

1. **pull . . . off** *p.v.* When you **pull** something **off**, you succeed in doing something difficult and possibly sneaky or illegal even though the chances of success are not high.

*Mike tried to juggle three butcher knives and two bowling balls at the same time, but he couldn't **pull it off**.*

*When Jake said he was going to try to rob a Las Vegas casino, no one believed he could **pull it off**.*

2. **pull off** *p.v.* When you are driving and you **pull off** the road, you drive to the side of the road and stop.

*If I get sleepy while I'm driving, I always **pull off** the road and take a nap.*

*When I heard that strange noise, I **pulled off** to the side and checked the engine.*

PRACTICE

33-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I can't take next week off from work. I've already _____ all my vacation days _____.
2. Television was invented in the 1920s, but it didn't start to _____ until the 1950s.
3. Math is very difficult for Mike. If he takes the advanced class, he'll most likely _____.
4. I didn't think Todd could manage going to school and working at the same time, but he _____ it _____.
5. When Jim shows his terrible report card to his mother, she'll _____.
6. Nancy's a hard worker. She never _____.
7. The terrorists tried to _____ the embassy.
8. A lot of changes have _____ in the last few years.
9. The truck driver was lost, so he _____ to the side of the road and checked his map.
10. Sam and Dave are so much faster on their bikes than I am that I always _____.
11. Be careful what you tell Marty. He'll just _____ it _____ to everyone.
12. I used to be able to trick my rich uncle into giving me money, but he's starting to _____ to me.
13. _____ the balloons now. The party's going to start soon.
14. Bob started taking dance lessons, and he _____ right away.
15. If you _____ in your credit card payments, you'll damage your credit rating.

16. When Rosa had surgery, she _____ her insurance and ended up with a huge medical bill.
17. I asked the photo lab to _____ the photo _____ 300 percent.

33-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. Todd was fired after he *blew up* _____ his boss.
2. Todd is usually so easygoing. What did he *blow up* _____?
3. Karen thinks she's so clever, but I'm starting to *catch on* _____ her.
4. If you don't start working harder, you're going to *fall behind* _____ math.

33-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The company started to sell chocolate toothpaste, but it didn't become popular. What didn't chocolate toothpaste do?
2. Sam has a lot of work to do before 5:00, so Lydia is doing some of it for him so that he won't have to work late. What is Lydia doing for Sam?
3. Nobody in the criminal gang thought they could steal an airplane, but they did. What did the gang do?
4. Ali doesn't usually do any work. He usually watches TV and listens to music. What does Ali usually do?
5. They sometimes destroy old buildings by making them explode. What do they sometimes do to old buildings?
6. The teacher frequently gets very angry at his students. What does the teacher frequently do?
7. I told my sister not to tell my husband the news that I was pregnant, but as soon as she saw him, she told him. What did my sister do to the news that I was pregnant?
8. The company was supposed to finish the project by September 1, but they didn't finish until November 14. What happened?
9. The professor asked you to explain how this situation happened. What did she ask you?

33-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

amount to, 31	fall out, 32	look into, 31	rule out, 31
come out, 32	give away, 28	miss out, 32	sort out, 30
cut out, 31	go around, 20	put off, 31	space out, 30
do without, 31	go out, 32	put out, 30	stick out, 32

- Jake was in jail when the crime was committed, so the police were able to _____ him _____ as a suspect.
- My fiancée's father got sick suddenly, so we had to _____ the wedding until later.
- I was a little _____ when Melanie disagreed with me.
- Linda's going to _____ getting her teeth bleached.
- No one was surprised when the news _____.
- The family business had to be sold after the family members _____ with each other.
- I _____ and forgot to put socks on this morning.
- I felt like an idiot—I had to _____ all day without socks on.
- You can still eat this apple—just _____ the bad part.
- I thought getting my car fixed was going to cost a lot of money, but it didn't _____ much—only around \$150.
- I was angry with my sister, but we talked and _____ everything _____.
- Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cake, but the chocolate frosting on his face _____ him _____.
- If you're studying a language, you can't _____ a dictionary.
- Jim's job is very dangerous, but if he _____ it _____ for another year, he can retire with a pension.
- This is the opportunity of a lifetime, so don't _____.

16. Put some more wood on the fire—it's starting to _____.

Unit 34

Stress in Two- and Three-Word Phrasal Verbs, Part 2

As we saw in [Units 5](#) and [6](#), sometimes the verb in phrasal verbs is stressed and sometimes the particle is stressed. It might seem difficult to know whether to stress the verb or the particle, since it depends on whether the phrasal verb is separable or inseparable, and transitive or intransitive; however, it boils down to this: always stress the word after the verb unless the phrasal verb is inseparable and transitive—then stress the verb.

Stress on the particle

Separable (and always transitive) phrasal verbs

In separable phrasal verbs (which are always transitive), the particle is stressed regardless of the position of the object:

*If you don't **take BACK** what you said, I'll never speak to you again.*

*If you don't **take** what you said **BACK**, I'll never speak to you again.*

*If you don't **take** that **BACK**, I'll never speak to you again.*

*I made a mistake, and I had to **do** my report **Over**.*

*I made a mistake, and I had to **do** it **Over**.* (Some phrasal verbs are always separated. Also, remember that only one syllable is stressed when a particle has more than one syllable.)

*The terrorist **blew UP** the building.*

*The terrorist **blew** the building **UP**.*

*The terrorist **blew** it **UP**.*

Intransitive phrasal verbs

In intransitive phrasal verbs, the particle is also stressed:

*That old house is **falling aPART**.*

*The police are **cracking DOWN** on crime.* (Some intransitive phrasal verbs can be made transitive with the addition of a preposition.)

*The building **blew UP**.* (Remember that some phrasal verbs are both transitive and intransitive.)

Three-word phrasal verbs

Whether inseparable or separable, the stress is always on the particle:

Larry **put** his brother **UP** to it.
 Julian **came UP with** a great idea.
 What does it **boil DOWN** to?

Stress on the verb

Inseparable transitive phrasal verbs

In inseparable transitive phrasal verbs, the verb is stressed:

*Does FBI **STAND** for Federal Bureau of Investigation?*
*My sister **TOLD** on me, and now I'm in trouble.*
*These pictures **STICK** to the wall because the backs are sticky.*

Of course you want to learn how native speakers use stress, but again, remember that meaning is the most important thing.

Infinitive: do over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
do over & does over	doing over	did over	done over

1. **do . . . over** *p.v. [always separated unless passive]* When you **do** something **over**, you do it again in order to improve it or to correct mistakes.

*This is all wrong—it'll have to be **done over**.*
*I got a bad grade on my paper, but the teacher said I could **do it over**.*

Infinitive: float around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
float around & floats around	floating around	floated around	floated around

1. **float around** *p.v. [usually continuous]* When something is **floating around** a place, it is there somewhere, though you are not sure exactly where.

*I don't know where the stapler is, but it's **floating around** here somewhere.*
*The new schedule was **floating around** the office yesterday.*

2. **float around** *p.v.* When a rumor or some information is **floating around**, it is being repeated and discussed among a group of people or within a place.

*There's a rumor **floating around** that the factory's going to be closed.*

*Something about a change of management has been **floating around** lately. Have you heard anything?*

Infinitive: lead up to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lead up to & leads up to	leading up to	led up to	led up to

1. **lead up to** *p.v.* When one or more actions, events, or situations **lead up to** a final action, event, or situation, they precede and cause or partially cause it.

*Several minor battles **led up to** a full-scale war.*

*The detective said, "Jake didn't shoot Hank for no reason—something **led up to** it."*

2. **lead up to** *p.v.* When you **lead up to** something when you are speaking or writing, you gradually move toward an important point by saying or writing information that will support that point.

*In his speech, the President didn't immediately announce that he would run for a second term. He **led up to** it by recalling the accomplishments of his first term.*

*I've been listening to you talk for thirty minutes. What's your point? What are you **leading up to**?*

Infinitive: put up to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put up to & puts up to	putting up to	put up to	put up to

1. **put . . . up to** *p.v.* When you persuade or pressure people to do something that is illegal, dangerous, foolish, or unwise, you **put them up to** it.

*I didn't think it was a good idea to demand a raise, but my wife **put me up to** it.*

*When Jake was arrested for shooting Hank, he said Raquel had **put him up to** it by threatening to tell the police about his other crimes.*

Infinitive: stand for

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stand for & stands for	standing for	stood for	stood for

1. **stand for** *p.v.* When abbreviations, acronyms, or symbols represent longer words or groups of words, they **stand for** them.

*The “DC” in Washington, DC, **stands for** “District of Columbia.”*

*“Scuba” **stands for** “self-contained underwater breathing apparatus.”*

2. **stand for** *p.v.* When people or objects support, represent, or are identified with ideas, values, or beliefs, they **stand for** them.

*This flag **stands for** freedom.*

*He was a great man who **stood for** equal rights and opportunity for all people.*

3. **stand for** *p.v.* When you will not **stand for** something that you think is illegal, improper, or unjust, you will not tolerate it or allow it to happen.

*Cruelty to animals is one thing I will never **stand for**.*

*I told my son I wouldn’t **stand for** that kind of language in this house.*

Infinitive: stick around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stick around & sticks around	sticking around	stuck around	stuck around

1. **stick around** *p.v. [informal]* When you **stick around**, you stay where you are.

*Can you **stick around**? We’re going to have lunch in an hour.*

*Don’t go yet—**stick around** until Sarah gets here. She’d love to see you.*

Infinitive: stick to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stick to & sticks to	sticking to	stuck to	stuck to

1. **stick to** *p.v.* When one thing **sticks to** another, it remains attached to it.

*The magnet **sticks to** the chalkboard because there’s metal underneath.*

*I used the wrong glue, and the tiles didn't **stick to** the floor.*

2. **stick to** *p.v.* When you **stick to** a certain subject, you talk or write about that subject only.

*The teacher said, "Do this paper over and **stick to** the point—don't talk about 100 other things that aren't important."*

*In his news conference, the President **stuck to** the new tax legislation, but the reporters kept asking about the latest scandal.*

3. **stick to** *p.v.* When you **stick to** a certain belief, claim, policy, habit, plan, type of work, etc., you continue as before, without change. **Stick with** is similar to **stick to**.

*Jake claimed he was innocent of Hank's murder. He **stuck to** his alibi that he had been at the racetrack when the murder occurred.*

*After the audition, the director told me I was a terrible actor and that I should **stick to** singing.*

4. **stick . . . to** *p.v. [informal]* When you **stick it to** people, you deliberately try to tease, annoy, or embarrass them with an accusation, provocative statement, or difficult question.

*Sam thinks the new manager is an idiot, and he likes to **stick it to** him.*

*One woman at the shareholders' meeting really **stuck it to** the president of the company. She asked why he deserved a \$19 million bonus even though the company had lost money that year and 4,000 workers had been laid off.*

Infinitive: take back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take back & takes back	taking back	took back	taken back

1. **take . . . back (to)** *p.v.* When you **take** something **back** or **take** something **back** to a place, you take it to where it was before.

*If you're finished working on the car, don't leave your tools here. **Take them back** to the garage.*

*Do you usually **take** the shopping carts **back** after you've put your groceries in your car?*

2. **take . . . back (to)** *p.v.* When you take something that you have bought to the place where you bought it and ask to have it repaired, to exchange it for something else, or for the money you paid for it, you **take it back** or **take it back** to the place where you bought it.

*I have to **take back** these pants that I bought yesterday because the zipper's already broken.*

*That new TV that Nancy bought was a piece of junk. She **took it back** to the store and demanded her money back.*

3. **take . . . back** (from) *p.v.* When you **take something back** or **take something back** from someone else, you accept it from the person you gave, sold, or lent it to.

*The guy at the store said he wouldn't **take my printer back** because I had bought it on sale.*

*The lady I bought this Persian rug from said she would be happy to **take it back** from me if I changed my mind.*

4. **take . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When you **take back** something that you have borrowed or **take back** something that you have borrowed to the person or place that you borrowed it from, you return it.

*Lydia borrowed this book from the library six months ago, and she still hasn't **taken it back**.*

*I need to **take Jim's lawn mower back** to him.*

5. **take . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When you **take people back** or **take people back** to a place where they were before, you go with them to that place.

*Our son was home from college for the summer, and we're **taking him back** tomorrow.*

*Mike got sick again, so we **took him back** to the hospital.*

6. **take . . . back** *p.v.* When you **take back** something that you have said, you admit that what you said was untrue, unfair, or rude.

*That's not true! You **take that back** right now!*

*I'm sorry, that was very rude of me. I **take it back**.*

7. **take . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When something reminds you of a place where you were in the past or of something you experienced in the past, it **takes you back** or **takes you back** to a time in the past.

*Looking through my high school year book sure **takes me back**.*

*My grandfather found his old uniform in the attic, and he said it **took him back** to when he was stationed in England during the war.*

PRACTICE

34-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. After being embarrassed last night, I'm going to _____ a policy of minding my own business.
2. Have you seen the manual for this program? It's _____ the office somewhere, but I can't find it.
3. It's too bad you can't _____. I was just about to barbecue some chicken.
4. Look at these old pictures. They sure _____ me _____.
5. In my history class we studied the events that _____ World War II.
6. Rosa tried to return her engagement ring to her fiancé, but he wouldn't _____ it _____.
7. The lawyer told his client to _____ the facts when she testifies.
8. The escaped prisoner was _____ to prison.
9. It's not like Erik to do such a terrible thing. I think someone _____ him _____ it.
10. I hate it when it's so humid that your clothes _____ your skin.
11. "UAE" _____ for "United Arab Emirates."
12. I felt terrible about what I said, and I _____ it _____ immediately.
13. One of the guys at work is a real baseball nut from Chicago, so we love to _____ it _____ him about how bad the Cubs are.
14. I don't have Linda's electric drill anymore. I _____ it _____ yesterday.
15. When people see our company's logo, they know it _____ quality.
16. The tailor didn't do what I wanted him to do with this dress. I'm going to _____ it _____ to him.
17. The restaurant manager told the bartender that she would not _____ drinking on the job.

18. Mark did such a bad job painting his house that he had to get a professional house painter to _____ it _____.
19. As soon as the company president mentioned the decrease in sales and the need to reduce labor costs, we knew what he was _____.
20. Don't leave these dirty dishes here; _____ them _____ to the kitchen.
21. Don't pay any attention to that rumor—it's been _____ for three years.

34-2. Review the explanation at the beginning of this unit of how two- and three-word phrasal verbs are pronounced. Then, say each sentence in Exercise 34a aloud and circle the verb or particle that is stressed.

34-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Janice said I was cheap, but she later admitted that it wasn't true. What did Janice do?
2. A number of situations and events helped to cause the Civil War. What did those situations and events do?
3. You've rewritten this story four times, and you're still not happy with it. What have you done to the story four times?
4. When I opened the box of cereal, it was full of bugs, so I returned it to the store. What did I do to the box of cereal?
5. Bill has a system for picking good stocks, and he always uses it. What does Bill do with his system?
6. Mr. Tucker's fifteen-year-old daughter wants to get a tattoo, but he absolutely will not allow it. What won't Mr. Tucker do?
7. Visiting his old high school brought back a lot of memories. What did visiting his old high school do to him?
8. Carlos came to my house and stayed for a while. What did Carlos do after he came to my house?
9. People in my office have been reading the latest issue of *Time* magazine and then giving it to someone else. What has the magazine been doing?
10. She asked me what "Ph.D." represents. What did she ask me?

11. I felt ridiculous dressing as a pink dinosaur for my nephew's birthday party, but my brother persuaded me to do it. What did my brother do?

34-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

bite off, 27	fall behind, 33	print out, 24	stay out, 23
catch on, 33	get together, 26	pull off, 33	stop over, 24
come about, 33	goof around, 33	put together, 26	wear off, 27
come out, 32	let in on, 26	shake up, 24	weasel out, 31

1. I asked Sam how his job interview _____, and he said it went great.
2. I asked my history teacher what led up to the American Revolution, and he said the war _____ as a result of several factors.
3. After the tranquilizer _____, the elephant will wake up.
4. The new owners of the company said they planned to _____ things _____.
5. I can't believe you _____ of going to see your daughter performing in a school play by saying that you have to work late at the office.
6. Tonight I'm going to _____ with some friends and watch the game.
7. Mark has a rich father, so he doesn't work; he just _____ all day.
8. The finance minister _____ a plan to revive the nation's economy.
9. That's a pretty big project. Are you sure you haven't _____ more than you can chew?
10. The new system at the warehouse was a disaster, and we _____ in filling orders.
11. I didn't sleep at all last night—I _____ dancing until dawn, and I'm really tired.

12. Indian food is popular in Britain, but it has never _____ in the USA.
13. The boss _____ me _____ the new strategy.
14. If you're not busy, would you like to _____ for a while? We could watch TV or play cards.
15. The crooks tried to steal a 747 by pretending to be pilots, but they couldn't _____ it _____.
16. I finished my letter, but I can't _____ it _____ because I'm out of toner.

Unit 35

Gerund Phrasal Verbs

In [Unit 10](#) we looked at gerunds as the objects of phrasal verbs. Now we will look at phrasal verbs as gerunds themselves. Like ordinary verbs, gerund phrasal verbs can be the subject of a sentence:

***Narrowing down** the list will be difficult.*
subject

the object of a sentence:

*We discussed **narrowing down** the list.*
object

or the object of a preposition:

*We talked about **narrowing down** the list.*
object of preposition

How and when phrasal verbs can be separated is unaffected by their use as gerunds:

***Narrowing it down** will be difficult.*

*We discussed **narrowing it down**.*

*We talked about **narrowing it down**.*

Infinitive: fool around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fool around & fools around	fooling around	fooled around	fooled around

1. **fool around** p.v. When you waste time playing or doing silly or unimportant things, you **fool around**. **Goof around** and **mess around** are the same as **fool around**.

*My son is lazy. He spends his time **fooling around** instead of looking for a job.*

*My boss said, "I'm not paying you to **fool around**—get to work!"*

2. **fool around** (with) *p.v.* When you **fool around** with something, you do something that may be dangerous or foolish. **Mess around** and **goof around** are the same as **fool around**.

***Fooling around** with drugs is pretty stupid.*

*You shouldn't **fool around** with the insides of your computer unless you know what you're doing.*

3. **fool around** (with) *p.v. [informal]* When two people **fool around** or **fool around** with each other, they have sexual relations, even though one or both of them may be married to someone else or even though their families or society may not approve.

*Sally's father caught her and Jim **fooling around** in the basement.*

*Her husband's been **fooling around** with his secretary, and everyone in town knows it.*

Infinitive: go by

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go by & goes by	going by	went by	gone by

1. **go by** *p.v.* When people **go by** a place or thing, they pass near that place or thing. When a thing **goes by** or **goes by** you, it passes near you.

*We watched the parade **go by**.*

*I **went by** Jim's house to see if his car was in the driveway.*

2. **go by** *p.v.* When you **go by** a place, you go there so that you can do something or get something.

*Let's **go by** Raul's house to get his tools before we work on your car.*

*You can forget about **going by** the dry cleaner to pick up your stuff—it's closed.*

3. **go by** *p.v.* When a period of time **goes by**, it passes.

*I can't believe that thirty years have **gone by** since I got out of high school.*

*As time **went by**, Betty moved up in the company until she was the head of the finance department.*

4. **go by** *p.v.* When you **go by** a policy or standard, you use it as a reference or a guide in making decisions and determining your behavior. When you **go by** the book, you follow rules, policies, or laws exactly.

***Going by** the book has always been my policy.*

*Jim told me to do one thing, and Tom told me to do another, but since Tom is the boss, I'm going to **go by** what he says.*

5. **go by** p.v. When you **go by** a clock, you use it to tell the time.

*Don't **go by** the clock on the wall. It's fast. **Go by** the clock on the desk.*

*No wonder I'm always late for work—the clock I've been **going by** is ten minutes slow.*

Infinitive: hold against

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hold against & holds against	holding against	held against	held against

1. **hold . . . against** p.v. When you **hold** things **against** people, you continue to blame them for something and continue to be upset about it.

*Ten years ago I got a promotion that Ned thought he deserved, and he's **held it against** me ever since.*

*Jane lost her job because of a mistake Bob made, but she doesn't **hold it against** him.*

Infinitive: leave behind

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
leave behind & leaves behind	leaving behind	left behind	left behind

1. **leave . . . behind** p.v. When you **leave** someone or something **behind**, you go to a different place.

*The explorers **left** the mountains **behind** and entered the jungle.*

*The enemy soldiers retreated and **left behind** a city in ruins.*

2. **leave . . . behind** p.v. When you **leave** something or someone **behind**, you do not take them with you because you forgot or because you cannot or do not want to take them.

*We packed too much luggage for our trip, so we had to **leave** some things **behind**.*

***Leaving** our children **behind** at a gas station was pretty dumb.*

3. **leave . . . behind** *p.v.* When you move, learn, or work faster than others in your group, you **leave** them **behind**.

*My husband walks so fast that he always **leaves** me **behind**.*

*If you don't start working harder, you're going to be **left behind**.*

*Mark was so good at calculus that he soon **left** the rest of the class **behind**.*

Infinitive: make of

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
make of & makes of	making of	made of	made of

1. **make of** *p.v.* What you **make of** something is your understanding or opinion of it.

*So what did you **make of** the prime minister's speech?*

*What he said was so strange that I didn't know what to **make of** it.*

Infinitive: narrow down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
narrow down & narrows down	narrowing down	narrowed down	narrowed down

1. **narrow . . . down** *p.v.* [always separated unless passive] When you **narrow down** things or people in a list or group, you remove some of them so that the number of things or people is reduced.

*All the candidates for the job have excellent qualifications. **Narrowing** the list **down** won't be easy.*

*The detective **narrowed** the suspects **down** to the butler, the cook, and the maid.*

Infinitive: pitch in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pitch in & pitches in	pitching in	pitched in	pitched in

1. **pitch in** *p.v.* When you help other people with some work that must be done, you **pitch in**.

*This is a big project, but if we all **pitch in**, we can get it done.*

*I talked to my kids about **pitching in** more around the house.*

Infinitive: trick into			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
trick into & tricks into	tricking into	tricked into	tricked into

1. **trick . . . into** *p.v.* When you **trick** people **into** doing something, you persuade them to do something by fooling or deceiving them. **Con into** is similar to **trick into**.

*The con artist **tricked** them **into** giving him their life savings.*

*I was foolish to let Hank **trick** me **into** selling him my car for so little money.*

PRACTICE

35-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- The man who was killed in the accident _____ a wife and three children _____.
- The prosecutor _____ Jake _____ admitting his guilt.
- I took a job in Japan, and six years _____ before I returned to the United States.
- Paul's been _____ his parents since his house burned down.
- There were fifty contestants at the beginning of the contest, but the judges _____ it _____ to five finalists.
- Look at this strange letter I received. Read it and tell me what you _____ it.
- I was my parents' favorite child, and my brother still _____ it _____ me.
- Frank's wife filed for divorce after she learned that he was _____ with her best friend.
- The train always blows its whistle when it _____.
- Shoveling snow after the big storm would have taken me all day if my two boys hadn't _____.

11. _____ your friends and family _____ when you emigrate to a new country is very difficult.
12. Todd failed the test because he _____ all evening instead of studying.
13. Sergeant Jones was very strict when he was in the Army. He always _____ the book.
14. Don't let your kids _____ with cigarette lighters. They might start a fire.
15. I _____ my watch, not the wall clock, because it's more accurate.
16. Melanie has my biology book, so on the way to school I need to _____ her house to get it.
17. Mike wasn't ready for the advanced algebra class, and he was quickly _____ by the rest of the class.

35-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Some friends and I helped my girlfriend move her stuff to a different dorm. What did we do?
2. Jim and I worked on a project together, but Jim told everyone that he did all the work, and I'm still angry about it. How do I feel about what Jim did?
3. Sally and her sister's husband go to a motel sometimes during their lunch hour. What are they doing?
4. The last year passed quickly. What did the last year do?
5. Bill made a list of cities that he might move to, and then he eliminated those that are too cold or have high crime rates. What did Bill do to his list of cities?
6. When the boss isn't in the office, you just play computer games and make personal phone calls. What do you do when the boss isn't in the office?
7. Hank told his sister that he needed money for his wife's doctor bills, but he really wanted money to buy drugs. What did Hank do to his sister?
8. The scientist asked her colleague his opinion of the test results. What did the scientist ask her colleague about the test results?

9. A police car passed me while I was driving. What did the police car do?
10. Susie's parents are going to take a vacation without her. What are Susie's parents going to do to her?

35-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Try to make all the phrasal verbs gerunds and to use them as subjects, objects, or objects of prepositions.

35-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

break up, 28	flip out, 29	lie around, 20	stand for, 34
come apart, 29	float around, 34	luck out, 29	stay up, 20
do over, 34	hang around, 20	mess up, 28	stick around
end up, 20	lead up to, 34	run across, 29	take back, 3

1. The robber was only three feet away when he fired the gun at me, but the gun jammed and didn't fire. I really _____.
2. Nancy said being sick wasn't so bad. She _____ in bed all day watching TV and eating ice cream.
3. I'll _____ if you drop my new camera in the swimming pool.
4. Dan's daughter was very sick last night, so he _____ all night with her.
5. This is outrageous! I will not _____ dishonesty in my company.
6. I told Mark that I would never speak to him again if he didn't _____ the nasty things he said.
7. If you're looking for Hank, go to the coffee shop on the corner. That's where he _____.
8. A number of minor events will _____ the main event.
9. I had a very busy day planned, but I got a flat tire and that _____ everything.

10. I hate my boss! I worked for three days on this, and just because he found one mistake he made me _____ it _____.
11. Sam has been very depressed since he _____ with his girlfriend.
12. Have you seen the dictionary? It's _____ the office somewhere, but I can't find it.
13. Don't stand on that chair—it's _____.
14. Do you really have to leave now? Why don't you _____ for a while?
15. Bill was talking about moving to Florida or Hawaii, but I'm not sure where he finally _____.
16. Someone told me that Sarah is in town, but I haven't _____ her yet.

Unit 36

Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Down*

The particle *down* is used in many phrasal verbs and has many meanings. *Down* can be used to say that something literally moves from a higher position to a lower position or from north to south:

*Bob **went down** the ladder.*

*Many Canadians **come down** to Florida during the winter.*

*The police told Nicholas to **put his gun down**.*

that something decreases in size, number, intensity, quantity, or quality:

*Her fever has **gone down** to 100 degrees.*

*The doctor gave her a sedative to **calm her down**.*

*We've **narrowed the list down** to three choices.*

*The store tried to **keep its prices down**.*

that something or someone is fought, defeated, or overpowered:

*Hank **backed down** when he saw my shotgun.*

*The police **cracked down** on street crime.*

that something falls to the ground or is made to stay at a lower position:

*The boy was running and **fell down**.*

*The warehouse **burned down**.*

*Open the door or I'll **break it down**!*

*The police officers **held the criminal down**.*

or that a process or activity is ending or has ended:

*My car **broke down** on the highway.*

*The FBI **tracked down** the spy.*

*The campaign is **winding down**.*

Infinitive: back down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
back down & backs down	backing down	backed down	backed down

1. **back down** *p.v.* When one side in a disagreement stops making threats and lets the other have what it wants or do what it wants, the side that stops making threats **backs down**.

*The dictator didn't **back down** after the United Nations Security Council voted in favor of sending in troops.*

*The police officer tried to force me to pay him a bribe, but when I said I would report him to the chief of police, he **backed down**.*

Infinitive: calm down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
calm down & calms down	calming down	calmed down	calmed down

1. **calm . . . down** *p.v.* When you **calm down**, you become less active, nervous, or upset. When you **calm** other people **down**, you do something to make them less active, nervous, or upset. **Settle down** is similar to **calm down**.

*I was very nervous about the test, but I **calmed down** when I saw how easy it was.*

*Mike tried to **calm** his sister **down** after she had a fight with her husband.*

2. **calm . . . down** *p.v.* When a confused or violent situation becomes less confused or violent, it **calms down**. When you **calm** a confused or violent situation **down**, you make it less confused or violent and more calm. **Settle down** is similar to **calm down**.

*The neighborhood where the riot occurred **calmed down** after the army started patrolling the streets.*

*A conference between the two sides was organized to try to **calm** the situation **down**.*

Infinitive: die down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
die down & dies down	dying down	died down	died down

1. **die down** *p.v.* When something becomes less noisy, active or intense, it **dies down**.

*The forest fire **died down** when it began to rain.*

*The fighting **died down** when both sides ran low on ammunition.*

Infinitive: go down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go down & goes down	going down	went down	gone down

1. **go down** (to) *p.v.* When you move to a lower level or position or from north to south, you **go down** or **go down** to that place. **Go up** is the opposite of **go down**.

*Toronto is too cold, so we usually **go down** to Mexico in the winter.*

***Going down** the mountain was a lot easier than going up.*

2. **go down** (to) *p.v.* When the cost, rate, quality, quantity, or level of something decreases, it **goes down**. **Go up** is the opposite of **go down**.

*The temperature **went down** to zero last night.*

*The crime rate in New York City has **gone down**.*

3. **go down** (to) *p.v.* When something extends to a certain point that is farther south or at a lower elevation, it **goes down** to that point. **Go up** is the opposite of **go down**.

*How far south does this road **go down**?*

*Does this road **go down** to the south side of town?*

*After dinner we **went down** to the basement and played ping pong.*

4. **go down** *p.v.* When something **goes down** in a certain way, people react to or perceive it in this way.

*The new no smoking policy didn't **go down** very well with the smokers in the office.*

*The judge's decision **went down** well with the prosecutor.*

5. **go down** *p.v.* When a computer or computer network stops working because of a problem or because it has been disconnected, it **goes down**.

*I couldn't withdraw any money at the bank because its computers had **gone down**.*

*If your computer terminal **goes down**, you can use the one in the next office.*

6. **go down** *p.v.* When the sun goes below the horizon, it **goes down**.

*After the sun **goes down**, it'll get a little cooler.*

*The sun **went down** at 8:34 last night.*

Infinitive: hold down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hold down & holds down	holding down	held down	held down

1. **hold . . . down** p.v. When you **hold down** a job, you continue working at that job.

*My sister has never been able to **hold down** a job for more than two months.*

*Maria's a single mother who **holds** three jobs **down** in order to keep up with her bills.*

2. **hold . . . down** p.v. When you maintain something at a low level, such as a price, temperature, pressure level, noise level, etc., you **hold** it **down**. **Hold down** is similar to **keep down**.

*Automakers won't be able to **hold** their prices **down** if the cost of steel rises.*

*I wish you kids would **hold** it **down** in there. Your mother's trying to sleep.*

3. **hold . . . down** p.v. When you **hold down** food, you don't vomit even though you are ill.

*My son is very sick. He can't **hold** anything **down** except for fruit juice.*

*When I had food poisoning, I couldn't **hold** anything **down** for four days.*

4. **hold . . . down** p.v. When you use force to keep a person on the ground, you **hold** that person **down**.

*The police **held** the captured criminal **down** while they handcuffed her.*

*The wrestler **held** his opponent **down**.*

5. **hold . . . down** p.v. When you unfairly prevent people from advancing in society or in a career by limiting their freedom or denying them their rights, you **hold** them **down**. When a situation or fact prevents people from advancing in society or in a career, it **holds** them **down**.

*The women claimed the company **held** them **down** and didn't pay them as much as male workers.*

*Ali was a brilliant scientist, but he was **held down** in his career by religious discrimination.*

Infinitive: lay down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lay down & lays down	laying down	laid down	laid down

1. **lay . . . down** (on) *p.v.* When you **lay** something **down**, you put it on a horizontal surface. **Put down** is similar to **lay down**.

*Marsha **laid** the tray **down**.*

*The police ordered Jake to **lay down** his gun and surrender.*

2. **lay down** *p.v.* When you **lay down** a new law, policy, rule, etc., you create and announce it.

*The IRS **laid down** several new tax regulations.*

*Congress decided against **laying down** any new campaign financing laws.*

Infinitive: put down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put down & puts down	putting down	put down	put down

1. **put . . . down** *p.v.* When you **put** something **down**, you put something in your hand or something that you are carrying on a horizontal surface.

*The suitcase was so heavy that I had to **put** it **down** and rest for a minute.*

*Susie, **put** that knife **down**. It's dangerous!*

2. **put . . . down** *p.v.* When you **put** people **down**, you criticize them.

*Jim hates his stepfather and **puts** him **down** constantly.*

*I'm not inviting Sam to any more parties. I hate the way he **puts** everyone **down**.*

put-down *n.* A **put-down** is an insult or critical remark.

At the party Sam asked Nancy if she had made her dress from an old curtain.

*What a **put-down**!*

3. **put . . . down** (on) *p.v.* When you **put** money **down** or **put** money **down** on something, you pay a portion of the cost of something you want to buy to be sure that it will still be available to you when you are able to pay the rest of the cost.

*The real estate agent asked me how much money I want to **put down** on the house.*

*I told her that I could **put** as much as \$15,000 **down**.*

4. **put . . . down** (on/for) *p.v.* When you add something to a list or other written material, you **put it down** or **put it down** on the list. When you add people to a list in order to assign something to them, you **put them down** or **put them down** for that assignment.

*Melanie's collecting money for charity, so I told her to **put me down** for \$50.*

*I'm making a list of volunteers to help reelect Senator Dolittle. Can I **put** your name **down** on the list?*

5. **put . . . down** (on) *p.v.* When an airplane **puts down** or a pilot **puts** an airplane **down**, the airplane lands.

*After the engine quit, the pilot looked for a place to **put down**.*

*Fortunately, the pilot was able to **put** the plane **down** on a frozen lake.*

Infinitive: run down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run down & runs down	running down	ran down	run down

1. **run down** (to) *p.v.* When you move quickly to a lower level or place, you **run down** or **run down** to that place.

*Mike was **running down** the stairs when he fell and broke his leg.*

*I saw someone trying to steal my car, and I **ran down** to the street to try to stop him.*

2. **run . . . down** *p.v.* When vehicles or people driving vehicles hit and injure or kill someone, they **run** that person **down**.

*The man was **run down** and killed by a speeding taxi.*

*Nicholas was arrested after he **ran** three people **down**.*

3. **run down** *p.v.* When you discuss or review items on a list from the first to the last, you **run down** the list.

*Let's **run down** the Christmas list and decide what to give everyone.*

*The teacher **ran down** the list of students and marked the ones who are failing.*

rundown *n.* A **rundown** is a discussion or review of items on a list.

*The consultant gave the manager a **rundown** of the problems she had found.*

4. **run down** *p.v.* When batteries or machines **run down** or are **run down** by someone, they gradually lose power or energy.

*Don't leave the car lights on for too long when the car isn't running or the battery will **run down**.*

*What time is it? My watch **ran down** last night.*

rundown *part.adj.* A person or thing that is **rundown** is exhausted, without power or energy.

*Maybe I need to go to the doctor. I feel so **rundown** all the time.*

rundown *part.adj.* A **rundown** building or neighborhood is in poor condition because it has not been maintained.

*I went back to my old neighborhood, and I was shocked to see how **rundown** it had become.*

PRACTICE

36-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Heather thinks she's so high-class. She _____ other people all the time.
2. The situation _____ after the cease-fire was declared.
3. The sun comes up around 6:00, and it _____ around 8:00.
4. Here's the list of candidates for the promotion. Let's _____ the list and decide.
5. The airlines were told that they must _____ the noise level _____ to 150 decibels.
6. The sun broke through the storm clouds, and the strong winds _____.
7. I saw a tow truck looking for illegally parked cars, so I _____ to my car and moved it.
8. My office is on the ninetieth floor, so sometimes it takes me fifteen minutes to _____ to the lobby.

9. It's hard to write sympathy notes. I never know what to _____
_____.
10. The company tried to reduce benefits, but they _____ when
the union threatened to go on strike.
11. The Appalachian Trail starts in Maine and _____ all the way _____
to Georgia.
12. Don't _____ the baby _____ there—she might fall.
13. If you _____ \$100,000 _____ on that house, you won't need a very
large mortgage.
14. My father was an alcoholic who never _____ a job for more
than a few months.
15. The union's proposal to reduce the workweek to four days didn't _____
_____ well with the company.
16. The Food and Drug Administration is expected to _____ a
new set of regulations regarding seafood inspection.
17. Nicholas feels that his criminal record is _____ him _____ and
preventing him from moving up in his company.
18. Those boxes are too heavy for you. _____ them _____ and let me
carry them for you.
19. A pedestrian was _____ by a truck on Lincoln Avenue.
20. The stock exchange had to stop trading when its computers _____.
21. _____ a jet _____ on an aircraft carrier at night is very difficult.
22. Someone left this flashlight on all night, and the batteries have _____
_____.
23. What are you so worried about? Just _____—everything's
going to be all right.
24. The price of computers has _____ dramatically in the last few
years.

36-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The jockey *calmed down*. (the horse, it)
2. The mechanic *laid down*. (her tools, them)
3. I *put down*. (my books, them)
4. The taxi *ran down*. (the traffic cop, him)

36-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The car dealer reviewed the list of the car's options with me. What did the car dealer do?
2. In Question 1, what did the car dealer give me?
3. The king visited the area where the two tribes were fighting, and the fighting stopped. What did the king do to the area?
4. The houses in this part of town are in very bad condition. How can you describe this part of town?
5. I was fighting with a guy, and he knocked me to the ground and prevented me from getting up. What did he do to me?
6. Frank told Nancy that she was low-class. What did Frank do to Nancy?
7. In Question 6, what was Frank's comment?
8. The riot eventually became less intense. What did the riot do?
9. The company's management stopped threatening to fire the workers and agreed to raise their wages. What did the company do?
10. The company will lose a lot of business if it can't maintain its prices at a low level. What does the company want to do to its prices?
11. The soldiers stopped fighting and put their rifles on the ground. What did the soldiers do with their rifles?
12. I was sick, but I was able to eat some soup without vomiting. What did I do to the soup?
13. The dentist's secretary wrote my name in her appointment book. What did the secretary do?

14. Management's plan got a good reaction from the workers. What impression did the plan make on the workers?

36-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

burned up, 22	locked out, 30	punched out, 30	sorted out, 3
cleaned out, 32	paid up, 22	put out, 30	spaced-out,
left out, 32	plugged up, 22	shaken up, 24	
locked in, 30	punched in, 30		

1. David's totally _____ today. He has even forgotten his girlfriend's name.
2. I don't know why that guy from the collection agency called me—all my bills are _____.
3. Nicole isn't _____. Either she's late for work or she forgot.
4. Mark borrowed Bob's car and had an accident, and Mark's really _____ about it.
5. The manager wondered why I wasn't working, but after I told her I was _____, she said it was OK.
6. Take this medicine. It's great for _____ noses.
7. Do you have a key? I'm _____ and can't get out.
8. Do you have a key? I'm _____ and can't get in.
9. Jane's really _____. She just found out that her brother was murdered.
10. Jim's socks are mixed with his brother's socks. They're not _____.
11. No one wants to sit with me in the school lunchroom, and it makes me feel _____.
12. I was really _____ when Aunt Kathy said our house wasn't very clean.

13. Why isn't the basement _____ yet? I'm tired of looking at this junk!

36-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

amount to, 31

come about, 33

make of, 35

pull off, 33

blow up, 33

do without, 31

make out, 29

put off, 31

catch on, 33

go out, 32

narrow down, 35

stick to, 34

clean out, 32

lock out, 30

pass out, 30

string along

1. Joe cut himself, and he lost so much blood that he _____.
2. My boyfriend is pressuring me for a decision, but I just can't make up my mind. He says I'm _____ him _____.
3. My father was 72 years old when he got his first computer, but he _____ right away, and now he uses it all the time.
4. The President had a lot of big plans when he took office, but few of them ever _____.
5. Mark wasn't successful as a singer. He should have _____ songwriting—that's what he does best.
6. How did you _____ on your final exam?
7. I had to crawl in through the window after my daughter closed the door and _____ me _____ of the house.
8. This situation is very strange. I don't know what to _____ it.
9. I have to finish my project tonight, and I haven't even started it. I _____ it _____ until the last minute.
10. No one thought Frank could run a mile in less than four minutes, but he _____ it _____.
11. I really depend on my laptop computer when I travel on business. I don't know how I ever _____ it.
12. George and Linda _____ for three years before they got married.

13. Several people were killed when the bomb _____.
14. Marty was always claiming to be a financial genius, but he didn't _____ anything.
15. My divorce settlement cost me a lot of money. It almost _____ me _____.
16. The FBI started with a list of six suspects, but they _____ it _____ to two.

Unit 37

Phrasal Verbs Used as Nouns, Part 3

When phrasal verbs are used as nouns, the verb is usually in the infinitive form; however, a small number use a different form of the verb.

For example, **left over** uses the past participle:

*We ate **leftovers** the day after Thanksgiving.*

go over uses the *-ing* form:

*Before I buy this car, I'm going to give it a good **going-over**.*

Infinitive: brush off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
brush off & brushes off	brushing off	brushed off	brushed off

1. **brush . . . off** *p.v.* When you **brush** people **off**, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

*My boss just **brushes** me **off** when I try to tell her how to increase our profits.*

*The reporters tried to ask him some questions, but he **brushed** them **off**.*

brush-off *n.* When you give people the **brush-off**, you ignore them or refuse to listen to them because you are not interested in or do not like what they are saying.

*The boss just gave me the **brush-off** when I tried to give him some advice.*

2. **brush . . . off** *p.v.* When you **brush off** a critical remark or problem, you ignore it and continue as before without letting it affect you.

*I told Dr. Smith that he had made a mistake, but he **brushed** it **off**.*

*My father's cholesterol is very high, but he just **brushes** it **off**.*

Infinitive: come on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come on & comes on	coming on	came on	come on

1. **come on** *p.v.* When an electrical device or machine **comes on**, it begins to operate, usually automatically. **Go off** is the opposite of **come on**.

*It was so cold that the heat **came on** last night.*

*When you open the refrigerator door, the light **comes on** automatically.*

2. **come on** *p.v.* When a television or radio program **comes on**, it begins.

*Do you know when the news will **come on**?*

*The late movie **comes on** at 1:00 A.M.*

3. **come on** *p.v.* When you want to encourage people to do something or when you want them to do something quickly, you say “**Come on!**”

*Believe me, you’re going to love this garlic ice cream. **Come on**, try it!*

***Come on!** I can’t wait all day.*

4. **come on** *p.v. [informal]* When you think that people have done or said something improper or unreasonable, you say “**Come on.**”

*Tom didn’t study for one minute, and you’re telling me he got 100 on the test? Oh, **come on.***

*Hey, **come on!** What’s wrong with you? I told you never do that again!*

5. **come on** *p.v. [always continuous]* When you begin to feel a headache or an illness developing, you feel the headache or illness **coming on**.

*I might be sick tomorrow; I feel something **coming on**.*

*I feel a headache **coming on**. Do you have any aspirin?*

6. **come on** *p.v.* When you **come on** a certain way, you speak or deal with people in that way.

*Paul needs to learn to be more of a gentleman. He **comes on** too strong, and women don’t like that.*

*Bob **comes on** kind of arrogant, but he’s actually a nice guy.*

7. **come on** (to) *p.v. [informal]* When you **come on** to people, you approach them and try to interest them in romance or sex.

*Todd **came on** to Judy at the party, and she told him to get lost.*

*I can’t stand that guy Ned. He’s always **coming on** to me.*

come-on *n. [informal]* A provocative comment or action intended to interest a person in romance or sex is a **come-on**.

*Todd uses the same **come-on** with all the girls, and it never works.*

come-on *n.* A discount or special offer designed to get people to buy something is a **come-on**.

*The bank is offering a free computer as a **come-on** if you open an account with them.*

Infinitive: cover up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cover up & covers up	covering up	covered up	covered up

1. **cover . . . up** *p.v.* When you cover something completely, you **cover it up**.

*I **covered** the cake **up** so no bugs would land on it.*

***Cover** this stuff **up**—I don't want anyone to see it.*

covered up *part.adj.* After something has been completely covered, it is **covered up**.

*Is the meat **covered up**? I don't want flies to land on it.*

2. **cover . . . up** *p.v.* When you **cover up** a crime, you do something to try to prevent other people from learning of it.

*There's no point in trying to **cover up** the crime. Too many people already know about it.*

*The mayor was accused of **covering up** his ties to organized crime.*

cover-up *n.* Something you do in order to prevent a crime from becoming known is a **cover-up**.

*The mayor denied being part of a **cover-up** and claimed he was innocent.*

Infinitive: dumb down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
dumb down & dumbs down	dumbing down	dumbed down	dumbed down

1. **dumb . . . down** *p.v.* When you revise something related to culture, literature, or education to make it less intellectual or less difficult to understand by people you think are not well-educated, not very intelligent, or not very sophisticated, you **dumb it down**.

*My students can't understand anything in our textbook unless I really **dumb** it **down** for them.*

*Hank isn't very bright. If you don't **dumb** this stuff **down**, he'll never understand it.*

dumbed down *part.adj.* Intellectual material that has been made easier to understand by people you think are not well-educated, not very intelligent, or not very sophisticated is **dumbed down**.

*Many American movies and TV shows are **dumbed down** versions of British movies and TV shows.*

Infinitive: hang out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hang out & hangs out	hanging out	hung out	hung out

1. **hang out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hang out** at a place, you spend time there without any important purpose. **Hang around** is similar to **hang out**.

*Doesn't Nancy have a job? It seems as if she **hangs out** at the beach every day.
I don't have any place to go. Do you mind if I **hang out** here for a while?*

hangout *n. [informal]* A **hangout** is a place where you spend time without any important purpose.

*The police closed the club, saying it was a **hangout** for crooks and gang members.*

Infinitive: leave over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
			left over

1. **leave over** *p.v. [always passive]* When something is **left over**, it remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

*I guess I made too much food. Look how much is **left over**.
I paid all my bills and had only \$17 **left over**.*

leftover *part.adj.* Something that is **left over** remains after people have used or taken as much of it as they need or want.

*You can have this **leftover** pasta for lunch tomorrow.*

leftovers *n. [always plural]* Food items that remain uneaten after people have finished eating are **leftovers**.

***Leftovers** again? When are we going to have something different for dinner?*

Infinitive: let down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
let down & lets down	letting down	let down	let down

1. **let . . . down** *p.v.* [always separated unless passive] When you promise people you will do something and then fail to do it, you **let** them **down**.

*My son promised to stop using drugs, but he **let me down**.*

*I really need you to help me move tomorrow. Please don't **let me down**.*

let down *part.adj.* When people promise you they will do something and then fail to do it, you feel **let down**. When you are disappointed because you cannot have something you want to have, because you cannot do something you want to do, or because something is less exciting than you expected it to be, you feel **let down**.

*You broke your promise to me that you would quit smoking. I feel very **let down**.*

letdown *n.* When you say that something is a **letdown**, you are disappointed because you cannot have or cannot do something you want to or because something is less exciting than you expected it to be.

*I had tickets for the fifth game of the World Series, but my team lost in four games. What a **letdown**.*

*After the way everyone talked about how great the movie was, I thought it was something of a **letdown**.*

Infinitive: pay off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pay off & pays off	paying off	paid off	paid off

1. **pay . . . off** *p.v.* When you **pay off** money that you owe or **pay off** the person you owe the money to, you pay all the money that you owe.

*I wasn't happy with the people we hired to paint our house. I **paid them off** and told them not to return.*

*It took ten years, but I finally **paid off** my school loan.*

paid off *part.adj.* After you pay all the money that you owe to someone or to a lending institution, the debt or loan is **paid off**.

*I made my last payment yesterday, and now my car loan is **paid off**.*

2. **pay . . . off** *p.v.* When you pay people money so that they will do something illegal or allow you to do something illegal, you **pay** them **off**.

*The politician tried to cover up the crime by **paying off** the witnesses.*

*Don't expect the police in this city to do anything about gambling—they're being **paid off**.*

payoff *n.* A **payoff** is money paid to someone to do something illegal or to allow you to do something illegal.

*The chief of police was videotaped accepting a **payoff**.*

3. **pay off** *p.v.* When something you do **pays off**, it is successful and is worth the effort you made.

*Medical school is a lot of hard work, but it'll **pay off** someday.*

*The restaurant changed its menu, and it really **paid off**. Business increased by 30 percent.*

payoff *n.* A benefit you gain because of an effort you make is a **payoff**.

*Linda doesn't get paid for the volunteer work she does. The **payoff** is knowing that she has helped other people.*

PRACTICE

37-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I forgot to _____ the chicken _____ after we finished dinner, and the cat ate it.
2. A patient died after Dr. Smith gave her the wrong medicine, and the hospital tried to _____ it _____.
3. I don't care what Nancy thinks of me. If she criticizes me, I'll just _____ her _____.
4. I worked for nine years to get my Ph.D., and now I can't find a job in my field. All that work certainly didn't _____.
5. I set the thermostat so that the air conditioner _____ if it gets over eighty degrees.
6. You can trust Erik to keep his promises. He won't _____ you _____.
7. I didn't like that car salesman we talked to last night. He _____ too strong.

8. Many university professors feel that they must _____ their lessons _____ so that their students will pass the course.
9. _____ in bars isn't my idea of fun.
10. I tried to apologize to Jane, but she just _____ me _____ and continued walking.
11. I want to _____ my mortgage _____ early, so I'm making two payments every month.
12. Look at *TV Guide* to see when the show _____.
13. Karen sure isn't shy. Did you see how she was _____ to my brother at the party?
14. After Thanksgiving so much turkey will be _____ that we'll be eating it for two weeks.
15. I hope I'm not getting sick. I feel a cold _____.
16. The contractor was accused of _____ city officials in exchange for contracts.

37-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with nouns from this unit.

1. You need to finish school. The _____ won't come for years, but it's worth it.
2. I didn't have time to make anything for dinner, so we're having _____ tonight.
3. This place isn't as beautiful as it looked in the pictures. What a _____.
4. Judy isn't interested in anything I say. She always gives me the _____.
5. The senator was convicted of taking a _____.
6. The low interest rate the credit card company offers if you switch to their card is just a _____. After six months they increase it to 18 percent.
7. The politician was accused of being part of a _____.
8. You can usually find Joe at the bar across the street. That's his favorite _____.

37-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Ned spends a lot of time at Joe's Diner relaxing and talking to his friends. What does Ned do at Joe's Diner?
2. In Question 1, what is Joe's Diner to Ned?
3. Mark said something that I thought was ridiculous, and I told him to be serious and reasonable. What did I say to Mark?
4. You had \$400, but after you went shopping, you had \$100 remaining. What did you have?
5. My favorite TV show begins at 9:00. What does my favorite show do at 9:00?
6. Dan promised his daughter that he would take her to the circus, but he couldn't get off work that day. What did Dan do to his daughter?
7. Maria is going to pay her last car loan payment. What is she going to do to her car loan?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe Maria's car loan after she makes the last payment?
9. Joe told me again and again how good his favorite restaurant is, but when I went there, I didn't think it was that good. What was my visit to the restaurant?
10. In Question 9, how did I feel after my visit to Joe's favorite restaurant?
11. The heat in our house starts to operate when the temperature gets below sixty degrees. What does the heat in our house do?
12. For lunch you ate the spaghetti that your family didn't eat the night before. What did you eat for lunch?
13. The restaurant owner gave the health inspector \$200 to ignore the rats in the kitchen. What did the restaurant owner do to the health inspector?
14. In Question 13, what was the \$200 that the restaurant owner gave the health inspector?
15. The head of the health department tried to keep the payoffs in his department a secret. What did the head of the health department do to the payoffs?
16. In Question 15, what would you call the head of the health department's attempt to keep the payoffs in his department a secret?

17. Linda complained to the city about the garbage in the streets, but the woman she talked to wasn't interested and told her to write to the mayor. What did the woman Linda talked to do?
18. In Question 17, what did the woman that Linda talked to give her?
19. Timmy's friend wanted him to walk faster, and he told Timmy to hurry. What did Timmy's friend say to Timmy?

37-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these nouns from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

blowup, 33	get-together, 26	grown-up, 10	put-down, 3
breakup, 28	giveaway, 28	lockout, 30	rundown, 36
cutout, 31	going-over, 26	lookout, 29	

1. The movie critic told the director that watching his new movie was worse than going to the dentist. That was quite a _____.
2. The _____ of the huge company created several smaller companies.
3. We're having a little _____ tonight. Would you like to come?
4. Only _____ are allowed to drive cars.
5. The _____ ended after the workers agreed to a 10 percent pay increase.
6. I heard a big _____ in Nancy's office. I wonder what the problem was.
7. The drug dealers had a _____ on every corner.
8. Timmy told his mother that he hadn't eaten any cookies, but he had chocolate all over his face, so she knew he was lying. The chocolate on his face was the _____.
9. Before you spend \$13,000 on a used car, I suggest that you give it a thorough _____.
10. Carlos made paper _____ shaped like dinosaurs.
11. The police chief gave the mayor a _____ of the previous month's crime statistics.

37-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

calm down, 36	fool around, 35	hold down, 36	miss out, 32
catch on, 33	go by, 35	leave behind, 35	narrow down, 32
die down, 36	go down, 36	live with, 35	pull off, 33
do away with, 31	hold against, 35	make of, 35	put down, 31

1. My best friend, Heather, really likes Mike, but Mike asked me to go to the dance with him. I hope Heather doesn't _____ it _____ me.
2. The real estate agent has shown us several houses, but we've _____ it _____ to three that we really like.
3. Are you serious? You were invited to a fabulous New Year's Eve party on a private yacht, and you didn't go because you were tired? You really _____ on a great party.
4. Before we go to the beach, let's _____ Tom's house and see if he wants to come with us.
5. Maria's a fast learner. She had never played chess before, but she _____ right away.
6. No one thought I could get 100 on the test, but I _____ it _____.
7. Nothing like that ever happened before. I didn't know what to _____ it.
8. You can really screw up your computer with that program, so don't _____ with it unless you know what you're doing.
9. Pets aren't allowed where we're moving, so we're going to have to _____ our dog _____.
10. Polio has been almost completely _____.
11. There's a ton of work that's got to be done. If you don't _____, it'll take forever.
12. Joe was so upset after the accident that it was twenty minutes before he _____ enough to tell the police officer what happened.
13. My boss hates me, and it's really _____ me _____ in this company.

14. In the summer the sun doesn't _____ until 9:00 in the evening.

15. I'm going to _____ \$4,000 _____ on my new car and finance the rest.

16. Our neighbors had a loud party. The noise didn't _____ till 4:00 A.M.

Unit 38

The Verb *Keep* and Adverbs and Adverbials Showing Degrees of Variability

Phrasal verbs with *keep*

Several phrasal verbs are based on the verb *keep*, and it is important to understand that the essential meaning of *keep* in these phrasal verbs is *no change*. As you study these verbs, remember that in each meaning of each verb something is not changing, something is continuing in the same direction or in the same manner, or something is staying in the same place or in the same condition.

Adverbs and adverbials showing degrees of variability

A variety of adverbs and adverbial groups of words that together function as adverbs are used to modify phrasal verbs that relate to something variable, such as distance, time, cost, speed, temperature, amount, or quantity.

Adverbs and adverbials allow the speaker to be more precise about what is being measured—to say whether it was *a little* or *a lot* or to be precise about exactly *how much*. But the verb must be something that is variable. It cannot be something either/or, such as **shut off**, for example (a TV is either on or off—it cannot be in between). Adverbs and adverbials are used to strengthen the meaning of the verb:

*He fell asleep on the train and **went** well **beyond** his stop.*

*She **fell** way **behind** in her work when she was sick.*

***Keep** far **away** from the fire.*

to weaken the meaning of the verb:

*I **went** a bit **over** my budget.*

***Keep** slightly **to** the right on that road.*

*He **fell** a little **behind**.*

*The meeting may **run** somewhat **over**.*

or to be exact:

*We **planned** two weeks **ahead**.*

*Go three floors **up**.*

Sometimes, in informal English, *way* is repeated for extra emphasis:

*What Jim said **went** way, way, way **beyond** impolite—it was outrageous.*

Infinitive: keep at

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep at & keeps at	keeping at	kept at	kept at

1. **keep at** *p.v.* When you **keep at** it, you continue with an activity even though it may be difficult. When you say “**Keep at** it” to people, you encourage them to finish with an activity that is difficult.

*I know this work is difficult, but you have to **keep at** it.*

***Keep at** it! You’re almost finished.*

Infinitive: keep away

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep away & keeps away	keeping away	kept away	kept away

1. **keep away** (from) *p.v.* When you **keep away** or **keep away** from people, you do not come close to them or associate with them. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from things, you do not touch them, come close to them, or use them. When you **keep away** or **keep away** from places, you do not come close to them or go to them.

*Mark was very sick yesterday, so everyone **kept away** from him.*

*We’re going to eat dinner in a few minutes, so **keep away** from those cookies.*

*That’s a bad neighborhood, so **keep away** from it.*

2. **keep . . . away** (from) *p.v.* When you **keep** people or things **away** or **keep** them **away** from something or someone else, you do not allow them to come close to or associate with someone or come close to or touch something.

*That dog is dangerous, so **keep it away**.*

*Paul is trying to lose weight, so **keep** him **away** from the desserts at the party tomorrow.*

Infinitive: keep down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep down & keeps down	keeping down	kept down	kept down

1. **keep . . . down** *p.v.* When you **keep** the cost, quantity, or amount of something **down**, you keep it at a low level.

*The company tried to **keep** its prices **down**.*

*They wanted a small wedding, but they have such large families that it was hard to **keep** the number of guests **down**.*

2. **keep . . . down** *p.v.* When you **keep** the volume of noise, music, or conversation **down**, you keep it at a low level. When people are being noisy and you want them to be quieter, you tell them to **keep** it **down**. **Keep down** is similar to **hold down**.

*Will you please **keep** it **down**—I'm trying to study.*

*You kids can watch TV, but **keep** the volume **down**—your mother is taking a nap.*

Infinitive: keep from

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep from & keeps from	keeping from	kept from	kept from

1. **keep from** *p.v.* When you **keep from** doing something, you do not do it even though it is hard not to.

*I was so angry that I don't know how I **kept from** punching that guy in the nose.*

*The movie was so sad that I couldn't **keep from** crying.*

2. **keep . . . from** *p.v.* When you **keep** people **from** doing something, you stop them from doing it.

*Jim's girlfriend's parents don't like him, and they try to **keep** her **from** seeing him.*

*When I was young, my poor health **kept** me **from** doing a lot of things the other kids did.*

Infinitive: keep off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

keep off & keeps off	keeping off	kept off	kept off
----------------------	-------------	----------	----------

1. **keep . . . off** *p.v.* When you **keep off** something, you do not walk or stand on it. When you **keep** other people or things **off** something, you do not allow them to walk or stand on it.

*The sign says “**Keep off** the grass.”*

*You should **keep** your kids **off** the streets and in school.*

2. **keep . . . off** *p.v.* When you **keep off** drugs, cigarettes, or other addictive substances, you do not use them. When you **keep** people **off** drugs, cigarettes, or other addictive substances, you prevent them from using them.

*Since getting out of jail, Hank has been able to **keep off** drugs.*

*Ned is a nice guy as long as you can **keep** him **off** booze.*

Infinitive: keep on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep on & keeps on	keeping on	kept on	kept on

1. **keep on** *p.v.* When you **keep on** doing something, you continue doing it.

*I told her to be quiet, but she just **kept** right **on** talking.*

*Don't stop—**keep on** going.*

2. **keep . . . on** *p.v.* When you **keep** people **on** at their place of employment, you continue to employ them.

*The company decided against laying all the workers off and will instead **keep** a few **on** to maintain equipment until business improves.*

*Everyone on the hotel staff was fired after the hotel went out of business, except for two guys who were **kept on** to clean and paint the building.*

Infinitive: keep to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep to & keeps to	keeping to	kept to	kept to

1. **keep . . . to** *p.v.* When you **keep** information **to** yourself, you do not tell anyone.

*This is a secret, so **keep** it **to** yourself.*

*I wish she would **keep** her racist comments **to** herself. I don't want to hear them.*

2. **keep . . . to** *p.v.* When you **keep** something **to** a certain cost, quantity, or amount, you do not let the cost, quantity, or amount go higher than that level.

*Here's my credit card, but **keep** your spending **to** a minimum—don't go crazy with it.*

*The room doesn't hold a great many people, so we have to **keep** the number of guests **to** 200.*

3. **keep to** *p.v.* When you **keep to** the right or left, you continue moving to the right or left.

*When you pass a big red barn on the highway, **keep to** the right. The exit is right after the barn.*

*Faster cars are supposed to **keep to** the left.*

Infinitive: keep up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
keep up & keeps up	keeping up	kept up	kept up

1. **keep . . . up** *p.v.* When you **keep** an activity **up**, you continue doing it.

*Leopards can run extremely fast, but they can't **keep** it **up** longer than a minute or two.*

*I told you to stop doing that. If you **keep** it **up**, I'm going to get angry.*

2. **keep up** (with) *p.v.* When you are in a group that is studying, working, etc., and you are able to learn or work at the same rate as the others, you **keep up** or **keep up** with the group. **Fall behind** and **get behind** are the opposite of **keep up**.

*Lydia missed several days of school last month, and now she's having a hard time **keeping up** with the rest of the class.*

*The assembly line was going so fast that no one could **keep up**.*

3. **keep up** (with) *p.v.* When you **keep up** or **keep up** with people or things that are moving, you are able to move at the same rate. **Fall behind** and **get behind** are the opposite of **keep up**.

*Bob walks so fast that it's hard to **keep up** with him.*

*The wounded soldiers couldn't **keep up** with the rest of the army.*

4. **keep up** (with) *p.v.* When you can understand and respond to a situation that is changing, you are able to **keep up** with the situation.

*Computer technology is changing so fast. How can anyone **keep up** with it?*

*Jane always has some new idea. I can't **keep up** with her.*

5. **keep . . . up** *p.v.* When people or things **keep** you **up**, they prevent you from going to bed, or if you are in bed, they prevent you from falling asleep.

*Our guests just would not leave last night. They **kept me up** until 2:00 in the morning.*

*That noisy party across the alley **kept me up** all night.*

PRACTICE

38-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The student's excuse for not doing his homework was so ridiculous that his teacher couldn't _____ laughing.
2. What I'm going to tell you is highly confidential, so _____ it _____ yourself.
3. The baby's crying _____ Judy _____ half the night.
4. Don't quit now—you're almost finished. _____ it.
5. The company increased its profits by _____ costs _____.
6. I've tried to quit smoking a hundred times, but I just can't _____ cigarettes longer than a day.
7. Slower traffic should _____ the right.
8. Now that I live in New York, I can't _____ with local news in my hometown.
9. Sally is really angry at your brother, so it would be a good idea to _____ him _____ from her.
10. My algebra class is too difficult for me. I can't _____.
11. You're going to have to walk faster than that if you want to _____ with us.
12. Please _____ your dog _____ our lawn.
13. If you don't _____ your exercise program, you're going to gain all the weight back.
14. Could you _____ the music _____? Your mother's trying to sleep.

15. Parents try to _____ their children _____ making mistakes, but sometimes it isn't easy.
16. If you _____ eating so much butter and so many eggs, you're going to have a heart attack.
17. The new owner said the company was losing too much money to _____ all the workers _____ and that some would have to be laid off.
18. Look at the prices on this menu! Let's try to _____ it _____ a hundred dollars, OK?
19. I don't want to talk to you ever again, so _____ from me!

38-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. My father asked me to speak more quietly. What did my father ask me to do?
2. I told the travel agent that we have only \$4,000 to spend on our vacation, so she has to make sure the cost doesn't go over that. What did I ask the travel agent to do?
3. My geometry class is so boring that I can't stop myself from falling asleep. What can't I do in my geometry class?
4. My teacher told me that calculus is difficult but that I have to continue trying to understand it. What did my teacher tell me?
5. The political situation in Washington changes every day, and it's hard to understand what is happening. What is it hard to do?
6. Sarah and I were running. I quit after three miles, but she continued running. What did Sarah do?
7. You've got to remain at a great distance from this area because it is radioactive. What have you got to do about the radioactive area?
8. Heather thinks Mike isn't telling her everything. What does Heather think about Mike?
9. Janice got excellent grades in her first year of college. I hope she can continue to do well. What do I hope Janice can do?
10. I asked my husband not to let the children near my computer. What did I ask my husband?

11. The economist said it's important not to let inflation go higher. What did the economist say?
12. Bill hasn't used drugs for five years. What has Bill done?
13. My son is eighteen, so I can't stop him if he wants to join the Army. What can't I do to my son?
14. Sarah's having a little trouble in school. It's hard for her to stay at the same level as the other students. What is hard for Sarah?

38-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit.

38-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back down, 36	come about, 33	fall behind, 33	keep down,
blurt out, 33	come on, 37	go down, 36	lay down, 36
brush off, 37	die down, 36	goof around, 33	leave over, 33
calm down, 36	dumb down, 37	hang out, 37	run down, 36

1. Raul is constantly criticizing me, but I usually just _____ him _____.
2. I can barely hear this radio. The batteries must be _____.
3. When the electricians went on strike, the entire construction project _____ schedule.
4. Jake's claim that he didn't rob the bank didn't _____ well with the jury.
5. The dictator _____ after three aircraft carriers started sailing toward his country.
6. I need to check the furnace. The temperature got below sixty degrees last night, but the heat didn't _____.
7. Mark is very ambitious. He's determined to go all the way to the top. He says that nothing can _____ him _____.
8. _____—there's nothing to get upset about.

9. Several major changes in society _____ as a result of the Industrial Revolution.
10. Are you going to do any work at all today or will you just _____?
11. When Marty drinks, he _____ awful, insulting comments about his wife.
12. Protests over the new law aren't likely to _____ soon.
13. How much money was _____ after you finished paying for everything?
14. You can _____ those papers _____ over there.
15. I don't have anything to do today. I'm just going to _____ here and relax.
16. Most of the people in Uncle Sam's country can't understand world events even after they've been _____.

Unit 39

Passive Phrasal Verbs, Part 3

As we saw in [Unit 13](#), the passive is formed with *be* and the past participle of the verb. A number of modal auxiliary verbs and similar constructions are commonly used with *be*:

*The meat will be **chopped up** by the cook.*

*Mark would never be **picked up** at the airport by a limo.*

*This mess can be **straightened out** only by me.*

*Such a huge country couldn't be **taken over** easily.*

*Her name should be **crossed off** the list.*

*The gas tank ought to be **filled up** before you return the car.*

*The concert might be **sold out**.*

*Your paychecks may not be **picked up** until after 5:00.*

*The enemy must be **wiped out**.*

*I have to be **picked up** on time.*

*The fruit has to be **chopped up** with a clean knife.*

*This screwup had better be **straightened out** soon or you will be fired!*

*This stuff was supposed to be **taken over** to Nancy's house yesterday.*

Recall from [Unit 28](#) that phrasal verbs in the passive cannot be separated by an object because in a passive sentence there is no object.

Infinitive: chop up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
chop up & chops up	chopping up	chopped up	chopped up

1. **chop . . . up** *p.v.* When you **chop** something **up**, you cut it into small pieces with a knife or other sharp instrument.

*Does this meat have to be **chopped up**?*

***Chop** it **up** into pieces about half an inch in size.*

chopped up *part.adj.* After something has been cut into small pieces with a knife or other sharp instrument, it is **chopped up**.

*Mix the **chopped up** onions and celery with the mayonnaise.*

Infinitive: cross off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cross off & crosses off	crossing off	crossed off	crossed off

1. **cross . . . off** *p.v.* When you **cross** something **off** a list, you draw a line through it to remove it from the list.

*Why was my name **crossed off** the invitation list?*

***Crossing** it **off** was a mistake.*

crossed off *part.adj.* After a line has been drawn through something on a list to remove it from the list, it is **crossed off**.

*Here's the grocery list, but don't get this **crossed off** stuff—I already got it.*

Infinitive: fill up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
fill up & fills up	filling up	filled up	filled up

1. **fill . . . up** *p.v.* When you **fill** something **up**, you fill it completely.

*My radiator must be leaking. It has to be **filled up** with coolant every day.*

*We always **fill** the tank **up** when we're in Indiana because gas is cheaper there.*

filled up *part.adj.* After something has been completely **filled up**, it is **filled up**.

*These water containers don't weigh very much. Are you sure they're completely **filled up**?*

2. **fill . . . up** (on) *p.v.* When you **fill up** or **fill up** on something, you eat so much that you are no longer hungry and cannot eat any more.

*Don't **fill up** on salad—you won't have any room for dinner.*

*I **filled up** on candy and was really sick about an hour later.*

3. **fill up** *p.v.* When a room or other area **fills up**, people enter it until it is full.

*The dance floor **filled up** quickly when the band began to play.*

*The hotels in Rio de Janeiro always **fill up** at carnival time.*

Infinitive: pick up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

pick up & picks up	picking up	picked up	picked up
--------------------	------------	-----------	-----------

1. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick** something **up**, you lift it with your hand.

*All this trash has to be **picked up**.*

*Sam **picked up** his briefcase and left his office.*

2. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you go to a place to get something that was created, prepared, or left for you and is now ready, you **pick** it **up**.

*The garbage is supposed to be **picked up** before 9:00 A.M.*

*The travel agent said I could **pick** the tickets **up** tomorrow.*

pickup *n.* Something that is to be **picked up** or the process of **picking** it **up** is a **pickup**.

*The restaurant uses the back door for **pickups** and deliveries.*

3. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick** people **up**, you stop your vehicle and give them a ride away from that place.

*You'll be **picked up** at the airport by the hotel van.*

***Picking up** hitchhikers is dangerous.*

pickup *n.* Someone who is to be **picked up** or the process of **picking** someone **up** is a **pickup**.

*The taxi driver went to 2122 N. Clark Street for a **pickup**.*

4. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick** something **up** in a store, you quickly go into a store to buy something you need.

*I need to **pick up** some milk on the way home.*

*Could you **pick** a loaf of bread **up** on your way over?*

5. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick up** a skill, you learn it easily. When you **pick up** a habit, you acquire the habit.

*Children can **pick up** a new language very quickly.*

*My son is **picking** some bad habits **up** from his friends.*

6. **pick up** *p.v.* When you resume doing something at the point where you stopped doing it earlier, you **pick up** at that point.

*The teacher started the class by **picking up** where she had left off the previous week.*

*When you return to work after a long vacation, it's hard to know where to **pick up**.*

7. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick up** a radio or television station or a certain frequency on a receiver, you are able to tune it to that station or frequency.

*When the weather is right, you can **pick** radio stations **up** that are hundreds of miles away.*

*General Johnston's radio transmission was **picked up** by the enemy.*

8. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When the police or other authorities arrest people, they **pick them up**.

*The border patrol **picks up** several people every day trying to bring drugs into the country.*

*Charles was **picked up** for driving without a license.*

9. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you get something by chance without looking for it, you **pick it up**.

*I **picked up** a few stock tips from a guy I met on the plane.*

*Marsha **picked up** some interesting books at a used bookstore.*

10. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick up** the check or the tab (a *tab* is a list of money that someone owes) in a restaurant or other place, you pay it.

*Tom's really cheap. He never **picks up** the check.*

*Heather's father **picked up** the tab for the entire wedding.*

11. **pick up** *p.v.* When the speed, level, or condition of something increases or improves, it **picks up**.

*Business is slow this time of year, but it should **pick up** in December.*

*The song starts out slowly, but then it **picks up**.*

pickup *n.* An improvement in the speed, level, or condition of something is a **pickup**. If a motor vehicle is able to accelerate quickly, it has **pickup**.

*The company's profits increased after a **pickup** in sales.*

*I need to take my truck to the mechanic. It doesn't have any **pickup**.*

12. **pick . . . up** *p.v.* When you **pick up** a place that is messy, you organize or tidy it.

*Timmy's mother told him he couldn't play outside until he **picked up** his room.*

*Let's **pick this place up**—it's a mess.*

13. **pick . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **pick up** members of the opposite sex, you approach and successfully interest them in a sexual or romantic encounter.

*Hank tried to **pick up** Frank's sister at the party last night, but she wasn't interested.*

*Pat **picked up** someone, and they went to a cheap motel.*

Infinitive: sell out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sell out & sells out	selling out	sold out	sold out

1. **sell out** (of) *p.v.* [usually passive] When a store **sells out** of something or is **sold out** of something, it sells all of it.

*The toy store **sold out** of antigravity boots in two days.*

*I wanted to buy that new computer game, but every store I went to was **sold out** of it.*

sold out *part.adj.* After all of something for sale in a store has been sold, the item is **sold out**.

*I saw the most beautiful shoes at the mall, but my size was all **sold out**.*

sold out *part.adj.* After all the tickets to a concert, play, or other public performance have been sold, the event is **sold out**.

*You'll never get a ticket for the Super Bowl—it's been **sold out** for weeks.*

Infinitive: straighten out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
straighten out & straightens out	straightening out	straightened out	straightened out

1. **straighten . . . out** *p.v.* When something is bent, crooked, or curved and you make it straight, you **straighten** it **out**.

*My elbow is so swollen that I can't **straighten** my arm **out**.*

*As the city grew, many of the winding streets were **straightened out**.*

2. **straighten . . . out** *p.v.* When you **straighten out** a confused situation or misunderstanding, you take steps to make it understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved. **Sort out** is similar to **straighten out**.

*My hotel had me booked for the wrong days in the wrong room, but the manager **straightened** everything **out**.*

*Save your questions for the meeting. Everything will be **straightened out** then.*

straightened out *part.adj.* After a confused situation or misunderstanding has been made understandable and satisfactory to everyone involved, it is **straightened out**. **Sorted out** is similar to **straightened out**.

*Erik was upset with Dan, but they had a talk and now everything is **straightened out**.*

3. **straighten . . . out** *p.v.* When you **straighten out** people who are acting foolishly, you do or say something that causes them to act more responsibly. When you **straighten out** people who are confused, you help them to understand.

*I told my son that if he gets in trouble one more time, I'm going to send him to military school. That really **straightened him out**.*

*I'm totally confused about what I'm supposed to do. Can you **straighten me out**?*

Infinitive: take over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take over & takes over	taking over	took over	taken over

1. **take . . . over** *p.v.* When people, groups, or countries take control of a place by force, they **take it over**.

*After the government troops fled, the country was **taken over** by the rebels.*

*The hijackers **took over** the plane and ordered the pilot to fly to Havana.*

takeover *n.* A **takeover** is an action to take control of a country, city, building, or other place by force.

*If the situation doesn't stabilize soon, there's a real chance of a military **takeover**.*

2. **take over** (from/as) *p.v.* When people are elected, appointed, or hired to take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, etc., and to replace the people in control, they **take over**, **take over** as something, or **take over** from someone.

*Jim Kennedy will be **taking over** as sales manager next year.*

*Kennedy **took over** from Karen Bonner, who had been the sales manager for fourteen years.*

takeover *n.* When people who are elected, appointed, or hired take control of a country, state, city, business, school, building, etc., and replace the people in control, a **takeover** occurs.

*After the **takeover**, the new president made a lot of changes.*

3. **take over** (for) *p.v.* When you start to do a job or some work that other people are doing in order to allow them to take a break or because the previous shift has ended and a new shift has begun, you **take over**. When you assume an obligation or accept responsibility from someone, you **take it over**.

*We work from 4:00 P.M. to midnight, and then the night shift **takes over**.*

*When Linda was sick she couldn't care for her children, so her sister **took over** for her until she was well again.*

4. **take . . . over** (to) *p.v.* When you take something from one place to another, you **take it over** or **take it over** to a person or place.

*Jane's at home sick, so I'm going to **take** some chicken soup **over**.*

*After I finished my report, I **took it over** to the finance department.*

Infinitive: wipe out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wipe out & wipes out	wiping out	wiped out	wiped out

1. **wipe . . . out** *p.v.* When you remove dirt or liquid from the inside of a container with a cloth, sponge, or paper towel, you **wipe it out**.

***Wipe** the microwave **out**—it's got spaghetti sauce inside it.*

*I **wiped out** the inside of the glasses so they wouldn't dry with spots.*

2. **wipe . . . out** *p.v.* When you are trying to kill people, weeds, insects, etc., and you kill all of them, you **wipe them out**.

*An entire regiment was **wiped out** in the battle.*

*The general said he would **wipe out** the rebels.*

wipeout *n.* A situation in which all people, weeds, insects, etc., are killed is a **wipeout**.

*The battle was a complete **wipeout**. Not a single soldier survived.*

PRACTICE

39-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Your pictures are ready and can be _____ between 10:00 A.M. and 6:00 P.M.
2. I didn't get the book I wanted because the store was _____ of them.
3. There's a lot of confusion about the new policy. We need to have a meeting to _____ everything _____.

4. The vice president _____ after the president died.
5. Susie, your room is very messy. Come in here and _____ it _____ right now!
6. Mr. Nelson asked me to _____ for Lydia while she's on vacation.
7. Sales of air conditioners always _____ in the spring.
8. If we get a bigger antenna, we might be able to _____ a lot more stations _____.
9. It took me an hour to _____ everything for the beef stew.
10. The soldiers were ordered to _____ the enemy soldiers.
11. My wife called and asked me to _____ a few things on the way home.
12. A country this weak could be _____ in a few days.
13. I wish I hadn't _____ on bread. Now I can't finish my dinner.
14. I'm going to play golf with Charles next week. He's really good, so maybe I can _____ a few ways to improve my game.
15. The theater _____ ten minutes before the start of the opera.
16. My car's frame was so badly damaged in the accident that there was no way it could be _____.
17. You don't need to take any money to the restaurant. Karen said she would _____ the check.
18. Don't just clean the outsides of the desks. _____ the insides _____, too.
19. I'll be arriving at 3:40 A.M. Would _____ me _____ that early be a problem?
20. Hank's giving orders like he's the president of the company. Someone needs to _____ him _____.
21. Smoking is a bad habit that I _____ in the Navy.

22. Let's _____ these canteens before we begin our hike.
23. This couch is really heavy. Can you help me _____ it _____?
24. After you get your paycheck, you can _____ it _____ to the cashier to cash it.
25. Can you believe what Hank did? He tried to _____ the boss's daughter at the company picnic.
26. I finished page 47 yesterday, so I'll _____ on page 48 today.
27. You can _____ my name _____ the list. I've changed my mind.

39-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. Have you *chopped up*? (the onions, them)
2. You can *cross off*. (Linda's name, her)
3. *Fill up* with water. (the aquarium, it)
4. I need to *pick up* at the train station. (my parents, them)
5. Can you *straighten out*? (this mess, it)
6. The rebels *took over*. (the royal palace, it)
7. They *wiped out*. (the palace guard, them)

39-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The construction business always improves in the spring. What does the construction business always do?
2. Pirates might take control of the ship. What might happen to the ship?
3. In Question 2, if pirates took control of the ship, what would this action be called?
4. There was a misunderstanding at work, but Nicole explained everything to the people involved, and now they understand. What did she do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe the misunderstanding now?

6. Frank was supposed to go to the factory so he could give Ned a ride home. What was supposed to happen to Ned?
7. All the people in the town will be killed when the enemy captures it. What will happen to all the people in the town?
8. Someone ought to draw a line through Karen's name on the list. What ought to be done to Karen's name?
9. In Question 8, how would you describe Karen's name after someone draws a line through it?
10. Sarah went to the store to buy a CD, but they had all been sold. What did the store do?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe the CDs?
12. Tom tried to buy a ticket for the concert, but all the tickets had been sold. Why couldn't Tom buy a ticket for the concert?
13. You cut some bacon into very small pieces before you put it on your salad. What was done to the bacon?
14. The laundry closes at 6:00, so Jane has to go there before 6:00 to get her dress. What has to be done to the dress?
15. The copilot flew the plane so that the pilot could eat dinner. What did the copilot do?
16. Todd often asks me to stop at the store and buy a newspaper. What does Todd often ask me to do?
17. I'll tell Susie not to make the water in the bathtub rise all the way to the top and go over the side. What will I tell Susie?
18. I stopped writing my book at page 94 and later started writing again on page 95. What did I do?

39-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

bite off, 27	come out, 32	leave out, 32	pull over, 19
blow up, 33	cut down, 23	look over, 21	settle down,
break off, 27	hand over, 19	make up, 23	slow down,
bring back, 19	knock off, 27	pick on, 21	wear down,

1. David's mother told him she'd like some grandchildren, but he's having too much fun as a bachelor and isn't interested in _____.
2. I didn't finish my work because I was training a new employee, and explaining everything really _____ me _____.
3. Bob's doctor told him he was doing too much weight lifting and that he should _____.
4. The movie wasn't the same as the novel. Several characters were _____.
5. When I caught my sixteen-year-old daughter smoking cigarettes, I really _____.
6. I didn't say you could use my car. _____ those keys right now!
7. There must be something wrong with my camera—none of the pictures I took _____.
8. Can I borrow your food processor? I promise I'll _____ it _____ tomorrow.
9. We've been working since 7:00 A.M. Let's _____ and finish tomorrow.
10. Everything on the menu looks delicious. I just can't _____ my mind.
11. If you don't stop _____ me, I'm going to tell Mommy.
12. I told Mark not to pet the lion, but he didn't listen, and his hand was _____.
13. He realized he was lost, so he _____ his car _____ and looked at a map.
14. My son asked me for a motorcycle for his birthday, but I told him no, so he's trying to _____ me _____ by asking me again and again and again.
15. I gave my job application to the human resources director, and he said he'd _____ it _____ and give me a call.
16. Do you have any glue? One of the arms has _____ this ceramic doll.

Unit 40

Gerund Phrasal Verbs vs. Phrasal Verbs Followed by the *-ing* Form

We have seen in previous units that phrasal verbs are sometimes followed by the *-ing* form. We have also seen that transitive phrasal verbs sometimes take gerund objects. At a glance, there seems to be no difference between these two constructions:

Jim went away singing.

adverb

Jim stuck with singing.

gerund

But because a gerund is a verb functioning as a noun, it can be replaced with an ordinary nongerund noun. However, this is not true of the *-ing* form:

~~*Jim went away it.*~~

Jim stuck with it.

Infinitive: blow off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
blow off & blows off	blowing off	blew off	blown off

1. **blow . . . off** *p.v. [informal]* When you do not do something that you are supposed to do because you do not want to or because you do not think it is important, you **blow** it **off**.

*I was supposed to report for jury duty Monday morning, but I **blew it off**.*

*Bob was sick, so he **blew off** helping Marsha fix her car.*

Infinitive: bring up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
bring up & brings up	bringing up	brought up	brought up

1. **bring . . . up** (to) *p.v.* When people bring something from a higher level or position or from south to north to where you are, they **bring it up** or **bring it up** to where you are.

*Would you please go downstairs and **bring up** the package that was just delivered?*

*The rescue workers **brought morphine up** to the injured mountain climber.*

2. **bring . . . up** *p.v.* When you introduce a new topic into a conversation, you **bring it up**.

*Last night during dinner, Dad **brought up** the idea of saving money by staying home instead of taking a vacation this year.*

*You and your big mouth! We were having a great time until you **brought that up**.*

3. **bring . . . up** (to) *p.v.* When you **bring up** children, you care for them as they grow to adulthood. When you **bring up** children to believe something or to behave in a certain way, you try to teach this belief or behavior to them.

*Tom was born in Canada, but he was **brought up** in the United States.*

***Bringing** quadruplets **up** is a lot of work.*

*I was **brought up** to believe in honesty and compassion.*

Infinitive: burst out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
burst out & bursts out	bursting out	burst out	burst out

1. **burst out** *p.v.* When you **burst out** laughing or crying, you begin laughing or crying loudly and suddenly.

*Heather **burst out** laughing when I fell into the swimming pool.*

*When Sam heard the news, he **burst out** crying.*

Infinitive: come back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come back & comes back	coming back	came back	come back

1. **come back** (to/from) *p.v.* When people return to a place where you are, they **come back** or **come back** to that place or **come back** from the place where they were before.

*Todd went to Florida thinking it would be hot and sunny, but he **came back** talking about how cold and rainy it was.*
*I'm never **coming back** to this awful place again.*

2. **come back** *p.v.* When people, organizations, companies, or athletes overcome difficulties and become successful again, they **come back**.

*My home team **came back** from last place and won the championship.*
*Senator Dolittle lost in 1988, but he **came back** to win in 1994.*

comeback *n.* When people, organizations, companies, or sports teams overcome difficulties and become successful again, they make a **comeback**.

*The Bulls were down by thirty-four points but won the game with an eighteen-point lead—what a **comeback**!*

3. **come back** *p.v.* When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it **comes back**.

*I need to see the doctor. The pain in my shoulder has **come back**.*
*There isn't much chance that smallpox will **come back** any time soon.*

comeback *n.* When a condition, problem, situation, or activity returns or greatly increases, it makes a **comeback**.

*Health officials are concerned that tuberculosis is making a **comeback**.*

4. **come back** *p.v.* When a fashion or fad **comes back**, it becomes popular again.

*Miniskirts are **coming back** this year.*
*Western movies and TV shows go out of style and then **come back** every few years.*

comeback *n.* When a fashion or fad becomes popular again, it makes a **comeback**.

*I saved all my wide neckties because I knew they'd make a **comeback** someday.*

Infinitive: get off on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get off on & gets off on	getting off on	got off on	gotten off on

1. **get off on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **get off on** something or **get off on** doing something, you find it enjoyable and exciting.

*Sally loves winter sports, and she especially **gets off on** snowboarding.*

*Mountain climbing is what I **get off on**.*

Infinitive: go away			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
go away & goes away	going away	went away	gone away

1. **go away** *p.v.* When you leave a place or leave a person, you **go away**.

***Go away!** I'm trying to study.*

*Mark **went away** not realizing he had left his briefcase behind.*

2. **go away** (for) *p.v.* When you travel for a period of time, you **go away** for this time.

*We always **go away** for a few weeks in the winter.*

*Lydia is going to **go away** for a while.*

3. **go away** (to) *p.v.* When you leave your home and live temporarily at another place, such as a school, you **go away** to that place.

*Jane didn't **go away** to school. She went to a school near her home.*

*Some young people are nervous about **going away** to school, but others look forward to it.*

4. **go away** *p.v.* When a condition, problem, situation, or activity disappears or greatly decreases, it **goes away**.

*I have a pain in my back that never **goes away**.*

*If the rain doesn't **go away**, we'll have to call off the game.*

Infinitive: run around			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run around & runs around	running around	ran around	run around

1. **run around** *p.v.* When you **run around** a place, you run to various parts of it.

*The cat **ran around** the room chasing the mouse.*

*The children were **running around** the museum, and the guard told them to stop.*

2. **run around** *p.v.* When you **run around** doing something, you go to various places trying urgently to accomplish something that is important to you.

*The woman was **running around** the store looking for her lost child.*

*We **ran around** the house trying to rescue whatever we could from the rising floodwater.*

runaround *n.* When people are not honest with you or helpful to you, they give you the **runaround**.

*Why didn't you just tell me the truth instead of giving me the **runaround**?*

Infinitive: stick with			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stick with & sticks with	sticking with	stuck with	stuck with

1. **stick with** *p.v.* When you **stick with** a habit, plan, or type of work, you continue as before, without change. **Stick to** is similar to **stick with**.

*My mother always **stuck with** Swedish Christmas traditions that she learned from her parents.*

*Todd thought about a career change but decided to **stick with** teaching.*

2. **stick with** *p.v.* When you **stick with** something that you use, you continue to use it.

*My wife wants me to switch to decaffeinated coffee, but I'm going to **stick with** regular.*

*My mother has **stuck with** Ivory Soap for forty years.*

3. **stick with** *p.v.* When you **stick with** people, you remain with them or remain loyal to them.

*It'll be very crowded at the festival, so **stick with** me so you don't get lost.*

*That other guy running for senator has some good ideas, but I'm going to **stick with** Senator Dolittle.*

4. **stick . . . with** *p.v.* When you **stick** people **with** something, you force them to take something or deal with something undesirable or unpleasant.

*I'm sorry to **stick** you **with** all this work, but you're the only one who can do it.*

*The shoes I bought don't fit, but the store where I bought them doesn't accept returns, so I guess I'm **stuck with** them.*

PRACTICE

40-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I didn't know anyone at the party except Leticia, so I _____ her.
2. All Timmy's friends are _____ for the summer, so he won't have anyone to play with.
3. I have a job interview at 8:30 Monday morning, but that's too early for me, so maybe I'll just _____ it _____.
4. Miguel was surprised by how much he enjoyed watching figure skating. He really _____ it.
5. Linda _____ from the party talking about what a good time she had.
6. Susie's birthday party exhausted me. The kids were _____ yelling and screaming for hours.
7. I gave my grandfather a computer, but he said he'd rather _____ his old typewriter.
8. My grandmother was _____ on a farm, but she moved to the city when she got married.
9. Dan _____ buying a motorboat, but his wife said it was a crazy idea.
10. I know running is great exercise, but I'm going to _____ swimming.
11. I hope high-heel shoes never _____. They're so uncomfortable.
12. The strange noise in my engine has _____, so I'm going to take the car to a mechanic again.
13. I asked the mechanic why the sound keeps _____ and coming back.
14. Bob's joke was pretty funny. Everyone _____ laughing.

15. Betty smelled smoke, and she _____ the house frantically looking for the source.
16. Why does the boss _____ me _____ making coffee every morning? Why can't someone else do it?
17. I saved my father a lot of money by not _____ to school.
18. After his defeat, the former champion said he would _____.
19. Frank came to my door with flowers and an apology, but I told him to _____.
20. Whenever my brother in Florida visits me here in Minnesota, he _____ some oranges _____.

40-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. They're not following the original plan. What aren't they doing?
2. I took some aspirin, and my headache was gone for a while, but now I have a headache again. What did my headache do?
3. You started to cry suddenly and loudly. What did you do?
4. Hank was supposed to meet with his lawyer in the morning, but he didn't go because he wanted to sleep late. What did Hank do to his meeting with his parole officer?
5. The hotel desk clerk didn't tell me he had canceled my reservation by mistake. Instead he invented a lot of crazy excuses that he knew weren't true. What did the hotel desk clerk do?
6. Todd's sister was very upset, and he asked what the problem was, but she told him to leave her alone. What did Todd's sister ask him to do?
7. Skiing is what Heather likes more than anything. How does Heather feel about skiing?
8. Everyone in the factory was busy, so when the delivery truck came, David was forced to unload it by himself. What happened to David?
9. Nancy began talking about joining the Peace Corps. What did Nancy do?
10. The number of people with malaria decreased, but now the number is increasing every year. What is malaria doing?

11. Poverty is a problem that never decreases or disappears. What doesn't poverty do?
12. You went on a business trip three weeks ago, and you haven't returned yet. What haven't you done yet?
13. There was a fire in Ned's office, so he ran to various places looking for a fire extinguisher. What did Ned do?
14. It would be nice to leave this city for a week or two. What would be nice?
15. When I was young, my parents taught me to believe in the golden rule. What did my parents do?

40-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit. Try to use either gerunds or the *-ing* form.

40-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

back down, 36	go down, 36	lead up to, 34	stick around
do over, 34	go out, 32	make of, 35	stick to, 34
fool around, 35	hold against, 35	put up to, 34	take back, 3
go by, 35	lay down, 36	run down, 36	trick into, 34

1. At school, Luis got into a lot of trouble for something I did, and now he _____ it _____ me.
2. If I could _____ it _____ again, I'd do it differently.
3. The price of gas is expected to _____ to \$4 a gallon within a month.
4. The light suddenly _____, and I couldn't see a thing.
5. Do you have to go already? Can't you _____ for a few minutes?
6. We don't want to forget anything, so let's _____ the list one more time to be sure.
7. The announcement was a real surprise. I'm not sure what to _____ it.

8. This book I bought is missing some pages. Can you _____ it _____ to the bookstore for me tomorrow?
9. Crime was getting out of control, so a new sheriff was elected who promised to _____ the law.
10. That gun is loaded, so I wouldn't _____ with it if I were you.
11. After I threatened to go to the police and tell them everything, he _____ and stopped making threats.
12. My brother always thought I would be a failure, so now that I'm rich, I love to _____ it _____ him by complaining about how hard it is to keep a 30-room house clean.
13. My son is a good boy. If he was shoplifting, I'm sure someone _____ him _____ it.
14. In my history class we studied the various things that _____ the current situation.
15. The month we spent in Italy was a lot of fun, but it seemed to _____ so quickly.
16. My brother-in-law is so sneaky. He tried to _____ me _____ telling him the combination to my safe.

Unit 41

Two-Word Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *In* that Require *Into* when Used with an Object

We have seen in [Units 9](#) and [23](#) that some two-word phrasal verbs require a preposition when they are transitive, which makes them three-word phrasal verbs. Many phrasal verbs with the particle *in* have a meaning that relates to *entering* or *penetrating*. When what is being entered or penetrated is named, these verbs become transitive; however, this is not done by adding a preposition but by changing *in* to *into*:

*The thief **broke in**.*

*The thieves **broke into** the jewelry store.*

But this is true only for meanings of the phrasal verb that relate to entering or penetrating, not for all meanings. Some meanings with *in* have no *into* version (and are included in this unit), and some meanings with *into* have no *in* version (and are not included in this unit). Moreover, sometimes *into* is optional, and the verb can be used transitively with either *in* or *into*.

We see also in this unit that there is often a phrasal verb with an opposite meaning with *in* and *into* corresponding to *out* and *out of*:

*I **sneaked in**.*

*I **sneaked out**.*

*I **sneaked into** the house.*

*I **sneaked out of** the house.*

Infinitive: break in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
break in & breaks in	breaking in	broke in	broken in

1. **break in/into** *p.v.* When you **break in** or **break into** a place, you enter illegally by using force or deception.

*A thief **broke in** and stole my TV.*

*When I saw the smashed glass in the street, I knew my car had been **broken into**.*

break-in *n.* A **break-in** is an illegal entry into a place using force or deception.

*The police investigated a **break-in** at the supermarket.*

2. **break . . . in** *p.v.* When you **break in** a new mechanical device or a car, you use it slowly and carefully until you are sure it is ready for heavier use. When you **break in** a pair of shoes, you wear them only occasionally and for a short time until they are comfortable. When you **break in** people at a new job, you train and supervise them and give them less than the normal amount of work until they are ready for something more difficult.

*I don't want to wear these boots on the expedition. I haven't **broken them in** yet.*

*We're **breaking in** a new secretary, so things have been a bit confused at our office lately.*

broken in *part.adj.* After you **break in** a new mechanical device or a car, a pair of shoes, or people at a new job, they are **broken in**.

*I don't want to wear those shoes to the dance. They're not **broken in** yet.*

Infinitive: check in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
check in & checks in	checking in	checked in	checked in

1. **check in/into** *p.v.* When you arrive at a hotel and arrange for a room, you **check in** or **check into** the hotel.

*After I arrive in Denver, I'll go straight to my hotel and **check in**.*

*Jim **checked into** the hotel while I called home to check on the kids.*

2. **check . . . in** *p.v.* When you arrive at an airport and receive a boarding pass, you **check in**.

*You should **check in** at least two hours before your flight.*

*You can wait over there in the lobby while I **check** you **in**.*

check-in *n.* The counter at an airport where you receive a boarding pass is the **check-in** or the **check-in** counter. The process of **checking in** is **check-in**.

*Before your flight you have to go to the **check-in** counter.*

3. **check . . . in** *p.v.* When you give your luggage to an airline agent so that it will be carried in the baggage compartment rather than the passenger compartment, you **check it in**.

*That bag is too big for carry-on—you'll have to **check it in**.*

checked in *part.adj.* Luggage that has been **checked in** or passengers that have **checked in** are **checked in**.

*Now that we're **checked in**, we can wait in the boarding lounge.*

4. **check in** (with) *p.v.* When you visit or call people briefly and regularly because you want to get or receive important information from them or to make sure that a situation you are both interested in is satisfactory, you **check in** or **check in** with them.

*After surgery, you'll need to **check in** once in a while to make sure the bone is healing properly.*

*If Hank doesn't **check in** with his parole officer every week, the police will arrest him.*

Infinitive: check out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
check out & checks out	checking out	checked out	checked out

1. **check out** (of) *p.v.* When you pay your bill, return your key, and leave a hotel, you **check out** or **check out** of the hotel.

*There's always a long line of people waiting to **check out** at that time of the morning.*

*Mrs. Garcia **checked out** of her hotel and took a taxi to the airport.*

checked out *part.adj.* After you have paid your bill, returned your key, and left a hotel, you are **checked out**.

*OK, we're **checked out**. Now let's get a taxi and go to the airport.*

checkout *n.* The time before which you must **check out** of a hotel in order to avoid paying for another day is the **checkout** time.

*We can sleep late tomorrow. **Checkout** time isn't until 1:00 P.M.*

2. **check . . . out** *p.v.* When you **check** a place or thing **out**, you inspect it carefully or learn more about it.

*That new Mexican restaurant is great—you should **check it out**.*

*Hey George, **check out** that car Todd is driving. When did he buy it?*

3. **check . . . out** *p.v.* When you **check** people **out**, you investigate them in order to learn more about them. If you say that people **check out**, you mean that the information they

have given you about themselves, such as their education and work experience, has been investigated and found to be accurate.

*Applicants for child care jobs should be thoroughly **checked out**.*

*Before you give that guy money to invest, you should **check him out**.*

*Frank didn't get the job he wanted with the CIA. Some things on his résumé didn't **check out**.*

4. **check out** *p.v.* When you **check out** at a store, you bring the items you want to buy to the cashier and pay for them.

*The store's closing in a few minutes. We'd better **check out**.*

*Look at this line. It's going to take forever to **check out**.*

- checkout** *n.* The **checkout** or the **checkout** counter is where you pay for items in a store.

*You get the bathroom stuff, I'll get the groceries, and we'll meet at the **checkout** counter.*

Infinitive: let in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
let in & lets in	letting in	let in	let in

1. **let . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **let** people or things **in** or **let** people or things **into** a place, building, room, etc., you allow them to enter by giving them permission to enter or by opening a door, gate, etc.

*When the guests arrived, the butler opened the door to **let them in**.*

*The guard wouldn't **let me into** the stadium because I had forgotten my ticket.*

2. **let . . . in/into** *p.v.* When an opening, such as a window, door, hole, crack, etc., allows something to enter, it **lets it in**.

*That small window doesn't **let in** enough light to read by.*

*The hole in the screen is **letting** the mosquitoes **into** the house.*

Infinitive: plug in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
plug in & plugs in	plugging in	plugged in	plugged in

1. **plug . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you connect an electrical device to an electrical outlet, you **plug it in** or **plug it into** the outlet. When you connect any cord or cable to a socket designed to receive it, you **plug it in** or **plug it into** the socket.

*I **plugged** my 110-volt TV **into** a 220-volt outlet and it blew up.*

*This phone isn't broken; you just forgot to **plug** the phone cord **in**.*

plugged in *part.adj.* When an electrical device is connected to an electrical outlet, it is **plugged in**.

*Be careful with that iron—it's **plugged in**.*

Infinitive: sneak in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sneak in & sneaks in	sneaking in	sneaked in	sneaked in

1. **sneak in/into** *p.v.* When you enter a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you **sneak in** or **sneak into** the place.

*When I was a kid I used to **sneak into** the movie theater through the emergency exit.*

*If you don't have a ticket for the game, you'll have to **sneak in**.*

2. **sneak . . . in/into** *p.v. [always separated unless passive]* When you bring a person or thing into a place without the knowledge of other people in the place, you **sneak** that person or thing **into** that place.

*Jake **sneaked** drugs **into** the prison when he visited Marty.*

*Many people try to **sneak** alcohol **into** theaters when they go to concerts.*

Infinitive: sneak out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
sneak out & sneaks out	sneaking out	sneaked out	sneaked out

1. **sneak out (of)** *p.v.* When you leave a place without anyone seeing or hearing you, you **sneak out** or **sneak out of** the place.

*Susie's father told her to stay upstairs in her room, but she **sneaked out** through the window.*

*The principal caught me **sneaking out** of my chemistry class.*

2. **sneak...out** (of) *p.v.* [always separated unless passive] When you take a person or thing out of a place without the knowledge of other people in the place, you **sneak** that person or thing **out** of that place.

*The restaurant cook was fired for **sneaking** steaks **out** of the restaurant's back door.*

*One of the students **sneaked** a copy of the test **out** of the classroom.*

Infinitive: squeeze in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
squeeze in & squeezes in	squeezing in	squeezed in	squeeze in

1. **squeeze...in/into** *p.v.* When you are able to do something even though you don't have much time, you **squeeze** it **in**. When you are able to fit something into a plan or schedule even though you don't have much time, you **squeeze** it **in** or **squeeze** it **into** the plan or schedule. When you are able to fit something into a small space, you **squeeze** it **in** or **squeeze** it **into** the small space.

*The senator **squeezed** a meeting with the CNN reporter **into** her busy schedule.*

*The doctor was going to be busy all day, but I asked the receptionist if she could **squeeze** me **in**.*

*I'm amazed that you were able to **squeeze** that sofa **into** your closet.*

2. **squeeze in/into** *p.v.* When people or animals fit into a small space, they **squeeze in**.

*My car is really small, so you're all going to have to **squeeze in**.*

*Cats can **squeeze into** very small spaces.*

PRACTICE

41-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Close the door! You're _____ the bugs _____.
2. One of the students _____ his teacher's office and stole the answers for the final exam.
3. My grandfather always _____ a new car by not driving it over fifty miles per hour until it had gone 1,000 miles.

4. Mark told me he bought a new computer. Let's go to his house and _____ it _____.
5. My laptop computer is in this bag, so I think it would be better to keep it with me on the flight than to _____ it _____.
6. These speakers _____ sockets in the back of the stereo.
7. I'm going to London on a business trip, but I'm going to try to _____ a visit to the Tower of London _____.
8. When I'm away on a business trip, I always _____ with my office every morning.
9. I was late for class, so I waited until the teacher wasn't looking and _____.
10. My mother caught me trying to _____ food _____ of the kitchen to give to our dog.
11. I don't trust that guy my daughter wants to marry. I'm going to _____ him _____.
12. Dinner is being served. Let's _____ the dining room.
13. There's a crack in the basement wall that's _____ water.
14. At the supermarket you can _____ in the express line only if you have fewer than fifteen items.
15. We'll _____ the Grand Hotel on Wednesday.
16. After a week at the hotel, we'll _____ and go home.
17. Any burglar who tries to _____ my house is going to get a big surprise—I've got three big dogs that aren't very friendly.
18. I _____ only fifteen minutes before my flight time, and I almost missed the plane.
19. When I worked at a movie theater, I used to _____ my friends _____ the theater without tickets.
20. I had ten people over for dinner, and my dining room table is big enough for only six people, so we really had to _____.

41-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Janice entered the house quietly so that no one would hear her. What did Janice do?
2. Lydia unlocked the door so that her brother could enter the house. What did Lydia do?
3. Ms. Birch paid her hotel bill and left. What did Ms. Birch do?
4. In Question 3, Ms. Birch had to leave the hotel before noon so that she would not have to pay for another day. What is noon at the hotel?
5. The window of Nancy's house was broken, and her jewelry, TV, and computer were gone. What happened to Nancy's house?
6. In Question 5, what happened at Nancy's house?
7. When I arrive at the airport, I'll give my ticket to the agent, and she'll give me a boarding pass. What will I do at the airport?
8. In Question 7, where will I go in the airport?
9. The dentist was able to see me even though I didn't have an appointment. What did she do?
10. I saw an interesting house with a "for sale" sign on Pine Street as I was driving home. Tomorrow I'll stop and learn more about it. What will I do to the house tomorrow?
11. When Erik flies to Colorado to go skiing, he always gives his skis to the airline agent so that they will be put in the baggage compartment. What does Erik always do with his skis?
12. In Question 11, how would you describe Erik's skis after he gives them to the airline agent?
13. You opened the window quietly, when no one was looking, and left your house. What did you do?
14. Mr. Baker hasn't arrived at his hotel and arranged for a room yet. What hasn't Mr. Baker done yet?
15. Hank bought a new video game system and connected the plug to the outlet. What did Hank do?
16. In Question 15, how would you describe Hank's new video game system?

17. It's getting harder every year to fit into my old Army uniform for the 4th of July parade. What is getting harder every year?
18. Before Ned was hired for his job in a nursing home, the human resources manager at the nursing home called his previous employer and asked questions about Ned. What was done to Ned?
19. My feet are killing me. It wasn't very smart to wear new hiking boots that aren't soft and comfortable. Why are my feet killing me?

41-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit.

41-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

blow off, 40	get off on, 40	max out, 33	straighten out, 39
come on, 37	go away, 40	narrow down, 35	take over, 39
come to, 21	hang out, 37	pitch in, 35	
dumb down, 37	leave over, 37	put down, 36	
fill up, 39	let down, 37	start out, 20	

1. I hope you like spaghetti, because so much was _____ after the party that we're going to be eating it for a week.
2. My son has promised me a hundred times that he'll stay out of trouble and work harder in school, but he always _____ me _____.
3. I want to watch the news. It's going to _____ as soon as this game is over.
4. Even though you don't like your brother, you shouldn't _____ him _____ in front of his children.
5. Today _____ cold and rainy, but now the sun is out, and it's a lot warmer.
6. When my daughter went away to college, I gave her a credit card with a \$5,000 limit, and she _____ it _____ in less than a month.
7. I've got a dentist appointment tomorrow at 4:00, but if you want to go to the beach, I can _____ it _____.

8. The company was considering eight cities for the new factory, but they've _____ it _____ to three.
9. A lot of the employees are confused about the new contract. We should ask management to have a meeting so that we can _____ everything _____.
10. Lydia is going to _____ _____ for Judy during her maternity leave.
11. Marty went back on his word. We had a big project, and he promised to _____ _____, but he never showed up.
12. The commercial on TV said that if you _____ your car's gas tank _____ with their gas, you'd get better mileage and a cleaner engine.
13. We're planning to _____ _____ for a few weeks. Would you mind watering our plants until we return?
14. David put a pool table and a pinball machine in his basement. It's a great place to _____ _____ and relax.
15. The principal told me that I would need to _____ the test _____ to make sure that no students failed.
16. Bob is very kind and generous. He _____ _____ helping other people.
17. The shooting victim is unconscious now, but when he _____ _____, the police want to ask him some questions.

Unit 42

Phrasal Verbs with *Get*, Part 1

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb *get*, and it is important to understand that the meaning of *get* in these verbs is not the same as the nonphrasal form of *get*, meaning *receive*. Instead, *get* has a meaning similar to *become* or *change to*:

*I **got up** at 6:00.* (I was not up before, and then I became up—I changed from not being up to being up.)

Many phrasal verbs with *get* that relate to a change in physical location might seem identical in meaning to a variety of phrasal verbs using *come*, *go*, and other verbs that describe physical movement, such as *walk*, *run*, *move*, etc., and often they can be used with little difference in meaning:

*I **came back** last night.*

*I **got back** last night.*

But there is a difference: *get* emphasizes the change in location; *come*, *go*, etc., emphasize the movement from one location to another.

It is very common to use the adverbs *right* and *back* with *get* phrasal verbs. To review the adverb *right*, see [Units 19](#) and [22](#). To review the adverb *back*, review [Unit 26](#) (and do not confuse the adverb *back* with the particle *back*).

Note that two forms of the past participle of *get* are shown: *gotten* and *got*. *Gotten* is more common in American English, but *got* is occasionally used. Both are correct.

Infinitive: get back			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get back & gets back	getting back	got back	gotten/got back

1. **get back** (to) *p.v.* When you return to a level or place where you were before, you **get back** or **get back** to that place.

*We left three weeks ago, and we didn't **get back** until yesterday.*

*Where are you going? **Get right back** here!*

*Mark lost a lot of weight when he was sick, and it took him a long time to **get back** to his old weight.*

2. **get . . . back** (to) *p.v.* When you **get** something **back** or **get** something **back** to a person or place, you return it to that person or place.

*Jim uses his mother's car in the morning, but she needs it to go to work at 4:30, so he has to **get it back** before then.*

*I have to **get** these books **back** to the library—they're overdue.*

3. **get . . . back** (from) *p.v.* When you **get** something **back** or **get** something **back** from someone or someplace, you have something that you had before.

*I couldn't believe I **got** my stolen car **back**.*

*Jim borrowed a book from me three years ago, and I still haven't **gotten it back** from him.*

4. **get back** (from) *p.v.* When you **get back** or **get back** from something that is very hot or dangerous or that you should not be near, you move away from it so that there is more distance between you and it.

***Get back** from the edge of the cliff! You might fall.*

*As the President came closer, the police told the crowd to **get back**.*

Infinitive: get behind

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get behind & gets behind	getting behind	got behind	gotten/got behind

1. **get behind** (in) *p.v.* When you are in a group that is studying or working, etc., and they learn faster or get more work done because you are learning or working more slowly than the others, you **get behind** or **get behind** in your studies or work. When you do not complete work as fast as originally planned and expected, you **get behind** schedule. **Keep up** is the opposite of **get behind**. **Fall behind** is similar to **get behind**.

*Linda had some problems last semester, and she **got behind** in her studies.*

*With all the bad weather we've been having, the construction project has **gotten way behind** schedule.*

Infinitive: get by

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get by & gets by	getting by	got by	gotten/got by

1. **get by** *p.v.* When you **get by** or **get by** something, you pass something or someone while you are walking or driving even though it may be difficult because there is not enough room.

*Can you move all that junk in the hallway please? It's hard for people to **get by**.
There was an accident on the highway, and no one could **get by**.*

2. **get by** (on) *p.v.* When you **get by** or **get by** on a limited amount of money or income, you continue with your life even though it may be difficult.

*Don't worry about me. I'll **get by** somehow.
It's not easy **getting by** on my low salary.*

3. **get by** *p.v.* When something, such as a mistake or a problem, **gets by** you, you do not notice it.

*I've got a great editor. No mistakes **get by** her.
I checked this report twice. How did all these misspellings **get by** me?*

Infinitive: get down

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get down & gets down	getting down	got down	gotten/got down

1. **get down** (to) *p.v.* When you move to a lower level or place or from north to south, you **get down** or **get down** to that level or place. **Get up** is the opposite of **get down**. **Go down** is similar to **get down**.

*You're going to fall out of that tree and break your neck. **Get down** right now!
The first thing I did after I **got down** to Miami was go to the beach.*

2. **get . . . down** (from) *p.v.* When you **get** things or people **down** or **down** from a higher place or level, you move them to a lower place or level.

*Why do you always put the dishes on the top shelf? I can't **get them down**.
The firefighters **got** the people **down** from the roof of the burning building.*

3. **get down** *p.v.* When you bend your body and lower your head to avoid danger or to prevent people from seeing you, you **get down**.

*When the enemy soldiers started shooting, the sergeant ordered his men to **get down**.
Get down! If the police catch us here we'll be in a lot of trouble.*

4. **get . . . down** *p.v.* [always separated unless passive] When things or people **get you down**, they make you sad or depressed.

*Don't let your troubles **get you down**. Everything will be all right.*

*Jim's marriage problems are really **getting him down**.*

Infinitive: get in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get in & gets in	getting in	got in	gotten/got in

1. **get in/into** *p.v.* When you **get in** or **get into** a place, building, room, car, boat, etc., you enter it.

***Get in** the car! We're going now.*

*We'd better **get into** the school—the bell's going to ring soon.*

2. **get . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **get in** or **get into** a place, building, club, restaurant, meeting, etc., you obtain permission to enter. When you **get** other people **in** or **get** other people **into** a building, club, restaurant, meeting, etc., you arrange for them to enter.

*We'll never **get into** that club. We don't know the right people.*

*I didn't have an invitation to the party, but Nancy **got me in**.*

3. **get . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **get** something **in** or **get** something **into** a place, building, room, container, enclosure, etc., you get the object inside even though it is difficult.

*The shoes are too small—I can't **get my feet in**.*

*How did they **get** that elephant **into** its cage?*

4. **get . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **get in** trouble or **get into** a difficult situation or a mess (a *mess* is a confused or difficult situation), you become involved in it. When you **get** people **in** trouble or **get** them **into** a difficult situation or a mess, you cause them to become involved in it.

*Susie **got in** a lot of trouble at school today.*

*I don't see any solution to this problem. How did I ever **get into** this mess?*

5. **get in/into** *p.v.* When you **get in** or **get into** a place, you arrive. When the vehicle you are in **gets in** or **gets into** a place, it arrives. **Come in** is similar to **get in**.

*I'm exhausted. I **got in** really late last night.*

*I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train **gets into** the station.*

6. **get . . . in** *p.v.* When a store **gets** something **in**, it receives a delivery of something that it will offer for sale.

*Karen asked the sales clerk when the store was going to **get** some summer dresses **in**.*

*I wanted to buy that new book, but the bookstore hasn't **gotten** it **in** yet.*

7. **get . . . in** *p.v.* When you **get** an activity **in**, you find the time for it or make the time for it.

*Dinner isn't until 7:30, so we've got time to **get** a tennis game **in**.*

*Whenever I go to San Francisco on business, I try to **get** a baseball game **in**.*

Infinitive: get out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get out & gets out	getting out	got out	gotten/got out

1. **get out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get out** or **get out** of a place, building, room, car, boat, etc., you leave or escape from it.

*When Bob heard his car's engine making a strange noise, he **got out** and looked under the hood.*

*We smelled gas and **got out** of the building just seconds before it exploded.*

2. **get out** (to) *p.v.* When you go to a place that is west of where you are (in the mainland USA or Canada) or to a place outside a large city, you **get out** or **get out** to that place.

*It's beautiful out here in the country. I need to **get out** here more often.*

*I told my friend in New York, "If you ever **get out** to California, please visit me."*

3. **get . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get** people **out** or **get** them **out** of a place, you take them out or you arrange for them to leave.

*The soldiers were surrounded, so they called for a helicopter to **get** them **out**.*

*After Hank was arrested, his lawyer **got** him **out** of jail.*

4. **get . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get out** or **get out** of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you avoid it. When you **get** people **out** of a dangerous, awkward, or difficult situation, you help them to avoid it.

*Erik made a date with two girls for the same night. How is he going to **get out** of this mess?*

*You got me into this mess—you **get** me **out**!*

5. **get . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get** something **out** or **get** something **out** of a container or place, you remove it.

*Mother's coming for dinner tonight, so let's **get** the good china **out**.*

*You can't use the printer. A piece of paper is jammed in it, and I can't **get** it **out**.*

6. **get . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **get** dirt or a stain **out** or **get** dirt or a stain **out** of a material, you remove it by cleaning.

*This detergent's ad claims it'll **get** dirt **out** even in cold water.*

*Do you think bleach will **get** this coffee stain **out** of my white blouse?*

7. **get out** *p.v.* When information **gets out**, it becomes known to people who are not supposed to know it.

*Be careful—we'll be in a lot of trouble if this information **gets out**.*

*There was a huge scandal after the news **got out**.*

8. **get out** (of) *p.v.* When you leave your house and do things that are relaxing and fun, you **get out** or **get out** of the house.

*You work too hard. You should **get out** more.*

*Ned doesn't **get out** of the house much. He prefers to stay home and play computer games.*

Infinitive: get over

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get over & gets over	getting over	got over	gotten/got over

1. **get over** (to) *p.v.* When you **get over** to a place, you go there. When you tell people to **get over** here, you want them to come where you are.

*Francisco called, and he said he needs you to help him with something, so **get over** to his house right away.*

*Susie, **get over** here and clean up this mess immediately!*

2. **get over** *p.v.* When you **get over** a problem, illness, or emotionally painful experience, you stop letting it affect you and continue with your life.

*I've got a bad cold. I've been sick for a week, and I still haven't **gotten over** it.*

*You can't feel sorry for yourself forever—you've got to **get over** it and get on with your life.*

3. **get over** *p.v.* When something happens that surprises you or makes you angry, and you cannot stop thinking about it, you cannot **get over** it.

*I can't **get over** seeing my ex-wife with her new husband.*

*The coach couldn't **get over** losing the state championship 47 to 0.*

Infinitive: get up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get up & gets up	getting up	got up	gotten/got up

1. **get up** (to) *p.v.* When you move to a higher level or place, or from south to north, you **get up** or **get up** to that level or place. **Get down** is the opposite of **get up**. **Go up** is similar to **get up**.

*Tom, your brother is in the basement. Please go tell him to **get right up** here and start doing his homework.*

*I haven't **gotten up** to my brother's house in Canada for a long time.*

2. **get . . . up** *p.v.* When you **get up** or someone **gets** you **up**, you rise from your bed. When you **get** people **up**, you cause them to rise from their beds.

*I don't usually **get up** until 11:00 on weekends.*

*I make breakfast. **Getting** the children **up** and ready for school in the morning is Bill's job.*

3. **get up** *p.v.* When you change from a sitting or lying position to a standing position, you **get up**. **Stand up** is similar to **get up**.

*The teacher told the sleeping students to **get up**.*

*After he hit me, I **got right up** and hit him back.*

PRACTICE

42-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. That bomb might explode. Maybe we should _____ a little.
2. As soon as the car stopped, I _____ right _____ and went inside the house.
3. I'll lose my job if this information _____, so don't tell anyone.

4. _____ Jim's death took me a long time.
5. Now the police are outside. Look at all the trouble you've _____ me
_____!
6. I thought these pants were ruined after I got ink on them, but this detergent
_____ the ink right _____.
7. I was working in my office on the third floor, and my boss called from his office on the
sixth floor and told me to _____ there immediately.
8. Work, work, work—that's all you do. You need to _____ more
often.
9. It's 4:10. If we hurry, we might _____ a round of golf _____ before
it gets dark.
10. I was trying to leave work a little early, but my boss said, "You can't go home until 5:00.
_____ back _____ here!"
11. Would you like to go shopping at Walmart tomorrow? They just _____ some
new stuff _____.
12. The game is sold out, but I know someone who might be able to _____ us
_____.
13. What time did your plane _____ last night?
14. Hank is in a lot of trouble. If he _____ of it, it'll be a miracle.
15. Nicole does her work very carefully and never makes mistakes. Nothing _____
_____ her.
16. Your sister's upstairs sleeping. Go tell her to _____ right _____ here
and eat breakfast.
17. Look, there's a bear! _____ so that it doesn't see us.
18. My husband lost his whole paycheck in a poker game. I don't know how we're going to
_____ this month.
19. I wish I hadn't _____ late. I missed the bus, and now I have to
walk to school.
20. This is a very difficult class. If you don't study hard, you'll _____.

21. The teacher said, "Your midterm score wasn't very good, but I'm sure if you study hard, you'll do a lot better on the final. Don't let it _____ you."
22. Excuse me, could you move? I can't _____.
23. Mike usually leaves around 8:00 in the morning and _____ around 5:30.
24. My cat has been in that tree for three days. Can you help me _____ her _____?
25. It's amazing. I can't _____ how great Tom looks. I'll bet he's lost 40 pounds.
26. If you lose your receipt, _____ your money _____ for something you bought is usually impossible.
27. Timmy's mother said, "Who said you could leave the table? _____ back _____ here and finish your vegetables!"
28. Our neighbor called and said, "Your dog is in my garden. _____ it _____!"
29. The situation in that country is very dangerous, so Washington is making plans to _____ its embassy staff _____.
30. David was so sick he couldn't even _____ of bed.
31. It isn't easy to _____ this big car _____ that small garage.

42-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. My father came into my bedroom, shook my shoulder, and told me that breakfast was almost ready. What did my father do?
2. I live in New Orleans, and it's difficult to find the time to travel to Minnesota to visit my sister. What is difficult?
3. After you were arrested for reckless driving, you were in a lot of trouble. What did you do?
4. You need to return to your home very quickly. What do you need to do?
5. After Judy pays her bills, she just barely has enough money to survive until the end of the month. What can Judy just barely do?

6. If Heather doesn't work harder in her math class, she will not be able to stay at the same level as the other students. What will happen to Heather if she doesn't work harder?
7. It's been five years, but Frank is still sad about his brother's death. What hasn't Frank done yet?
8. I was trapped in my car after an accident, but a rescue worker removed me from my car. What did the rescue worker do?
9. Alex is removing his toy train from the closet. What is Alex doing to his toy train?
10. Carlos is standing on a table so that he can get the toy airplane that he threw on top of the refrigerator. What is Carlos doing?
11. The sofa was too big, and the movers couldn't bring it inside our new house. What couldn't the movers do?
12. There is a huge truck in front of us, and we can't pass it. What can't we do?
13. Lydia left the building when she heard the fire alarm. What did Lydia do?
14. After getting out of her car, Janice entered it again. What did Janice do?
15. Erik's bicycle was stolen, but now he has it again. What did Erik do?
16. The pilot had mechanical problems with her airplane, but the controllers on the ground helped her land. What did the controllers do to the pilot?
17. Bill called and asked me to come to his house very quickly. What did Bill ask me to do?

42-3. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

brush off, 37	float around, 34	punch out, 30	squeeze in, 4
call back, 28	leave behind, 35	run around, 40	start up, 26
clear out, 32	pick up, 39	sell out, 39	
cross off, 39	plug in/into, 41	sneak in/into, 41	
drown out, 28	punch in, 30	sneak out, 41	

1. There's nothing to eat for dinner tonight. Can you _____ some takeout food _____ when you come home from work tonight?
2. My brother wants to store some of his stuff in my attic, so tonight I'm going to _____ some of the junk up there _____ to make more room.

3. If you want to get a ticket for the Super Bowl, you'll need to hurry—they're _____ fast.
4. When I go on vacation, I want to relax at the beach and _____ my worries _____.
5. Ned is worried. There's a rumor _____ that someone is going to get fired.
6. I can't find the toy my daughter wants for her birthday anywhere. I've been _____ all day looking for it.
7. I'm going to be late for work. Would you mind _____ me _____?
8. Dan must still be here in the office somewhere. He hasn't _____ yet.
9. The people defending Nicholas were _____ by many more people demanding that he be put in jail.
10. Nancy was in the shower when I called, but her brother said she'd _____ me right _____.
11. I know you're going to be busy today, but be sure to _____ some time _____ to call Sarah and wish her a happy birthday.
12. Manuela decided to leave her job with a big company and _____ her own company.
13. _____ the theater was easy. One of our friends went inside and opened the fire exit for the rest of us.
14. My father won't let me go to the dance, so I'm going to _____ after he goes to bed.
15. None of the bad things people say about Charles bother him. He just _____ it _____.
16. I made a list of people to invite to my wedding, but after I heard all those nasty things Sarah said about my fiancé, I _____ her name _____ the list.
17. Well, I think I've fixed the vacuum cleaner. Let's _____ it _____ and see if it works now.

Unit 43

Modals and Present Perfect Phrasal Verbs

Remember that the present perfect is formed with *have* or the contraction *'ve* and the past participle. The only difference is that *has* is not used for the third person singular:

He has run up a big bill.

He would have run up a big bill.

The meanings of the modal and semimodal auxiliaries are unchanged in the present perfect, except for *may* and *might*.

Past speculation and you do not know what happened: *might have* or *may have*

When discussing something that was possible in the past and you do not know what happened, either *might have* or *may have* can be used:

The lights are not working. A fuse might have blown out.

The lights are not working. A fuse may have blown out.

Because you do not know whether Jim stopped off at the bar, either *might have* or *may have* can be used.

Past speculation and you know what happened: only *might have*

When discussing something that was possible in the past and you know what happened, only *might have* can be used:

Climbing that tree was stupid. You might have fallen out.

Climbing that tree was stupid. ~~You may have fallen out.~~

Because I know that the person I am talking to did not fall out of the tree, only *might have* can be used.

Infinitive: blow out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

blow out & blows out	blowing out	blew out	blown out
----------------------	-------------	----------	-----------

1. **blow . . . out** *p.v.* When a flame **blows out** or is **blown out** by a strong wind, it stops burning. When you **blow out** a flame, you use your breath to make the flame stop burning.

*Don't open the window—the candles will **blow out**.*

*I couldn't light my cigarette. The wind kept **blowing** the match **out**.*

2. **blow . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When something is moved outward away from where it was by an explosion or a very strong wind, it is **blown out** or **blown out** of where it was before.

*The force of the explosion **blew** all the windows **out**.*

*Look, there's a dead bird. The wind might have **blown** it **out** of its nest.*

blowout *n.* When a tire bursts and suddenly loses its air while you are driving, you have a **blowout**.

*Maria had a **blowout** while she was driving, lost control of her car, and hit a tree.*

3. **blow . . . out** *p.v.* When a piece of electrical equipment or a fuse **blows out**, it fails because too much electricity is passing through it.

*Don't be surprised if the fuse **blows out**—you have seven lights, your computer, and your TV all plugged into one outlet.*

*When lightning hit our house, it **blew** all the telephones **out**.*

Infinitive: give out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
give out & gives out	giving out	gave out	given out

1. **give . . . out** (to) *p.v.* When you distribute something to other people, you **give it out** or **give it out** to them. **Hand out** and **pass out** are similar to **give out**.

*They **gave out** free hats to the first 5,000 fans to enter the stadium.*

*The aid workers would have **given** more food **out** to the famine victims, but they didn't have enough.*

2. **give out** (on) *p.v.* When a mechanical or electrical device stops working, it **gives out** or **gives out** on you. When a supply of something is completely used, it **gives out** or **gives out** on you.

*The explorers lost their way in the desert and died after their water **gave out**.*

*I bought a Chevrolet in 1964 and drove it more than 300,000 miles before it finally **gave out** on me.*

Infinitive: gross out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
gross out & grosses out	grossing out	grossed out	grossed out

1. **gross . . . out** *p.v. [informal]* When something **grosses** you **out**, it upsets you or makes you sick because you think it is disgusting.

*You had to dissect a cadaver in your biology class? Yuk, that would've really **grossed me out**.*

*Alex hates changing his little brother's diapers—it **grosses him out**.*

grossed out *part.adj.* When something upsets you or makes you sick because you think it is disgusting, you are **grossed out**.

*I was eating an apple, and I found half a worm in it. I was so **grossed out** that I almost threw up.*

Infinitive: head toward			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
head toward & heads toward	heading toward	headed toward	headed toward

1. **head toward** *p.v.* When you **head toward** a certain location, you move toward it. When you say that you are **headed toward** or are **heading toward** a certain location, you mean that you are planning to go there or that you are going there but have interrupted your journey and will resume it. **Head for** is the same as **head toward**.

*The escaped convicts must have **headed toward** Mexico.*

*I'm **heading toward** Portland. I expect to get there around 8:00.*

Infinitive: run up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run up & runs up	running up	ran up	run up

1. **run up** (to) *p.v.* When you run to a higher level or place, you **run up** or **run up** to that place.

***Run up** and answer the phone if it rings, OK?*

*If I'd heard the baby crying, I would have **run up** to his bedroom.*

2. **run . . . up** *p.v.* When you accumulate a number of debts, resulting in a total debt of a certain amount, you **run up** a bill for that amount.

*Giving my son a credit card was a mistake—he **ran up** a \$2,500 bill in only one month.*

*Calling your family every week from Australia must have **run** a big phone bill **up**.*

run-up *n.* A large, sudden increase in the price, value, or cost of something is a **run-up**.

*Bill was lucky to buy 500 shares of the stock just before the big **run-up**.*

3. **run up** (to) *p.v.* When you run toward people, you **run up** or **run up** to them.

*The prince didn't have any bodyguards. Anyone could have **run up** and attacked him.*

*After the explosion, a man covered with blood **ran up** to me and asked for help.*

Infinitive: set out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
set out & sets out	setting out	set out	set out

1. **set out** (on) *p.v.* When you begin a journey, usually a long or difficult journey, you **set out** or **set out** on that journey.

*If we're going to drive from Chicago to Miami in one day, we're going to have to **set out** really early.*

*We would have **set out** on our expedition to find Atlantis at dawn, but we overslept.*

2. **set out** *p.v.* When you **set out** to do something, you make plans and take actions in order to achieve that goal.

*Carlos **set out** to sail around the world alone.*

*In 1962, the USA **set out** to land a man on the Moon before the end of the decade.*

Infinitive: shut up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

shut up & shuts up	shutting up	shut up	shut up
--------------------	-------------	---------	---------

1. **shut up** (about) *p.v. [informal]* When people stop talking, they **shut up** or **shut up** about something they are talking about. When you are angry and want people to stop talking, you tell them to **shut up**.

*Marty talks and talks and talks—he never **shuts up**.*

*I said I was sorry about crashing your car. Now will you please **shut up** about it!*

2. **shut . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When people or things cause you to stop talking, they **shut** you **up**.

*Todd was making jokes about his wife at the party until she gave him a look that **shut** him right **up**.*

*I can't hear the TV—can you **shut** those kids **up**?*

Infinitive: try on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
try on & tries on	trying on	tried on	tried on

1. **try . . . on** *p.v.* When you **try on** an item of clothing before deciding whether you will buy it or borrow it from someone in order to see if it fits or to see if you like it, you **try it on**.

*She must have **tried on** twenty pairs of shoes before making up her mind.*

*Would you like to borrow this dress for the dance tonight? Here, **try it on**.*

PRACTICE

43-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

- I got into Atlanta last night, and tomorrow I'm going to _____ Miami.
- I should've _____ this sweater _____ before I bought it. It's too small, and now I have to return it.
- Nicole figured out why all the lights were off: a fuse _____.
- Sam couldn't have finished the marathon. His strength completely _____.

5. It's a good thing Linda has health insurance. She has _____ a huge bill at the hospital.
6. When the gas exploded, all the doors and windows _____.
7. Marsha's always bragging about how smart she is and teasing me about my bad grades, but when I got 100 on the algebra test and she got 52, it really _____ her _____.
8. The explorer _____ to find the lost city of El Dorado and was never heard from again.
9. Hank's bad breath _____ everyone _____. 10. _____! I'm tired of listening to your constant criticism.
11. I was so excited to see Karen after so many years that I _____ to her and gave her a big hug.
12. This gas stove isn't working. I think the pilot light may have _____ when you opened the window.
13. Job applications were _____ to everyone standing in line.
14. When I saw smoke coming from the third floor window, I _____ to look for the fire.
15. We _____ on our journey on May 15.

43-2. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

1. The luggage was *blown out* _____ the hole in the airplane's fuselage.
2. Free samples will be *given out* _____ every customer who walks through the door.
3. His diseased heart finally *gave out* _____ him.
4. I was so angry that when I saw him I *ran up* _____ him and hit him.
5. Whenever I set out _____ a long road trip, I make sure I have some of my favorite CDs to listen to.

43-3. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The wind *blew out*. (the candle, it)

2. They might have *given out*. (the information, it)
3. She *ran up*. (a \$4,000 bill, it)
4. Can I *try on*? (these pants, these)
5. The smell may have *grossed out*. (everyone, them)

43-4. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Rosa bought a coat, but it's too small. What should Rosa have done?
2. Your car's transmission finally stopped working after several days of problems. What did your car's transmission do?
3. The price of gold increased a lot very quickly. What would you call this increase in the price of gold?
4. Todd didn't know that the taco he ate at Miguel's house was made with cow brains. When Miguel told Todd what he had eaten, what must that have done to Todd?
5. In Question 4, how must Todd have been?
6. The children ran toward Betty very quickly. What did the children do?
7. The truck driver wouldn't have traveled toward Detroit. What wouldn't the truck driver have done?
8. Janice used her breath to stop the kerosene lamp from burning. What did Janice do?
9. Stopping Marty from talking is nearly impossible. What is impossible?
10. Sally asked her brother how he could have accumulated such a large credit card bill. What did Sally ask her brother?
11. We left on our drive to Alaska at 8:00. What did we do?
12. My tire burst while I was driving. What did I have?
13. Sarah made a plan and did what was necessary to make her business a success. What did she do?

43-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit

number given after each one.

broken in, 41	covered up, 37	let down, 37	rundown, 36
checked in, 41	crossed off, 39	paid off, 37	sneak in/into
checked out, 41	filled up, 39	plugged in, 41	sold out, 39
chopped up, 39	leftover, 37	put off, 31	straightened

1. If you're hungry, there's some _____ pizza in the refrigerator.
2. This meat isn't _____ enough. The pieces are too big.
3. That food isn't _____. Flies are going to land on it.
4. Someday John wants to move from this _____ neighborhood to a better one.
5. My feet really hurt because these shoes aren't _____ yet.
6. My car loan is _____. I made my final payment last month.
7. After 45 years with the company, I thought they would give me more than this cheap pen at my retirement party. I feel _____.
8. There aren't eight names on the list. There are only five—three are _____.
9. We're _____ now. We can take our luggage up to our hotel room.
10. We can get a taxi for the airport now; we're _____.
11. The game isn't _____. There are plenty of tickets left.
12. No wonder this radio doesn't work—it's not _____.
13. The tank isn't _____ yet. There's room for another gallon or two.
14. Is everything _____, or do I need to explain it again?
15. Why are you so _____? Did I say something that offended you?
16. My son got in trouble for trying to _____ cigarettes _____ his high school.

43-6. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

burst out, 40	keep at, 38	keep off, 38	sneak in/into
come back, 40	keep away, 38	keep on, 38	sneak out of
get back, 42	keep down, 38	keep to, 38	wipe out, 39
get behind, 42	keep from, 38	keep up, 38	

- Susie _____ the kitchen and took a cookie when her mother wasn't looking.
- When I was a teenager, I used to _____ of the house and meet my friends after my parents went to bed.
- I just shampooed the carpet in the living room, so _____ it.
- I need to see my physical therapist. That pain I used to have in my knee is _____.
- It wasn't easy, but I _____ eighteen people _____ my little office for the meeting.
- Betty asked the bus driver to stop, but he didn't hear her and _____ right _____ going.
- Maria leaves for work at 7:00 in the morning, and she doesn't usually _____ to her house until after 8:00 in the evening.
- Jim has _____ way _____ in his studies because he's been in the hospital for several weeks.
- Marty was acting like such an idiot when he was angry. I couldn't _____ laughing.
- Don't give up now. _____ it!
- It was hard to _____ my magazine article _____ only 2,000 words—there was so much I wanted to say.
- Mike _____ crying when his wife told him she wanted a divorce.
- I try to take notes in my history class, but the teacher talks so fast that I can't _____.

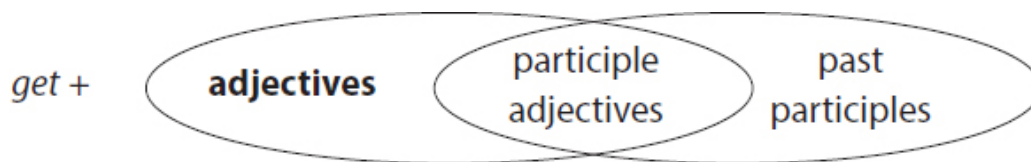
14. The enemy soldiers were almost completely _____ in the attack.
15. That dog of yours is dangerous, so please _____ it _____ from my children.
16. The candy company has _____ the cost of its products _____ despite the rise in the cost of sugar.

Unit 44

Participle Adjectives and Passive Phrasal Verbs with the Verb *Get*

It is important to understand two different but related uses of *get* in forming the passive voice.

get* + adjectives: *get* = *become

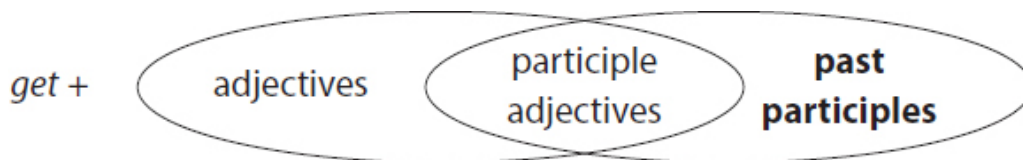


It is very common in English to use *get* followed by an adjective. This is not the passive. In this case *get* is similar to *become*:

She got sick yesterday.

She became sick yesterday.

***get* + past participles: a form of the passive**



It is also very common to use *get* in place of *be* to form the passive voice. The construction is the same. *Get* is followed by the past participle:

*Judy got **kicked out** of school.*

*Judy was **kicked out** of school.*

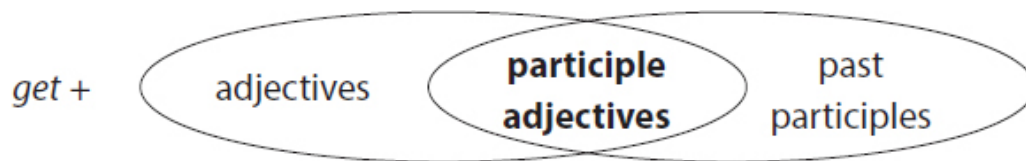
There is a difference, however, between the passive formed with *be* and the passive formed with *get*: When the passive is formed with *get*, there is often (but not always) a suggestion that the subject of the sentence was somehow responsible or partially responsible for what happened:

*Judy got **kicked out** of school.*

A person hearing the sentence above would probably think that Judy did something wrong that resulted in her getting **kicked out** of school. Sometimes, to leave no doubt that the subject is responsible for what happened, a reflexive pronoun is used:

*Judy got herself **kicked out** of school.*

get + participle adjectives: adjective or passive?



As we have seen, in English the past participles of many verbs are used as adjectives. When *get* is followed by a past participle, it is not always clear whether the sentence is passive or whether the past participle is functioning as an adjective:

*I got **mixed up** yesterday.*

*I became **mixed up** yesterday.*

In the examples above, we can see that the past participle is clearly functioning as an adjective since *get* can be replaced with *become*, but notice that the sentence can also pass the *by* test (discussed in [Unit 13](#)), which indicates that it is passive:

*I got **mixed up** by all the confusing road signs yesterday.*

Again, we see how closely related adjectives and past participles are in English and how it is not always easy to distinguish between the two. Fortunately, it is not usually very important. What is important is to be comfortable using past participles as adjectives, and the key to doing so is *not* to understand the difference between true adjectives derived from past participles and past participles with an adjective function but instead to understand that there often is no difference.

Infinitive: beat up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
beat up & beats up	beating up	beat up	beaten up

1. **beat . . . up** *p.v. [informal]* When you **beat** people **up**, you hit them or kick them repeatedly.

*The robbers stole my money and then **beat me up**.*

*Timmy got **beaten up** at school today.*

beat-up *part.adj.* When something is in bad condition because of heavy use, it is **beat-up**.

*My car is an old, **beat-up** piece of junk.*

Infinitive: carry away

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
			carried away

1. **carry away** (with) *p.v.* [*always passive and used with get*] When you get **carried away** or get **carried away** with something, you do more than is necessary or proper because you enjoy it or because you think it is important.

*I was going to make a dozen cupcakes for dessert tonight, but I got **carried away** and ended up making forty.*

*You should always start a new exercise program slowly. If you get **carried away** with it, you might hurt yourself.*

Infinitive: kick out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
kick out & kicks out	kicking out	kicked out	kicked out

1. **kick . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **kick** people **out** or **kick** people **out** of a group, place, building, room, etc., you order them to leave. **Throw out** is similar to **kick out**.

*David cheated and got himself **kicked out** of the game.*

*Bob's in our car pool, but he's always arguing with the other guys about something, so we're going to **kick him out**.*

Infinitive: lock up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
lock up & locks up	locking up	locked up	locked up

1. **lock . . . up** *p.v.* When you lock all the doors and windows of a building, you **lock it up**.

*The manager always **locks up** before he goes home.*

*We **locked** our house **up** before we went on vacation.*

locked up *part.adj.* After all the doors and windows of a building have been locked, it is **locked up**.

*You can't get in the house—it's **locked up**.*

2. **lock . . . up** *p.v.* When you **lock** people **up**, you put them in prison.

*The police **locked** Hank **up** after they caught him shoplifting.*

*Whoever committed that terrible crime ought to be **locked up** forever.*

locked up *part.adj.* Someone who has been put in prison is **locked up**.

*Being **locked up** in jail was a terrible experience.*

lockup *n.* A prison or other place where people are **locked up** is a **lockup**.

*David was put in the **lockup** after he was arrested for driving without a license.*

Infinitive: mix up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
mix up & mixes up	mixing up	mixed up	mixed up

1. **mix . . . up** *p.v.* When you **mix** something **up** that has two or more ingredients, you stir it so that the ingredients will be thoroughly combined.

*Put in the eggs, butter, sugar, flour, and water and then **mix** them **up** well.*

*An electric mixer will **mix up** the ingredients better than a hand mixer.*

2. **mix . . . up** *p.v.* When you **mix** two things **up**, you confuse them with each other.

*Jerry and his twin brother look exactly the same, and everyone **mixes** them **up**.*

*Newborn babies sometimes get **mixed up** in the hospital.*

mixed up *part.adj.* When you are confused about something that you want to understand, or when you have emotional or behavioral problems, you are **mixed up**.

*Can you help me with my calculus homework? I'm really **mixed up**.*

*Jimmy is a **mixed up** kid who gets in trouble with the police a lot.*

mix-up *n.* A mistake, misunderstanding, or confused situation is a **mix-up**.

*Waiter, I think there's been a **mix-up**. I asked you for a chicken salad sandwich, but you brought me a tuna salad sandwich.*

Infinitive: piss off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

piss off & pisses off	pissing off	pissed off	pissed off
-----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **piss . . . off** *p.v. [informal and offensive to some people]* When you make people angry, you **piss** them **off**.

*You'd better stop that! You're **pissing** me **off**.*

*Don't make a lot of noise when Mark is trying to study. It **pisses** him **off**.*

pissed off *part.adj.* When you are angry, you are **pissed off**.

*Melanie got really **pissed off** at Heather for borrowing her necklace without asking and then losing it.*

Infinitive: rip off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
rip off & rips off	ripping off	ripped off	ripped off

1. **rip . . . off** *p.v. [informal]* When you **rip** people **off**, you steal something from them, cheat them, or charge them more money for something than it is worth.

*Don't do business with Marty. He **rips** everyone **off**.*

*Hank got **ripped off** by the drug dealer.*

rip-off *n.* When someone steals something from you, cheats you, or charges too much for something, this is a **rip-off**.

*I paid nine dollars to see that awful movie? What a **rip-off**!*

Infinitive: stress out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
stress out & stresses out	stressing out	stressed out	stressed out

1. **stress . . . out** *p.v. [informal]* When people or things **stress** you **out**, they make you worried, nervous, or tense.

*Having that new manager around watching me all the time is **stressing** me **out**.*

*Sally's sister has to take care of quadruplets all day without any help. That must **stress** her **out**.*

stressed-out *part.adj.* When you are worried, nervous, or tense, you are **stressed-out**.

*I had to make a speech at work today, and I was so **stressed-out** afterward that I took the rest of the day off.*

PRACTICE

44-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The prison guard put Jake in a cell and _____ him _____.
2. Tom asked the barber to just cut his hair a little bit, but when he looked in the mirror, he could see that the barber was getting _____ and cutting his hair too short.
3. Erik promised me that he would come to my house to help me move some stuff this morning, but he still hasn't shown up. He's always doing things like that, and it really _____ me _____.
4. If Janice doesn't pass her chemistry test tomorrow, she won't graduate with the rest of her class, and worrying about it so much is really _____ her _____.
5. I got _____ of school after I got caught cheating on the test.
6. The robbers _____ the shop owner so badly that she had to be hospitalized.
7. Add a cup of water and four eggs to the cake mix and _____ it _____ well.
8. The night manager forgot to _____ when she left the restaurant.
9. The jewelry store _____ me _____. I paid \$5,000 for a diamond ring made of glass.
10. The teacher has two students with the same name, and she always _____ them _____.

44-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. The thugs *beat up*. (the woman, her)
2. The hotel manager *kicked out*. (the rock group, them)
3. The cops are going to *lock up*. (the crook, her)

4. *Mixing up* is easy. (the twins, them)
5. Getting a tattoo must have *pissed off*. (your father, him)
6. The contractor was accused of *ripping off*. (homeowners, them)
7. All these problems are *stressing out*. (the staff, them)

44-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Tom paid a mechanic to replace his car's generator with a new one, but the mechanic put a used generator in and still charged Tom for a new one. What did the mechanic do to Tom?
2. In Question 1, what would you call what the mechanic did to Tom?
3. If they don't stop making so much noise, the hotel manager is going to tell them to leave. What is the manager going to do?
4. You locked all the doors and windows in your house. What did you do?
5. In Question 4, how would you describe your house after you locked all the doors and windows?
6. Many cars look the same these days, and it's hard to tell them apart. If it is hard to tell them apart, what is it easy to do?
7. Scratching my brother's new car really made him angry. What did scratching my brother's new car do to my brother?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe my brother?
9. Linda is very confused about how to use her computer. How would you describe Linda?
10. Driving in all this traffic is making you nervous and tense. What is driving in all this traffic doing to you?
11. In Question 10, how would you describe yourself?
12. I let Charles use my skis, and when he returned them, they were in very bad condition. How were my skis when Charles returned them?
13. Sam's father was sent to prison for bank robbery. What happened to Sam's father?

14. In Question 13, how would you describe Sam's father?
15. Karen went to the store planning to buy a pair of shoes, but she ended up buying five pairs of shoes, three dresses, four blouses, and a new winter coat. What happened to Karen?
16. When the angry people caught the thief, they hit and kicked him again and again. What did the angry crowd do?
17. When you put all the ingredients in, you have to stir them so they will be combined. What do you have to do?

44-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

break in/into, 41	keep away, 38	keep on, 38	pay off, 37
bring up, 40	keep down, 38	keep to, 38	put up to, 34
cover up, 37	keep from, 38	keep up, 38	stick with, 4
keep at, 38	keep off, 38	max out, 33	take over, 39

1. The newspaper story claimed that the governor had taken a bribe and had then tried to _____ it _____.
2. That stock I bought really _____ . It went up nearly 100 percent in only three months.
3. After the new manager _____ next month, you can expect a lot of changes.
4. Will you kids _____ it _____, please? I'm on the phone.
5. I told you to stop. If you _____ doing that, I'm going to get pissed off.
6. The police think the burglars may have _____ through the back door.
7. If you kids go outside to play, _____ from that pile of garbage—it's full of broken glass.
8. I need to talk to Jerry about his bad breath, but I'm nervous about _____ it _____.
9. Dan is so sad about what happened that he can't _____ crying.

10. When I went to the car rental office, they had already rented all the good cars, and they _____ me _____ a piece of junk.
11. The legislature passed a tough new law designed to _____ drunken drivers _____ the streets.
12. When you're depressed you should talk to people about what's troubling you, not _____ it _____ yourself.
13. You get five paid sick days at this job. If you _____ that _____, you aren't paid for any additional sick days.
14. Nothing the inventor tried worked, but he _____ it until he solved the problem.
15. I can't believe that my daughter would steal money from me. That awful boyfriend of hers must have _____ her _____ it.
16. Jane did very well in her first semester of college. I hope she can _____ it _____ for the next four years.

Unit 45

Phrasal Verbs with the Verb *Turn*

Many phrasal verbs are based on the verb *turn*. In most cases, phrasal verbs with *turn* involve two options and a change from one option to the other or, when it is possible, a move closer to one option and farther away from the other. In other words, choosing either A or B or, when it is possible to be somewhere between A and B, moving closer to A and farther away from B, or vice versa.

Infinitive: turn down			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn down & turns down	turning down	turned down	turned down

1. **turn . . . down** *p.v.* When you **turn down** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to decrease the level of what it is producing or doing. **Turn up** is the opposite of **turn down**.

*Could you **turn** the radio **down**? I'm trying to sleep.*

*If it gets too cold, I'll **turn down** the air conditioner.*

2. **turn . . . down** *p.v.* When you deny a request, you **turn down** the request or **turn down** the person who has made the request.

*I asked Nancy to go to the dance with me, but she **turned me down**.*

*My request for a pay raise was **turned down**.*

*Getting **turned down** every time I apply for a job is getting me down.*

Infinitive: turn in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn in & turns in	turning in	turned in	turned in

1. **turn . . . in** (to) *p.v.* When you inform the police that certain people have committed crimes or tell the police where they are, you **turn** them **in** or **turn** them **in** to the police.

*The escaped prisoner got tired of running and **turned himself in**.*

*When Jake told me that he had murdered Luis, I knew I had to **turn him in** to the police.*

2. **turn . . . in** (to) *p.v.* When you return something that was given to you by a person in authority, you **turn** that thing **in** or **turn** it **in** to a person in authority. **Hand in** is similar to **turn in**.

*The police officer was ordered to **turn in** her badge after she was caught taking a bribe.*

*The delivery truck drivers have to **turn** their keys **in** to the dispatcher before they go home.*

3. **turn . . . in** (to) *p.v.* When you complete a test, report, or project and you give it to the person who assigned the work to you, you **turn** it **in** or **turn** it **in** to the person who assigned the work. **Hand in** is similar to **turn in**.

*Melanie asked her teacher if she could **turn** her project **in** late.*

*I have to finish this report and **turn** it **in** to the sales manager by tomorrow.*

4. **turn in** *p.v.* When you go to bed, you **turn in**.

*I'm really tired. I'm going to **turn in** early.*

*It's getting late. I'm **turning in**.*

Infinitive: turn into

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn into & turns into	turning into	turned into	turned into

1. **turn into** *p.v.* When something **turns into** something else, it becomes that thing.

*It was cold and rainy this morning, but it **turned into** a nice day.*

*It's amazing that this small seed can **turn into** a huge tree.*

2. **turn . . . into** *p.v.* When you **turn** something **into** something else, you change it into that thing.

*The Youngs are thinking of **turning** their house in the country **into** a hotel.*

*The children **turned** the big box **into** a playhouse.*

Infinitive: turn off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn off & turns off	turning off	turned off	turned off

1. **turn . . . off** *p.v.* When you **turn off** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. **Turn on** is the opposite of **turn off**. **Switch off** and **shut off** are similar to **turn off**.

*Would you **turn** the light **off**? I want to go to bed.*

*When I'm driving and have to wait for a long freight train to pass, I always **turn** my car **off**.*

turned off *part.adj.* After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is **turned off**. **Turned on** is the opposite of **turned off**. **Switched off** and **shut off** are similar to **turned off**.

*I can't see anything—the lights are **turned off**.*

2. **turn . . . off** *p.v. [informal]* Something that **turns** you **off** offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone. Something about a person of the opposite sex that **turns** you **off** causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person. **Turn on** is the opposite of **turn off**.

*When I met Dan I thought he was a nice guy, but his racist jokes **turned** me **off**.*

*I got **turned off** when she lit a cigarette.*

turned off *part.adj.* When something about a person of the opposite sex causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person, you are **turned off**. **Turned on** is the opposite of **turned off**.

*What's wrong with Nicole? She was having a good time with Frank a little while ago, but now she seems kind of **turned off**.*

turnoff *n.* Something that offends you and causes you to lose interest in something or someone is a **turnoff**. Something about a person that causes you to lose sexual or romantic interest in that person is a **turnoff**. A **turn-on** is the opposite of a **turnoff**.

*I don't like tattoos. To me they're a real **turnoff**.*

3. **turn off** *p.v.* When you **turn off** a road or path that you are traveling on, you leave it and start to travel on another road or path. When a road or path leaves another road or path and travels in a different direction, it **turns off**.

*Be careful you don't **turn off** the main road—you'll get lost.*

*The path to the cabin **turns off** just after the big tree stump.*

turnoff *n.* A road or path that leaves another road or path and travels in a different direction is a **turnoff**.

*We're lost—I think we should have taken that **turnoff** we passed a few miles back.*

Infinitive: turn on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn on & turns on	turning on	turned on	turned on

1. **turn . . . on** *p.v.* When you **turn on** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. **Turn off** is the opposite of **turn on**. **Switch on** is similar to **turn on**.

*Can you **turn** the light **on** please? It's dark in here.*

*This October has been so warm that I haven't **turned** the heat **on** once yet.*

turned on *part.adj.* After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is **turned on**. **Turned off** is the opposite of **turned on**. **Switched on** is similar to **turned on**.

*Be careful of the stove—it's **turned on**.*

2. **turn . . . on** *p.v. [informal]* Something that **turns** you **on** pleases you and causes you to gain interest in something or someone. Something about a person that **turns** you **on** causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person. **Turn off** is the opposite of **turn on**.

*When I saw this house from the outside, I didn't think I would buy it, but the beautiful woodwork inside really **turned** me **on**.*

*Erik's blue eyes **turn on** his wife.*

turned on *part.adj.* When something about a person causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person, you are **turned on**. **Turned off** is the opposite of **turned on**.

*Paul was really **turned on** after seeing all the beautiful women in the Victoria's Secret catalog.*

turn-on *n.* Something that pleases you and causes you to gain interest in something or someone is a **turn-on**. Something about a person that causes you to become sexually or romantically interested in that person is a **turn-on**. A **turnoff** is the opposite of a **turn-on**.

*I bought my wife an ankle bracelet for Valentine's Day. I think they're a **turn-on**.*

3. **turn on** *p.v.* When people or animals that you had good relations with **turn on** you, they stop being friendly and try to hurt you.

*Lydia used to be my friend, but now she's telling people terrible things about me.
I wonder why she **turned on** me like that?*
*Wild animals don't make good pets. They can be friendly one minute and **turn on**
you the next.*

4. **turn . . . on** (to) *p.v. [informal]* When you **turn** people **on** to something, you tell them about something you think they will like or something that will help them.

*Maria **turned me on** to a great Colombian restaurant.*
*This was a good book. Thanks for **turning me on** to it.*

Infinitive: turn out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn out & turns out	turning out	turned out	turned out

1. **turn out** *p.v. [usually followed by “to be” plus an adjective, an infinitive verb plus a noun, or a complete sentence]* When things or people **turn out** to be a certain way, it is discovered or considered that they are that way. When things or people **turn out** to be something, it is discovered or considered that they are that thing. When you say that it **turns out** (that) or **turned out** (that) and then make a statement of fact, you mean that this information, which is contrary to what you believed or expected, was discovered to be true.

*I didn't think I would like my brother's new wife, but she **turned out** to be very nice.*
*Before I met Rusty's son, Danny, I assumed he had red hair like his father, but Danny **turned out** to have black hair.*
*I thought Sam bought a Mercedes-Benz, but it **turns out** that he bought a BMW.*

2. **turn out** *p.v.* When something **turns out**, it becomes what you want it to become. When something **turns out** a certain way, it becomes that way.

*Did the pictures you took at the wedding **turn out**?*
*The pictures **turned out** perfectly.*
*Your plan was excellent, but it didn't **turn out** well.*

3. **turn . . . out** *p.v.* When people, companies, factories, workshops, etc., **turn out** something, they manufacture it or produce it.

*This new factory will **turn out** 50,000 units per year.*
*High schools in the United States are **turning out** people who can barely read.*

4. **turn out** (for) *p.v.* When people **turn out** or **turn out** for an event, they attend or participate in the event. When people **turn out** to do something, they go to a place to do it.

*Are you nuts? How many people do you think would **turn out** for an outdoor concert in the middle of winter?*

*Thousands of people **turned out** to see the Pope when he visited.*

turnout *n.* The number of people who attend or participate in an event is the **turnout**.

*Voter **turnout** for the election was only around 30 percent.*

Infinitive: turn over			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn over & turns over	turning over	turned over	turned over

1. **turn . . . over** *p.v.* When you **turn** something **over**, you move it so that the side that was on the bottom is on the top, and vice versa. When something **turns over**, it moves so that the side that was on the bottom is on the top, and vice versa.

*When one side of the steak is cooked, **turn** it **over** and cook the other side.*

*The driver was killed when his car **turned over**.*

2. **turn . . . over** (to) *p.v.* When you give something to someone because that person demands or requires it or because you are not its rightful owner, you **turn** it **over** or **turn** it **over** to that person. **Hand over** is similar to **turn over**.

*The detective always **turns** the evidence from the crime scene **over** to the lab for analysis.*

*After the thieves are captured, the stolen items will be **turned over** to the rightful owners.*

3. **turn . . . over** (to) *p.v.* When the police or other authorities are looking for people and you take these people or transfer control of them to the police or authorities, you **turn** them **over** or **turn** them **over** to the police or authorities.

*I caught a burglar in my basement, and I **turned** him **over** to the police.*

*The local police chief was relieved to **turn** the terrorist **over** to the FBI.*

4. **turn over** *p.v.* When employees of a company leave their jobs and are replaced by new employees, they **turn over**.

*Conditions at the factory were so bad that employees **turned over** at a high rate.*

*We have a very stable work force in our plant. Employees **turn over** very slowly.*

turnover *n.* The rate at which employees of a company leave and are replaced by new employees is the **turnover**.

*The new human resources manager said her top priority would be reducing the high **turnover**.*

5. **turn over** *p.v.* When a business **turns over** something that it sells, it continually sells it and replaces it with new merchandise.

*We're **turning over** forty cases of bananas a week in this supermarket.*

*Snowmobiles and skis **turn over** very slowly in the summer.*

turnover *n.* How much money a business has made in a certain time period is its **turnover**.

*The company's annual **turnover** increased by 36 percent compared to the previous year.*

Infinitive: turn up

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn up & turns up	turning up	turned up	turned up

1. **turn . . . up** *p.v.* When you **turn up** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to increase the level of what it is producing or doing. **Turn down** is the opposite of **turn up**.

*Will you **turn up** the TV? I can't hear it.*

*It was freezing in here last night, so I **turned** the heat **up**.*

2. **turn . . . up** *p.v.* When you **turn up** something, you find it or learn of it as a result of an investigation or search. When something **turns up**, it is found or is learned of as a result of an investigation or search.

*The police **turned up** enough evidence to convict Jake of murder.*

*Despite a thorough search, the murder weapon still hasn't **turned up**.*

3. **turn up** *p.v.* When people or things **turn up** at a place, they appear there. **Show up** is similar to **turn up**.

*It's hard to plan a picnic when I don't know how many people will **turn up**.*

*Every few years my worthless brother **turns up** at my door asking for money.*

PRACTICE

45-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I thought going camping would be a lot of fun, but it sure didn't _____ that way.
2. It's 2:30 in the morning—don't you think you ought to _____ soon?
3. Heather was sort of interested in Tom, but his childish behavior _____ her _____.
4. The store manager said that she usually _____ only 20 or 25 units per month.
5. Jake thought Hank was his best friend, but Hank _____ Jake and now they're enemies.
6. All the medical students must _____ their lab equipment _____ before leaving the lab.
7. Any spies caught behind enemy lines will be _____ to the military for questioning.
8. The investigation _____ evidence of corruption in City Hall.
9. This old house looks pretty bad now, but with enough time and money, you could _____ it _____ something really nice.
10. I want to watch TV. Please _____ it _____.
11. The volume is too low. Please _____ it _____.
12. Now the volume is too high. Please _____ it _____.
13. There's nothing good on TV. Please _____ it _____.
14. The first thing I noticed when I met my wife for the first time was her beautiful smile. It really _____ me _____.
15. Employees _____ at a very high rate in this industry.
16. Not many people are likely to _____ for the parade in this miserable weather.

17. The boy was given a reward for _____ the bag of money that he found in the street.
18. To get to Uncle John's house, you have to _____ the main road after you cross the bridge and drive north for three miles.
19. Mark knows a lot about wine. He's _____ me _____ to some excellent wines from California.
20. My supervisor _____ my request to be transferred to San Diego.
21. The first few chapters of this novel were a little boring, but now that I'm near the end, it's _____ to be a pretty good book.
22. Please _____ the carpet _____. I want to read the label on the back.
23. A huge crowd is expected to _____ at the airport to welcome the returning Stanley Cup champions.
24. This company has been _____ first-rate merchandise for a hundred years.
25. I told the teacher that I'd been in the hospital and wouldn't be able to _____ my project on time.
26. We've had one problem after another—this is _____ to be a bad day.
27. When Jake told his mother that he had murdered someone, she told him he had to _____ himself _____.

45-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Caterpillars become butterflies. What do caterpillars do?
2. Dan appeared at his uncle's funeral. What did Dan do?
3. Frank was thinking of asking Jane for a date, but when he saw her smoking one cigarette after another, he changed his mind. What did Jane's smoking do to Frank?
4. In Question 3, what does Frank think smoking is?
5. In Question 3, how did Frank feel when he saw Jane smoking?

6. Whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume, I feel romantic. What does the perfume do to me?
7. In Question 6, what do I think the perfume is?
8. In Question 6, how do I feel whenever my wife wears my favorite perfume?
9. You're changing the controls of the heater to make it warmer. What are you doing?
10. The rate at which old employees are replaced with new employees in my company is very low. What is very low at my company?
11. This factory manufactures 25,000 cars every year. What does the factory do?
12. Nicole didn't change the controls of her radio to make it louder. What didn't Nicole do?
13. The detective asked every bank employee a lot of questions about the missing money, but she hasn't discovered anything. What hasn't the detective done?
14. After the gas station went out of business, it was sold and changed into a Chinese restaurant. What happened to the gas station?
15. Sally wanted to dye her hair red, but it became orange. What did Sally's hair do?
16. Karen's father asked her if he could borrow enough money to pay his property taxes, and Karen couldn't say no to him. What couldn't Karen do?
17. Todd's company will probably make \$4 million this year. What will Todd's company probably do this year?
18. Ned hasn't given his paper to his teacher. What hasn't Ned done?
19. Lydia knows that her brother robbed a bank, but she's not going to tell the police. What isn't Lydia going to do to her brother?
20. So many people attended the political rally that there wasn't enough room in the auditorium. Why wasn't there enough room at the political rally?
21. In Question 20, the number of people who attended the rally was large. What was large?
22. David was too lazy to wash the rug, so he put the dirty side on the bottom and the clean side on the top. What did David do to the rug?

45-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit.

45-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

beat up, 44	get by, 42	get over, 42	lock up, 44
carry away, 44	get down, 42	get up, 42	run up, 43
get back, 42	get in/into, 42	gross out, 43	set out, 43
get behind, 42	get out, 42	head toward, 43	try on, 43

1. I lost a very expensive gold watch, and I'll be very surprised if I ever _____ it _____.
2. I had dinner with some friends, and we _____ a \$500 bill.
3. Have you _____ to see your parents in Alaska lately?
4. I should have _____ these pants _____ before buying them—they're too small.
5. Carlos was bothering his brother Alex, so Alex said to Carlos, "_____ of here!"
6. I called my brother in Miami and told him that I was leaving Boston at 8:40 in the morning and that I should _____ there around 1:00 in the afternoon.
7. I wish you'd chew with your mouth closed—you're _____ me _____.
8. Our flight won't _____ Santa Fe until after midnight.
9. After I leave Texas, I'm going to _____ Mississippi.
10. Karen's expecting me for dinner tonight at her house way out in the suburbs, but my car is in the shop. I don't know how I'm going to _____ there.
11. The night manager has to leave early tonight, so I'm going to _____ for him.
12. Hank had a fight with a guy at a party and got _____ pretty badly.
13. The new manager _____ to cut costs and increase profits.

14. Sofia is having a lot of trouble in her history class and is _____ further and further _____.
15. After her husband died, she had a hard time _____ it.
16. You can use my credit card to buy a few things, but don't get _____.

Unit 46

Stress in Phrasal Verbs with the Particle *Into*

As we saw in [Unit 6](#), three-word phrasal verbs are stressed on the particle, the word after the verb, whether they are separable or inseparable. This also applies to phrasal verbs that convert *in* to *into* when they are used with an object. Although these verbs are not made up of three words, recall that *into* is actually a combination of the particles *in* and *to*—two words written as one. For this reason, it is the first syllable of *into* which is stressed:

*The speakers are **built INTO** the wall.*

This is also true of phrasal verbs using *into* that do not have an *in* version:

*My niece lied to me and **conned** me **INTO** sending her money.*

Infinitive: build in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
build in & builds in	building in	built in	built in

1. **build . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **build** something **in** or **build** something **into** something else, you put it in the item you are making during its construction or assembly rather than adding it later.

*I told the builder that I wanted him to **build** some shelves **in**.*

*In the past, FM radios weren't **built into** cars—you had to add one later if you wanted one.*

built-in *part.adj.* When something has been put into something else during its construction or assembly, rather than being added later, it is **built-in**.

*The sound from the music system goes to **built-in** speakers in every room of the house.*

Infinitive: bump into			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

bump into & bumps into	bumping into	bumped into	bumped into
------------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------

1. **bump into** *p.v.* When you **bump into** things or people, you accidentally hit them with your body.

*I couldn't see where I was going in the dark, and I **bumped into** the door.*

*Would you please move these boxes—I keep **bumping into** them.*

2. **bump into** *p.v.* When you meet people unexpectedly or unintentionally, you **bump into** them. **Run into** is the same as **bump into**.

*We **bumped into** Sarah at the mall today.*

***Bumping into** one of my neighbors while I was in Rome was a big surprise.*

Infinitive: con into			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
con into & cons into	conning into	conned into	conned into

1. **con . . . into** *p.v. [informal]* When you **con** people **into** something or **con** people **into** doing something, you persuade them to do it by fooling or deceiving them. **Trick into** is similar to **con into**.

*They weren't sure that it was a good idea to give all their money to Marty, but he **conned** them **into** it.*

*That crooked mechanic tried to **con** me **into** paying for a lot of repairs my car didn't need.*

Infinitive: con out of			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
con out of & cons out of	conning out of	conned out of	conned out of

1. **con . . . out of** *p.v. [informal]* When you **con** people **out of** something, you persuade them to give it to you by fooling or deceiving them.

*Marty **conned** them **out of** their life savings.*

*That crooked mechanic tried to **con** me **out of** \$547.*

Infinitive: freak out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
freak out & freaks out	freaking out	freaked out	freaked out

1. **freak . . . out** *p.v. [informal]* When you **freak out**, you become very upset or very angry. When you **freak** other people **out**, you cause them to become very upset or very angry.

*Melanie **freaked out** when she learned that her husband had been arrested for murder.*

*I wish you would take that Halloween mask off—you're **freaking me out**.*

Infinitive: make for			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
make for & makes for	making for	made for	made for

1. **make for** *p.v.* When something causes another thing, situation, or event to have a certain quality or characteristic, it **makes for** the other thing, situation, or event.

*Pizza, football, and the kids staying with their grandparents **make for** a perfect Sunday afternoon.*

*Alcohol and teenage drivers **make for** trouble.*

2. **make for** *p.v. [informal]* When you **make for** a place, you go there in a hurry.

*After the robbery, the bank robbers **made for** the border.*

*The enemy soldiers are getting closer—let's **make for** the hills.*

Infinitive: talk into			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
talk into & talks into	talking into	talked into	talked into

1. **talk . . . into** *p.v.* When you **talk** people **into** something or **talk** people **into** doing something, you persuade them to do it. **Talk into** is the opposite of **talk out of**.

*My father didn't want to let me use his car Friday night, but I **talked him into** it.*

*This museum is really boring. I wish I hadn't let you **talk me into** coming here with you.*

Infinitive: talk out of

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
talk out of & talks out of	talking out of	talked out of	talked out of

1. **talk . . . out of** *p.v.* When you **talk** people **out of** something or **talk** people **out of** doing something, you persuade them not to do it. **Talk out of** is the opposite of **talk into**.

*That man was going to jump off the building, but the police officer **talked him out of** it.*

*Erik's parents **talked him out of** changing his major from business to philosophy*

PRACTICE

46-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. My daughter is trying to _____ me _____ getting her a pony, but I keep telling her we can't afford one.
2. When I ordered my computer, I had them _____ some extra memory.
3. It was a nice surprise to _____ Aunt Kathy today. I hadn't seen her in years.
4. Don't tell your mother you're going to shave your head—she'll _____.
5. Joe says he's going to quit school, and we can't _____ him _____ it.
6. Their sleazy son-in-law _____ them _____ lending him \$14,000.
7. It was so dark last night that I _____ a tree and broke my nose.
8. Nancy and Tom don't have anything in common—that doesn't _____ a happy marriage.

9. Don't trust Marty—he'll _____ you _____ your last penny.

10. When the enemy soldiers attacked, we _____ the woods.

46-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Karen is trying to persuade me to help her paint her house. What is Karen trying to do?
2. Francisco unexpectedly met Raul downtown a couple of days ago. What did Francisco do?
3. That lawyer is lying to you and trying to persuade you to give him everything you own. What is the lawyer trying to do?
4. Having both of my ex-wives at the party will make the evening very uncomfortable. What will having both of my ex-wives at the party do?
5. That dishonest guy deceived my Aunt Kathy to get her to sell her house for a lot less than it's worth. What did the dishonest guy do to my Aunt Kathy?
6. Carmen is upset and very nervous because she can't find her children at the shopping center. What is Carmen doing?
7. When my house was constructed, a shelf for a TV was made in the wall. What was done to the wall?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the shelf?
9. Bob has decided to quit his job, and no one can persuade him not to. What can no one do to Bob?

46-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit.

46-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these nouns from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

blowout, 43

break-in, 41

check-in, 41

checkout, 41

comeback, 40

lockup, 44

mix-up, 44

pickup, 39

run-up, 43

takeover, 39

wipeout, 39

1. The guy that got arrested didn't have enough money for bail, so he was put in the _____.
2. The baseball player had a few bad years, but last year he made an amazing _____ and had his best year ever.
3. Not one person was left alive after the battle—it was a complete _____.
4. _____ is two hours before the flight.
5. The hotel's _____ time is 11:00 A.M.
6. There was a tragic _____ at the hospital—a patient's healthy left kidney was removed instead of his diseased right kidney.
7. The detective asked the store owner for a complete list of items stolen during the _____.
8. Is this a _____ or a delivery?
9. After the military _____, hundreds of people were arrested.
10. Unfortunately, I sold my house before the big _____ in real estate prices.
11. The truck driver was injured in an accident after she had a _____ on the highway.

46-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

blow off, 40	give out, 43	lock up, 44	stick with, 4
bring up, 40	go away, 40	piss off, 44	stress out, 4
burst out, 40	kick out, 44	shut up, 43	turn in, 45
get by, 42	let in/into, 41	stand for, 34	turn into, 45

1. Sooner or later he'll get tired of running from the police, and he'll _____ himself _____.
2. I _____ my children _____ to be honest.
3. When we leave our summer home to go back to the city, we always _____ it _____ securely.
4. I took three aspirin, but this headache still hasn't _____.

5. Do you know what “Ph.D.” _____ ?
6. I usually check my work pretty carefully. I don’t know how this mistake _____ me.
7. Worrying about how I’m going to find the money to pay my taxes is really _____ me _____.
8. I’m tired of listening to my brother talk about winning \$4 million in the lottery. I wish he would just _____ .
9. Those new computers are really fast, but I’m going to _____ the one I have. It’s fine for writing letters.
10. The tennis player had to retire when his elbow _____.
11. I’m going to talk to my husband about _____ the garage _____ an apartment for my mother.
12. Joe promised that he’d help me fix my car yesterday, but he never came. He just _____ me _____.
13. Joe does that sort of thing all the time, and it’s very rude. He really _____ me _____.
14. The door was locked, so I knocked on it again and again until someone _____ me _____.
15. What did Nancy do to get herself _____ of school?
16. When I heard about the crazy thing that Nancy had done at school, I _____ laughing.

Unit 47

Particles Used Without Verbs

The particles of many phrasal verbs, especially phrasal verbs that relate to physical movement, are frequently used alone with a form of *be*. This is very common in conversation when the verb has already been stated at least once and does not need to be repeated:

Customer: Have you **run out** of coffee?

Store clerk: We **'re out** of regular coffee, but we **'re not out** of instant.

Marsha: When do you have to **move out** of your apartment?

Nancy: I have to **be out** by next Wednesday.

Jim: Did you **turn** the air conditioner **on**?

Bob: No, it **was on** when I came in.

Mother: Has your sister **woken up** yet?

Susie: No, she **'s still not up**.

Using the particle without a verb is also common when a phrasal verb can be understood from the context. Sometimes, only one verb is obvious:

Raul: **Are you through**?

Todd: No, I won't **be through** until after 4:00.

If this conversation occurred at a place of employment, the phrasal verb could only be **get through**. But often, in a particular situation, more than one verb might be understood, but to the speakers it is not important or necessary to be specific about which one:

Carlos: **Is Karen in**?

Paul: No, she **isn't**.

If this conversation occurred in an office building, several verbs might be understood: **come in, get in, (be) let in**.

Infinitive: brush up			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE

brush up & brushes up	brushing up	brushed up	brushed up
-----------------------	-------------	------------	------------

1. **brush up (on)** *p.v.* When you **brush up** or **brush up** on something, you study or practice a skill or subject you used to know but have forgotten or partly forgotten.

*It's been a long time since I studied algebra, but I'm going to need it if I go back to school to study for my master's degree, so I'd better **brush up**.*

*Frank's going to Peru next month, so he's been **brushing up** on his Spanish.*

Infinitive: come in			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come in & comes in	coming in	came in	come in

1. **come in/into** *p.v.* When people or things enter a place, room, house, etc., that you are in, they **come in** or **come into** it. **Go out** is the opposite of **come in**.

*Welcome to my house. Please **come in**.*

*The burglar **came into** the house through the back door.*

2. **come in** *p.v.* When a train, bus, airplane, or ship **comes in**, it arrives. **Get in** is similar to **come in**.

*Do you know when the train from San Francisco **comes in**?*

*David's plane hasn't **come in** yet.*

3. **come in** *p.v.* When people arrive at the place where they work, they **come in**. **Get in** is similar to **come in**.

*The manager is angry with Linda because she **comes in** late every day.*

*I called to tell the boss that I was sick and wouldn't be **coming in**.*

4. **come in** *p.v.* When something that a store will sell **comes in**, it is delivered to the store.

*Let's go shopping at Macy's tomorrow. The summer clothes have **come in**.*

*I couldn't buy that new book I wanted. It hasn't **come in** yet.*

5. **come in** *p.v.* When a thing or skill **comes in** handy, it is something useful that you like to have available when you need it.

*When I travel, I always take a small sewing kit with me; it really **comes in** handy if a button falls off.*

*I don't know how to speak Japanese, but knowing how to say the numbers and "please" and "thank you" when I was in Japan sure **came in** handy.*

Infinitive: cut back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
cut back & cuts back	cutting back	cut back	cut back

1. **cut back** (on) *p.v.* When you **cut back**, or **cut back** on the amount of money you spend, you spend less.

*The President said she was against **cutting back** on spending for education.*

*My father said that we're spending too much and have to **cut back**.*

cutback *n.* A **cutback** is a reduction in the amount of money you spend on something.

*The people who work on the air force base are worried that they'll lose their jobs because of military spending **cutbacks**.*

2. **cut back** (on) *p.v.* When you **cut back** or **cut back** on something that you consume, you use it less. When you **cut back** or **cut back** on something that you do, you do it less. **Cut down** is similar to **cut back**.

*Mark hasn't been able to quit smoking, but he has **cut back** a bit.*

*You're getting a little overweight. Maybe you should **cut back** on sweets.*

Infinitive: move in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
move in & moves in	moving in	moved in	moved in

1. **move in/into** *p.v.* When you **move in** or **move into** a place, you bring your furniture and other personal possessions into a place where you will live. **Move out** is the opposite of **move in/into**.

*The landlord said we could **move right in** if we want to.*

*Erik's **moving into** a bigger apartment next week.*

2. **move . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **move people in** or **move them into** a place, you bring their furniture and other personal possessions into a place where they will live. When you **move things in** or **move them into** a place, you take them in. **Move out** is the opposite of **move in/into**.

The movers **moved me in** in less than two hours.

Moving all this furniture **into** a fifth-floor apartment isn't going to be easy.

3. **move in** (with) *p.v.* When you **move in** or **move in** with people, you bring your furniture and other personal possessions into a place where you will live.

*Bill moved out of his house for a while when he separated from his wife, but yesterday he **moved back in**.*

*My Aunt Kathy might **move in** with her son and his family.*

Infinitive: move out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
move out & moves out	moving out	moved out	moved out

1. **move out** (of) *p.v.* When you **move out** or **move out** of a place, you take your furniture and other personal possessions out of a place where you lived. **Move in/into** is the opposite of **move out**.

*Could you help me **move out**? I have to be out by the end of the month.*

*Mr. and Mrs. Baker **moved out** of their big house and into a smaller place after their children grew up.*

2. **move . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **move people out** or **move them out** of a place, you take their furniture and other personal possessions out of a place where they lived. When you **move things out** or **move them out** of a place, you take them out. **Move in/into** is the opposite of **move out**.

*One of our roommates wasn't paying his rent, so we **moved his stuff out** while he was at work.*

*The company had a sale to try to **move some merchandise out** of the warehouse.*

Infinitive: pull out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pull out & pulls out	pulling out	pulled out	pulled out

1. **pull out** (of) *p.v.* When a car, truck, or other vehicle **pulls out** or **pulls out** of a parking space, it leaves the place where it was parked and starts driving in the street. When the drivers of cars, trucks, or other vehicles **pull out** or **pull out** of a parking space, they leave the place where they were parked and start driving in the street.

*The accident happened when the Ford **pulled out** in front of the Chevy.
You should fasten your seat belt before you **pull out** of the parking space.*

2. **pull out** (of) *p.v.* When you **pull out** or **pull out** of an agreement or arrangement, you leave it because you decide that you do not want to participate any longer.

*The French company reconsidered its agreement to build a plant in Canada and decided to **pull out**.*

*I wish I hadn't **pulled out** of that business deal. Now everyone who stayed in is making a lot of money.*

3. **pull . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When soldiers leave a combat zone or an area where combat is likely, they **pull out** or are **pulled out**.

*When Sergeant Jones saw the enemy soldiers getting closer, he ordered his men to **pull out**.*

*General Johnston **pulled** all the troops **out** of the occupied territory.*

pullout *n.* When soldiers leave a combat zone or an area where combat is likely, a **pullout** takes place.

*General Johnston ordered an immediate **pullout** of all troops in the occupied territory.*

Infinitive: put in

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put in & puts in	putting in	put in	put in

1. **put . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** something **in** or **put** something **into** a container, storage place, or building, you place it inside. **Take out** is the opposite of **put in/into**.

*Please **put** your clothes **in** the closet.*

*The clerk **put** the bottle **into** the bag and gave me a receipt.*

2. **put . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** money **in** or **put** money **into** a bank or an account at a bank, you deposit the money. **Put in/into** is the opposite of **take out**.

*I'm going to the bank today. How much money do you think I should **put in**?*

*We **put** \$10,000 **into** our savings account.*

3. **put . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** people **in** or **put** them **into** a prison, hospital, school, or other institution, you take them there or require that they go there.

*Jake got **put in** jail for 20 years.*

*Marty should be **put into** a mental institution.*

4. **put . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** time or effort **in** or **put** time or effort **into** something, you spend time and work hard to accomplish it.

*At the Christmas party, the manager thanked his employees for all the work they had **put in**.*

*I **put** a lot of time **into** becoming a doctor.*

5. **put . . . in/into** *p.v.* When you **put** money **in** or **put** money **into** something, you contribute money to help pay for something or as an investment you hope will return a profit.

*When the check came for dinner, we each **put** \$25 **in**.*

*I've already **put** \$100,000 **into** this business. I hope it starts making money soon.*

6. **put . . . in** *p.v.* When you construct or install something in a building, you **put** it **in**.

*We're having new carpeting **put in** next week.*

*Erik and Nancy are thinking about **putting in** central air conditioning.*

7. **put . . . in** *p.v.* When you cause people to be in a situation, position, or condition, you **put** them **in** that situation, position, or condition.

*You've **put** Jim **in** a very awkward situation.*

*Margaret Cummings was **put in** charge of the sales department.*

Infinitive: run out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
run out & runs out	running out	ran out	run out

1. **run out** (of) *p.v.* When people or things **run out** or **run out** of a place, room, building, etc., they leave it very quickly. **Run in/into** is the opposite of **run out**.

*There's Sofia across the street—**run out** and ask her to come over here.*

*When I opened the door, the dog **ran out** of the house.*

2. **run out** (of) *p.v.* When you do not have any more of something because you have used, consumed, or sold all of it, you **run out** or **run out** of it.

*I'm sorry I can't give you sugar for your coffee—I've **run out**.*

*Sam was late to work this morning because he **ran out** of gas.*

3. **run out** *p.v.* When something is completely used, consumed, or sold, it **runs out**.

*I played poker last night, and for a while I was ahead by \$3,000. But then my luck **ran out**, and I ended up losing it all.*

*My brother is too lazy to look for a job. He asks me for money, and when the money **runs out** he comes back for more.*

PRACTICE

47-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. We have a lot of shopping to do, but the store closes in 20 minutes, so let's try to finish before we _____ of time.
2. Michael _____ a lot of time _____ getting his pilot's license.
3. The government threatened to _____ of the cease-fire agreement after the latest terrorist bombing.
4. This little flashlight on my key chain _____ handy when it's dark outside.
5. I haven't stopped drinking completely, but I have _____ way _____.
6. When Timmy's mother saw him outside throwing rocks at cars, she _____ and stopped him.
7. We bought a house in Milwaukee, and we're _____ it next month.
8. Instead of spending all your money, maybe you should _____ some of it _____ the bank.
9. I'm starting a new job as a secretary next week, so I need to _____ on my typing.
10. After my mother died, I asked my father to _____ with me.
11. I'll be waiting for you at the station when your train _____.
12. All these problems are _____ me _____ a bad mood.
13. How much money are you going to _____ this investment fund?

14. We're very busy at work, so my boss asked me to _____ early tomorrow.
15. I need to find a new place to live soon. I have to _____ of the place I'm in now by the end of the month.
16. These computers are being sold at 15 percent off the regular price for three days only, so hurry before time _____.
17. Linda hired a carpenter to _____ some shelves _____ her son's room.
18. We lost the key for the front door, so everyone's been _____ through the back door all day.
19. Since Jim lost his job, we've had to _____ a lot on our spending.
20. The troops were _____ of Vietnam and sent back to the United States.
21. I bought a new bed for Susie, so I'm going to _____ her old bed _____ of her room and into her brother's room.
22. After my surgery, I was _____ the intensive care unit.
23. The store clerk says the new computer I want is supposed to _____ tomorrow.
24. My couch is huge—there's no way I can _____ it _____ my new place without help.
25. Erik _____ too much salt _____ the soup, and now it tastes terrible.
26. Safe drivers always look both ways before they _____ and drive away.

47-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Tom is going to live with his Uncle John. What is Tom going to do?
2. The government is spending less on the military. What is the government doing?
3. In Question 2, what would you call this reduction in military spending?

4. I can't figure out where the mosquitoes are entering my house. What can't I figure out?
5. My plane didn't arrive on time. What didn't my plane do?
6. Bob's taking all his furniture out of his old apartment. What is Bob doing?
7. You spent all your money, and now you're broke. What did you do?
8. Nancy's truck was parked, but now she's driving it into the street. What is Nancy doing?
9. Sarah shouldn't have built a pool in such a small backyard. What shouldn't Sarah have done?
10. Daniela hasn't studied Italian since high school, but she's been studying it again lately because she's going to Italy soon. What is Daniela doing?
11. Charles might change his mind and decide not to participate in a business deal. What might Charles do?
12. Your dentist told you that you should eat less candy. What did your dentist tell you?
13. Ned is going to arrive at work late tomorrow. What is Ned going to do?
14. Jane is working very hard to learn Chinese. What is Jane doing?
15. The basketball game ended before Jim's team could score enough points to win it. Why didn't Jim's team win the game?
16. Joe hasn't placed his clothes in the washing machine. What hasn't Joe done?
17. Tom asked Sally when she was taking her furniture into her new apartment. What did Tom ask Sally?
18. Bill deposits \$1,000 every month in his checking account. What does Bill do every month?

47-3. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

bump into, 46	get down, 42	make for, 46	sneak out, 4
come to, 21	get in/into, 42	nod off, 27	squeeze in, 4
con into, 46	get out, 42	rip off, 44	talk into, 46
con out of, 46	get up, 42	set out, 43	talk out of, 4
freak out, 46	kick out, 44	shut up, 43	try on, 43

1. Keith must have _____ thirty pairs of pants before picking one out.
2. Ernesto got _____ of the party after he started a fight.
3. You can't trust Marty at all. He _____ everyone he does business with.
4. I can't reach those books on the top shelf. Would you _____ them _____ for me, please?
5. That sneaky real estate agent _____ me _____ selling her my house for a lot less than it was worth.
6. David _____ on his fishing trip at 4:00 A.M.
7. Sam's wife didn't want to go camping with him, but he finally _____ her _____ it.
8. My father-in-law was _____ \$3,000 by a house painter who took his money but never came back to start painting the house.
9. When I was a child, my mother was on drugs and my father was in jail. That situation didn't _____ a very happy childhood.
10. Carlos _____ the table, and a cup of coffee fell on the floor.
11. All you ever do is talk, talk, talk. Will you please _____?
12. It sure was hot yesterday. It must have _____ to 100 degrees.
13. Our daughter has decided to get her nose pierced, and there's no way we can _____ her _____ it.
14. I found my old army uniform in the attic, and I can still _____ it even though it's twenty-five years old.
15. I tried to finish my project last night, but I couldn't because I kept _____ at my desk.
16. I saw a guy today who looked exactly like my dead brother. It really _____ me _____.
17. Larry _____ his father's gun _____ of his house so he could show it to his friends.

18. Can you tell me what the total is? How much does that _____
_____?
19. Michael weighs 350 pounds. There's no way he can _____
one of those narrow airplane seats.
20. My teacher caught me cheating on the test today, and he said he's going to call my
parents tomorrow to tell them. How am I going to _____ of this
mess?

Unit 48

Modals and Present Perfect Passive Phrasal Verbs

In [Unit 43](#), we discussed the use of several modal and semimodal auxiliaries in the present perfect. These same modals and semimodals are commonly used in passive sentences. The modal or semimodal is followed by *have* or the contraction *'ve*, *been*, and the past participle:

***could** + have + been + past participle*

***would** + have + been + past participle*

***should** + have + been + past participle*

***have to** + have + been + past participle*

***must** + have + been + past participle*

***might** + have + been + past participle*

***may** + have + been + past participle*

Let's compare a present perfect active sentence containing a modal with a present perfect passive sentence containing a modal:

active: Jane might have **switched on** the light.

passive: The light might have been **switched on**.

As we have seen, the object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence. Also, there is no object in the passive sentence, so the passive phrasal verb cannot be separated. The object of the active sentence can be used in a *by* phrase:

active: Jane might have **switched on** the light.

passive: The light might have been **switched on** (by Jane).

And once again we see that it is not always easy to distinguish between a past participle:

*The burglar alarm must have been **switched off** (by the night manager because he's the only one with a key).*

and a participle adjective:

*The burglar alarm must have been **switched off** (because if it had been on, everyone in the neighborhood would have heard it when the burglars smashed*

the window of the jewelry store).

Infinitive: hammer out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hammer out & hammers out	hammering out	hammered out	hammered out

1. **hammer . . . out** *p.v.* When two sides of a negotiation **hammer out** a deal, contract, treaty, or other similar agreement, they come to an agreement after difficult negotiations.

*After months of negotiation, the company and the union **hammered out** a contract that calls for a 9 percent raise in pay over three years.*

*We tried for days to **hammer** a deal **out**, but finally we gave up and called it off.*

Infinitive: knock out

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
knock out & knocks out	knocking out	knocked out	knocked out

1. **knock . . . out** *p.v.* When you **knock** people **out**, you hit them hard enough to cause them to lose consciousness. When people are **knocked out**, they are hit by someone or something hard enough to cause them to lose consciousness.

*The boxer **knocked** his opponent **out** with a blow to the head.*

*David fell and hit his head on the sidewalk so hard that it **knocked** him **out**.*

knockout *n.* A hit hard enough to cause someone to lose consciousness is a **knockout**.

*At the count of ten the referee declared a **knockout**.*

2. **knock . . . out** *p.v.* If something **knocks** you **out**, it impresses or surprises you a lot.

*Tom's new house is fabulous! It really **knocked** me **out**.*

*The Youngs' daughter is only sixteen and she's already in college? That just **knocks** me **out**.*

knockout *n.* A **knockout** is something that impresses or surprises you a lot.

*Have you seen Erik's new girlfriend? She's a real **knockout**.*

3. **knock . . . out** *p.v.* When you try very hard to please other people, you **knock** yourself **out** or **knock** yourself **out** to do something.

*Marsha's Thanksgiving dinner was fabulous. She really **knocked** herself **out**.*

*Thanks for inviting me to spend the weekend with you, but don't **knock** yourself **out**—I don't mind sleeping on the couch.*

4. **knock . . . out** *p.v.* When soldiers **knock out** a piece of the enemy's equipment, they destroy it or damage it enough so that it no longer operates.

*The enemy radar installation was **knocked out** by a 500-pound bomb.*

*I can't contact headquarters. I think our communications system might have been **knocked out** during the attack.*

Infinitive: look down on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look down on & looks down on	looking down on	looked down on	looked down on

1. **look down on** *p.v.* When you **look down on** people, you consider them to be less intelligent, less educated, or from a lower level of society than you.

*Some people **look down on** Hank because his father was in prison.*

***Looking down on** people because of things they have no control over is stupid.*

Infinitive: look up to

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
look up to & looks up to	looking up to	looked up to	looked up to

1. **look up to** *p.v.* When you **look up to** people, you admire and respect them.

*I've always **looked up to** my father because of his honesty and concern for others.*

*You should **look up to** people who have overcome difficulties to become successful.*

Infinitive: put back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
put back & puts back	putting back	put back	put back

1. **put . . . back** *p.v.* When you **put** something **back**, you return it to where it was before.

*After you finish listening to my CDs, please **put** them **back**.*

*Susie, I told you we're eating dinner in ten minutes, so **put** that cookie right **back**!*

2. **put . . . back** *p.v.* When something slows the development or progress of a project, it **puts** the project **back** or it **puts** the people involved in the project **back**.

*The hurricane **put** the hotel construction project **back** by at least three months.*

*I had planned to finish college last year, but being hospitalized for several months **put** me **back**.*

3. **put . . . back** *p.v.* When you **put back** the date that you plan to do or complete something by, you postpone it.

*The closing on the house I'm selling might have to be **put back** if the buyers can't get their loan approved in time.*

*The graduation date will have to be **put back** if the teachers strike doesn't end soon.*

4. **put . . . back** *p.v. [informal]* When you **put back** alcoholic beverages, you drink a lot of them.

*Did you see how much David was drinking last night? He can really **put** it **back**.*

*I'm not surprised he has a hangover—he must have **put back** half a bottle of tequila.*

Infinitive: switch off

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
switch off & switches off	switching off	switched off	switched off

1. **switch . . . off** *p.v.* When you **switch off** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to stop it from producing or doing something. **Turn off** is similar to **switch off**. **Switch on** is the opposite of **switch off**.

*Try to remember to **switch** the lights **off** when you leave the room.*

*I **switched off** the engine and got out of the car.*

switched off *part.adj.* After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to stop it from producing or doing something, it is **switched off**. **Switched on** is the opposite of **switched off**. **Turned off** is similar to **switched off**.

*Last night the light in the hallway was **switched off**, and I fell down the stairs.*

Infinitive: switch on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
switch on & switches on	switching on	switched on	switched on

1. **switch . . . on** *p.v.* When you **switch on** an electrical or mechanical device, you change the controls to make it start producing or doing something. **Turn on** is similar to **switch on**. **Switch off** is the opposite of **switch on**.

*Push this button to **switch** the computer **on**.*

*The sign should have been **switched on** by the manager in the morning.*

switched on *part.adj.* After you have changed the controls of an electrical or mechanical device to make it start producing or doing something, it is **switched on**. **Switched off** is the opposite of **switched on**. **Turned on** is similar to **switched on**.

*When I drove by the restaurant, I noticed that the sign wasn't **switched on**.*

Infinitive: throw out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
throw out & throws out	throwing out	threw out	thrown out

1. **throw . . . out** *p.v.* When you **throw** something **out**, you dispose of it by putting it in the wastebasket, trash, etc. **Throw away** is the same as **throw out**.

*I can't find some important papers. I think they might've been accidentally **thrown out**.*

*Don't **throw** that newspaper **out**—I haven't read it yet.*

2. **throw . . . out** (of) *p.v.* When you **throw** people **out** or **throw** people **out** of a group, place, building, or room, you order them to leave. **Kick out** is similar to **throw out**.

*Frank started a fight and got **thrown out** of the party.*

*I haven't paid my rent in six months, and I'm worried that the sheriff will come and **throw me out**.*

PRACTICE

48-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. We might _____ our wedding _____ until September so that Rosa's parents can attend.
2. Please _____ the lights _____. I'm trying to sleep.
3. Bob was _____ when the baseball hit him in the head.
4. When I was a little girl, I _____ my grandfather and wanted to be like him.
5. Sam must have _____ three gin and tonics in about a half an hour last night.
6. It's cold in here—the air conditioner shouldn't have been _____.
7. Mrs. Flores was so angry with her husband that she _____ him right _____ of the house.
8. My wife thinks I forgot our anniversary again, so she's going to be _____ when I give her this gold bracelet.
9. The blizzard has _____ our efforts to find the crashed plane, but we'll keep looking until we find it.
10. I'm tired of looking at all this junk—why don't you _____ it _____?
11. If the two countries can't _____ a peace treaty, fighting will certainly resume.
12. Charles _____ anyone who comes from the poor side of town.
13. If you're finished with these tools, _____ them _____.
14. The soldier used a bazooka to _____ an enemy tank.
15. Timmy's mother planned a really nice birthday party for Timmy and all his friends. She really _____ herself _____.

48-2. On a separate piece of paper, write three sentences using the objects in parentheses. Be sure to put the objects in the right place.

1. General Johnston had to *put back*. (the attack, it)
2. Have you *switched on*? (the TV, it)
3. Are you going to *switch off*? (the lights, them)
4. *Throwing out* is going to be a big job. (all this junk, it)

48-3. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. The judge's decision has slowed our fight for justice. What has the judge's decision done to us?
2. Jim respects his uncle and wants to be like him. What does Jim do to his uncle?
3. Todd was really amazed at how good Erik's new book is. What did Erik's book do to Todd?
4. In Question 3, what would Todd call Erik's book?
5. You pushed the button on the remote, and now the TV is on. What did you do to the TV?
6. In Question 5, how would you describe the TV after I pushed the button on the remote?
7. The lights were on, but they're not on anymore. What must have been done to the lights?
8. In Question 7, how would you describe the lights now?
9. Mary and Larry's lawyers finally agreed upon a divorce settlement. What did the lawyers do to the divorce settlement?
10. Charles thinks people from that part of town are low-class. What does Charles do to people from that part of town?
11. Joe would have been ordered to leave his house if he hadn't paid his late mortgage payments. What would have happened to Joe if he hadn't paid his late mortgage payments?

48-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these nouns from previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

carryout, 28
cutback, 47

lookout, 29
make-up, 23

rip-off, 44
runaround, 40

turn-on, 45
turnout, 45

falling-out, 32

pullout, 47

turnoff, 45

turnover, 45

1. Heather kind of liked Ann's brother until she saw him smoking. To her that's a big _____.
2. The Senate voted against a _____ in spending for AIDS research.
3. Lydia doesn't want anyone to take pictures of her without her _____ on.
4. Bill thinks that Nicole's short skirt is a _____.
5. The soldiers were ordered to prepare for a _____.
6. I hate cooking, so we eat _____ food almost every night.
7. I've gone to every office in City Hall about my problem, but no will help me. They just give me the _____.
8. The company's high _____ rate is one reason why it lost money last year.
9. Can you believe the frames for these glasses cost \$400? What a _____.
10. One thief broke into the store while the other stayed outside as a _____.
11. The _____ for the parade would have been a lot bigger if it hadn't been raining.
12. George had a _____ with his brother and hasn't spoken with him for fifteen years.

48-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

blow out, 43

con into, 46

pull out, 47

talk into, 46

brush up, 47

con out of, 46

put in/into, 47

talk out of, 46

bump into, 46

move in/into, 47

stick out, 32

turn over, 45

carry away, 44

move out, 47

stress out, 44

turn up, 45

1. Your work isn't very good. You ought to _____ more effort _____ it.
2. I was so mad at my boss that I almost quit my job. Fortunately, my wife _____ me _____ it.

3. Did you see Mike's house? He said he was going to put a few Christmas tree lights on the roof, but there must be 5,000. I guess he got _____.
4. Don't let that dishonest mechanic _____ you _____ any money for unnecessary car repairs.
5. France was a member of NATO until it _____ in 1966.
6. Don't quit now, we're almost finished. You've just got to _____ it _____ for a little while longer.
7. What a surprise! I _____ Bob at the train station yesterday. I hadn't seen him in years.
8. The police acted on a tip that the suspect would be at the bus station on Saturday morning, but he didn't _____.
9. If you're not careful that crook will _____ you _____ selling him your land for a lot less than it's worth.
10. Mike used to speak Arabic pretty well, but he ought to _____ before he goes to Egypt.
11. How could I have been _____ doing something stupid?
12. The apartment has been cleaned and painted. You can _____ right _____ any time you want.
13. _____ it _____. I want to see what's on the other side.
14. Living with Sam is driving me crazy—I have to _____.
15. After you make a wish, you can _____ the candles.
16. Living in a house with seven dogs is really _____ my cat _____.

Unit 49

Combinations of *Get, Right, Back, and To*

The focus of this unit is an expanded definition of the two-word phrasal verb **get to** and the three-word phrasal verb **get back to**. The purpose is to try to make some sense out of a seemingly limitless number of idiomatic combinations of *get, to*, and various particles and adverbs, in particular *right* and *back*, and to demonstrate that many phrasal verbs comprised of *get* and a particle are actually variations of **get to** that can be modified with *right* and/or *back*.

Remember that *back* is sometimes part of a phrasal verb and sometimes an adverb used to modify a phrasal verb (review [Unit 26](#)), although we will see that there is often no difference in meaning between the phrasal verb **get back** (to), discussed in [Unit 42](#), and the phrasal verb **get to** modified by *back* (**get back to**).

The numbers in the chart correspond with the meanings in the definitions.

get to

1. Although the phrasal verb **get to** is defined here as meaning *arrive*, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs that were discussed in [Unit 42](#):

Bill got to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria.)

Bill got back to Peoria. (Bill returned to Peoria.)

Bill got up to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the south.)

Bill got down to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the north.)

Bill got over to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or west.)

Bill got out to Peoria. (Bill arrived in Peoria from the east or from a larger city.)

We see that **get back** (to), **get up** (to), **get down** (to), **get over** (to), and **get out**(to) are variations of **get to** but with additional information. These verbs can be modified with *right*, meaning *immediately, quickly, or directly* (see [Unit 10](#)):

Bill got right back to Peoria. (Bill returned to Peoria quickly.)

Get to work has two meanings, similar but not the same. **Get to work** can refer to *an arrival at a place where someone works*:

Ann got to work. (Ann arrived at the place where she works.)

But **get to** work (see meaning 3) can also mean *start working*, without any reference to a change of location:

*Joe **got to** work. (Joe started working.)*

*Joe **got back to** work. (Joe started working again.)*

*Joe **got right to** work. (Joe started working immediately.)*

*Joe **got right back to** work. (Joe started working again immediately.)*

two-word phrasal verb <i>get to</i>			
arrive at a location, reach a level	start	be permitted or allowed to do something	bother, annoy
<p>1</p> <p><i>get (right back) to _____</i> a place</p> <p>basis for:</p> <p><i>get (right) back to</i></p> <p><i>get (right back) up (to)</i></p> <p><i>get (right back) down (to)</i></p> <p><i>get (right back) over (to)</i></p> <p><i>get (right back) out (to)</i></p>	<p>3</p> <p><i>get (right back) to _____</i> something you want or need to do</p>	<p>5</p> <p><i>get to _____</i> do something</p>	<p>6</p> <p><i>_____ get to _____</i> something someone</p>
<p><i>get (right back) to <u>work</u></i> a place</p>	<p><i>get (right back) to <u>work</u></i> something you want or need to do</p>		
<p>2</p> <p><i>get (right back) to _____</i> a level, amount, number</p> <p>basis for:</p> <p><i>get (right) back (to)</i></p> <p><i>get (right back) up (to)</i></p> <p><i>get (right back) down (to)</i></p>	<p>4</p> <p><i>get to _____</i> doing something gradually</p>		

three-word phrasal verb
get back to

contact someone again

1
get (right) back to _____
someone

The difference in these two meanings is illustrated by the following sentence:

*I **got to** work at 9:00, but I didn't **get to** work until 10:00, which can be paraphrased as I arrived at my office at 9:00, but I didn't start working until 10:00.*

2. Although the phrasal verb **get to** is defined here as meaning *reach a certain level, number, or amount*, it can be understood as the basis for some of the phrasal verbs discussed in [Unit 42](#):

*Jane **got to** 120 pounds.*

*Jane **got back** to 120 pounds. (Jane weighs 120 pounds again.)*

*Jane **got up** to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh less than 120 pounds.)*

*Jane **got down** to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh more than 120 pounds.)*

We see that **get back** (to), **get up** (to), and **get down** (to) are variations of **get to** but with additional information.

Get up (to) and **get down** (to) can be modified by *back*:

*Jane **got back up** to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, lost weight, and then gained it back.)*

*Jane **got back down** to 120 pounds. (Jane used to weigh 120 pounds, gained weight, and then lost it.)*

3. If you start to do something, you **get to** it:

*I'll try to **get to** my homework after dinner.*

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later start to do it again, you **get back to** it:

*I'll try to **get back to** my homework after dinner.*

If you start to do something, stop doing it, and then later quickly start to do it again, you **get right back to** it:

*I'll try to **get right back to** my homework after dinner.*

Remember that when both *right* and *back* are used, *right* always comes first:

~~*I'll try to **get back right to** my homework after dinner.*~~

get back to

1. **Get back to** is a three-word verb meaning *talk to someone again later*. **Get back to** does not vary in form—neither *back* nor *to* is optional.

Infinitive: clog up

--	--	--	--

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
clog up & clogs up	clogging up	clogged up	clogged up

1. **clog . . . up** *p.v.* When people or things **clog up** a drain or something else that liquids must flow through, they put something in it that prevents water or other liquids from going through it or that prevents it from working properly.

*Don't pour that bacon grease in the sink—you'll **clog** the drain **up**.*

*Dr. Smith said my arteries were so **clogged up** by plaque deposits that it was a miracle I was still alive.*

clogged up *part.adj.* When a drain or something else that liquids must flow through is **clogged up**, something is in it that prevents water or other liquids from going through it or that prevents it from working properly.

*The mechanic told me that the engine valves in my car were **clogged up**.*

Infinitive: get ahead			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get ahead & gets ahead	getting ahead	got ahead	gotten/got ahead

1. **get ahead** *p.v.* When you **get ahead**, you become more successful and make progress in your job or your life.

*With your pessimistic attitude, you'll never **get ahead**.*

***Getting ahead** is pretty easy when your father owns the company.*

Infinitive: get back to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get back to & gets back to	getting back to	got back to	gotten/got back to

1. **get back to** *p.v.* When you **get back to** people, you talk to them later, usually because you do not have time to talk to them at the time or because you will have information for them later that you do not have now.

*I don't have time to talk now. I'm really busy. Can I **get back to** you?*

*That real estate agent still hasn't **gotten back to** me to let me know if our offer was accepted.*

Infinitive: get on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get on & gets on	getting on	got on	gotten/got on

1. **get on** p.v. When you move your body toward something and stand, sit, or lie on it, you **get on** it.

*The nurse asked me to take off my shirt and **get on** the examination table.
If you **get on** that chair you can reach the top shelf.*

2. **get on** p.v. When you mount an animal, bicycle, motorcycle, etc., you **get on** it.

***Getting on** a camel isn't as easy as **getting on** a horse.
The children **got back on** their bikes and went home.*

3. **get on** p.v. When you enter a bus, train, airplane, ship, etc., you **get on** it.

*The bus stopped so that I could **get on**.
Only people who are going on the cruise can **get on** the ship.*

4. **get . . . on** p.v. When you **get** an item of clothing **on**, you put it on your body.

***Get** your coat **on**. It's cold outside.
These gloves are too small. I can't **get them on**.*

5. **get on** (with) p.v. When you continue doing something, you **get on**, **get on** with what you were doing, or **get on** with it.

*It's getting late. If we're going to finish this work today we'd better **get on** with it.
I didn't say you could stop! **Get on** with your work.*

Infinitive: get to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
get to & gets to	getting to	got to	gotten/got to

1. **get . . . to** p.v. When you **get to** a place, you arrive there. When you **get** people **to** a place, you help them to go there or take them there. When you **get to** work, you arrive at the place where you work.

*Sarah left her house at 8:30 and **got to** the beach at 9:15.*

*That slow taxi driver **got us to** the airport so late that we missed our plane.*

*Frank got fired because he kept **getting to** work late.*

*I went to the restaurant across the street for lunch, and I didn't **get back to** work until 2:30.*

2. **get to** p.v. When things or people **get to** a certain level, number, or amount, they reach it.

*It was very hot yesterday. It must have **gotten to** 100 degrees.*

*When I run, I always try to **get to** five miles before I quit.*

3. **get to** p.v. When you **get to** something that you want or need to do, you find the time to do it. When you **get to** work, you start working.

*I didn't have time to do the ironing last night. I'll try to **get to** it tonight.*

*Karen finally **got back to** her school project yesterday. She hadn't worked on it for weeks.*

*You've wasted the entire morning. When are you going to **get to** work? My boss told me to get off the phone and **get back to** work.*

4. **get to** p.v. [informal] When you **get to** doing something, you begin to do it gradually.

*Dad **got to** thinking that maybe we ought to move to Los Angeles and try to find work there.*

*After seeing all those strange lights in the sky, I **got to** wondering if maybe UFOs really exist after all.*

5. **get to** p.v. When you **get to** do something, you are allowed to do it or are able to do it.

*Timmy was excited because he **got to** ride a pony.*

*I hope I **get to** shake the President's hand after his speech.*

6. **get to** p.v. When something **gets to** you, it bothers or annoys you, either psychologically or physically.

*Jim's constant complaining is really starting to **get to** his wife.*

*Let's sit down and rest—this heat is **getting to** me.*

Infinitive: hang on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hang on & hangs on	hanging on	hung on	hung on

1. **hang on** (to) *p.v.* When you **hang on** or **hang on** to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. **Hold on** is similar to **hang on**.

*I fell off the horse because I wasn't **hanging on** tightly enough.*

*If she'd **hung on** to my hand, she wouldn't have fallen off the cliff.*

2. **hang on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hang on**, you wait for a short time. **Hold on** is the same as **hang on**.

***Hang on** for a minute—I'll be right back.*

*Judy's coming to the phone now—can you **hang on**?*

Infinitive: start off			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
start off & starts off	starting off	started off	started off

1. **start off** (with/by) *p.v.* When an activity or event **starts off**, it begins. When you **start** an activity or event **off** with something, you begin with it. When you **start** an activity or event **off** by doing something, you begin by doing it.

*The singer **started** the concert **off** with a song from her latest CD.*

*Many speakers like to **start off** a speech by telling a joke.*

2. **start off** *p.v.* When people or things **start off** a certain way, they are this way at the beginning of a process that changes them. **Start out** is similar to **start off**.

*The day **started off** nice, but it got cold and cloudy.*

*I thought the movie was good, but it **started off** kind of boring.*

Infinitive: throw away			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
throw away & throws away	throwing away	threw away	thrown away

1. **throw . . . away** *p.v.* When you throw something **away**, you dispose of it by putting it in the wastebasket, trash, etc. **Throw out** is the same as **throw away**.

*If you're finished with these papers, **throw them away**.*

*Nancy's outside looking in the trash for her wedding ring. It was accidentally **thrown away**.*

2. **throw . . . away** *p.v.* When you **throw away** something important or valuable, you foolishly do something that causes you to lose it.

*This is your last chance to save your marriage, so don't **throw it away**.*

*When I got mad and quit my job, I **threw away** a chance to become vice-president of the company.*

PRACTICE

49-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. We were lucky that the floodwater didn't _____ the second floor.
2. These steps have ice on them, so _____ to my arm.
3. I usually _____ work at 8:40.
4. It's important to _____ your day _____ with a good breakfast.
5. I never used to care about Maria's bad attitude, but now it's starting to _____ me.
6. I'm a little busy now. Give me your phone number, and I'll _____ right _____ you.
7. Go _____ your shoes _____. We're leaving in a minute.
8. Ann cut her hair in the bathroom, and she _____ the sink _____ with hair.
9. Don't let the baby _____ the table—he might fall off.
10. If you hadn't _____ the theater late, you wouldn't have missed the beginning of the movie.
11. _____ all that junk in the garage made a lot more room.
12. As Jerry was _____ the train, he realized that he had forgotten his ticket.
13. Whenever I _____ feeling depressed, I call my mother.
14. If you want to _____ in this world, you need a good education.

15. The trail to the top of the mountain _____ level, but then it gets steeper and steeper.
16. Maybe you should _____ with your work and stop wasting time.
17. _____ for a couple of minutes—I'm almost ready.
18. This is a great opportunity. Don't be stupid and _____ it _____.
19. I know you're busy, but when do you think you might have time to _____ back _____ fixing that leak in the roof?
20. I waited outside Mr. Baker's office for two hours, but I never _____ talk to him.
21. Manuela fell off her bike, but she _____ right back _____ again.
22. _____ work! This has to be finished in three hours, and you haven't even started.

49-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs and participle adjectives from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Linda's three-year-old daughter can't put her shoes on. What can't Linda's three-year-old daughter do?
2. Luis started to feel a little depressed. What did Luis do?
3. Marty had a nice family and a good job, but he lost them because of drugs. What did Marty do to his family and job?
4. After I take a break, I'm going to continue working immediately. What am I going to do?
5. Betty doesn't have the information I want, so she's going to call me when she does. What is Betty going to do?
6. The sewer drain became blocked by dead leaves. What happened to the sewer drain?
7. In Question 6, how would you describe the sewer drain after it became blocked?
8. Ned has never arrived at his office after 9:30. What has Ned never done?
9. You continued with your work. What did you do?

10. When the temperature inside the turkey reaches 190 degrees, take it out of the oven.
When should the turkey be taken out of the oven?
11. Bill said that he couldn't wait any longer. What did Bill say?
12. My taxes are due in three days, so I've got to do them tonight. What have I got to do?
13. Sam's birth certificate must have been accidentally put in the trash. What must have happened to Sam's birth certificate?
14. Dan showed me how to mount a horse. What did Dan show me?
15. Their marriage began well, but things got worse. What did their marriage do?
16. My brother told me that I shouldn't let it bother me. What did my brother tell me?
17. Francesca was allowed to pet a baby tiger at the zoo. What happened to Francesca?
18. The mountain climber held the rope tightly. What did the mountain climber do?
19. Mike went to the diving board and stood on it. What did Mike do?
20. The bus driver stepped out of the bus to check the tires, and then he entered the bus again immediately. What did the bus driver do after he checked the tires?
21. It's been only fifteen minutes since Heather left. She could not have arrived at the airport already. What couldn't Heather have done already?
22. The salesperson always begins his presentation by introducing himself. What does the salesperson always do?
23. Having an MBA should help you to progress in your career. What should an MBA do?

49-3. On a separate piece of paper, write five original sentences using *get to* and *get back to*. Try to use *right* and *back* in some of the sentences.

49-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

blurt out, 33	get over, 42	look down on, 48	switch on, 4
come in/into, 47	hammer out, 48	look up to, 48	throw out, 4
con into, 46	knock out, 48	put back, 48	trick into, 34
cut back, 47	know about, 33	set out, 49	turn down, 4
get off on, 40	let in/into, 41	switch off, 48	

1. The company has decided to save money by _____ on advertising.
2. Look at the arrival monitor to see if his plane has _____ yet.
3. That sneaky car salesperson _____ me _____ paying for a lot of options I didn't want.
4. Those old shoes are so ugly. Why don't you just _____ them _____?
5. Anyone who has done as much good for other people as he has deserves to be _____.
6. Charles used to _____ me because he went to college and I didn't.
7. I almost had a heart attack when Linda _____ that she saw my husband at a hotel with his secretary.
8. The opening of the new factory had to be _____ because some equipment hadn't been delivered.
9. Janice loves to cook, and she especially _____ baking fancy pastries.
10. The two sides finally _____ a deal _____ at several days of talks.
11. Rio de Janeiro is so beautiful. It _____ me _____ when I saw it.
12. Jim asked Lydia to marry him, but she _____ him _____.
13. That chimney is _____ a lot of cold air _____.
14. Most people _____ a cold in four or five days.
15. If it gets too cold in here, _____ the air conditioner.
16. Could you _____ the lights _____ please, it's getting dark.
17. After I was promoted to manager, I _____ to totally reorganize my department.

Unit 50

Keep at it!

I hope the time and effort you've **put into finding out** more about phrasal verbs has **paid off**. If you've **knocked yourself out**, **stuck with** it, and not **fallen behind** or gotten **mixed up** or **burned-out**, a great improvement in your ability to understand and use English has **come about**—you've **ended up** being better able to **figure out** what you read and hear, and better able to **come up with** the right word when you write or speak. But don't get **stressed-out** and **give up** if you can't remember every meaning of every verb—improving your vocabulary takes time. It **comes down to** regularly **brushing up** on what you have learned and, when you **come across** a word you don't know, **looking it up** in a dictionary. **Keep at it!**

Infinitive: come by			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come by & comes by	coming by	came by	come by

1. **come by** *p.v.* When you discuss how somebody **came by** something, you explain how they obtained something in a way that seems surprising, unlikely, or indirect.

*The detective wondered how a ninety-two-year-old woman in Hawaii **came by** a gun used in a murder in New York fourteen years earlier.*

*The tax collectors asked me to explain how, with a reported income of \$35,000, I **came by** a \$4 million home.*

Infinitive: come down to			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
come down to & comes down to	coming down to	came down to	come down to

1. **come down to** *p.v.* When the key to understanding a situation or problem is knowledge and consideration of a certain aspect of the situation or problem, this aspect of the situation or problem is what the situation or problem **comes down to**.

*Learning a language **comes down to** practice, practice, practice.*

*Our marriage problems aren't really that complicated. What it **comes down to** is whether you're willing to deal with your drinking problem.*

Infinitive: deal with			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
deal with & deals with	dealing with	dealt with	dealt with

1. **deal with** *p.v.* When you **deal with** a project or a problem, you do what you must do to complete the project or to solve the problem.

*There are many problems, but I can **deal with** only one at a time.*

*After school the principal will **deal with** the boys who broke the window.*

2. **deal with** *p.v.* When a book, film, article, speech, etc., **deals with** a certain subject, that is what it is about.

*The governor's speech **dealt with** the growing crime rate.*

*I read an interesting article **dealing with** global warming.*

Infinitive: hold on			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
hold on & holds on	holding on	held on	held on

1. **hold on** (to) *p.v.* When you **hold on** or **hold on** to something, you hold it tightly so that you will not fall or be hurt. **Hang on** is similar to **hold on**.

*When the horse jumped over the fence, I **held on** as hard as I could.*

***Hold on** to the rail when you get out of the bathtub—it's slippery.*

2. **hold on** (to) *p.v.* When you **hold on** or **hold on** to people, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from leaving. When you **hold on** or **hold on** to things, you hold them tightly to protect them or to prevent them from being taken.

*Sam grabbed the robber's legs and **held on** while the guard handcuffed her.*

We were **holding on** to each other as the tornado passed.

3. **hold on** *p.v. [informal]* When you **hold on**, you wait for a short time. **Hang on** is the same as **hold on**.

Can you **hold on** just a little longer? I'll be right with you.

I've been **holding on** for fifteen minutes. I can't wait any longer.

Infinitive: pay back

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
pay back & pays back	paying back	paid back	paid back

1. **pay . . . back** *p.v.* When you **pay** people **back**, you give them money that you borrowed from them.

Would you lend me \$200? I'll **pay** you **back** next Friday when I get paid.

Mark has never been **paid back** for all his sister's medical bills.

2. **pay . . . back (for)** *p.v.* When you **pay** people **back** or **pay** people **back** for something bad they have done to you, you do something bad to them.

I'll **pay** that guy **back** for the terrible things he's done to me if it takes the rest of my life.

Jake shot Hank to **pay** him **back** for turning him in to the police.

Infinitive: take up on

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
take up on & takes up on	taking up on	took up on	taken up on

1. **take . . . up on** *p.v. [always separated]* When you **take** people **up on** an offer, you accept their offer.

My brother has invited us many times to visit him in Hawaii, and last winter we **took** him **up on** the offer.

Nicole has never **taken** me **up on** my offer to lend her the money she needs for her dental bills.

Infinitive: turn around

PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
turn around & turns around	turning around	turned around	turned around

1. **turn . . . around** *p.v.* When you **turn around**, you move a vehicle or your body so that it faces the opposite direction. When you **turn** something **around**, you move it so that it faces the opposite direction.

*Someone called my name, and I **turned around** to see who it was.*

*You should **turn** this house plant **around** so that the other side can get some light.*

2. **turn . . . around** *p.v.* When you **turn around** a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, etc., you improve it so that it is successful.

***Turning** this money-losing company **around** is going to take several years.*

*The quarterback completed four passes in the last five minutes of the football game and completely **turned it around**.*

turnaround *n.* A **turnaround** is a major improvement in a bad situation, a failing business, a losing game, etc.

*We won the game in a last-minute **turnaround**.*

*This company was losing money, but there's been a major **turnaround** since the new manager took over.*

Infinitive: wear out			
PRESENT TENSE	-ING FORM	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
wear out & wears out	wearing out	wore out	worn out

1. **wear . . . out** *p.v.* When something **wears out** or you **wear** it **out**, it becomes damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

*People who live in the city **wear out** their car brakes faster than people who live in the country.*

*The carpet in the hallway **wore out** and had to be replaced.*

worn-out *part.adj.* When something is **worn-out**, it has become damaged or weak from use and age and is no longer usable.

*I need new running shoes. These are totally **worn-out**.*

2. **wear . . . out** *p.v.* When something **wears** you **out**, it makes you very tired.

*Playing with his grandchildren really **wore** Fred **out**.*

*Shoveling snow for three hours would **wear** anyone **out**.*

worn-out *part.adj.* When something has made you very tired, you are **worn-out**.

*I have to sit down and rest for a minute—I'm **worn-out**.*

PRACTICE

50-1. On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with phrasal verbs from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. I lent Sally \$1,000 last year, but she still hasn't _____ me _____.
2. Children usually get too big for their clothes long before the clothes _____.
3. The company's new CEO promised the shareholders that he would _____ the company _____.
4. Judy told me that she said all those terrible things about me at work to _____ me _____ for stealing her boyfriend.
5. Dr. Wood's new book _____ preventive medicine.
6. Carrying those boxes of books up to the attic _____ me _____.
7. Like so many things in life, this problem _____ money.
8. Jim drove right past Bob's house, so he had to _____ and go back.
9. _____ to my hand, Susie—it's very crowded here, and I don't want you to get lost.
10. I _____ that problem yesterday, so you don't need to worry about it anymore.
11. You have so many unusual and beautiful antiques in your house. How did you _____ them?
12. It was so windy that I had to _____ to a signpost to keep from falling over.

13. Mike has invited me to his house for dinner several times, but I've never _____ him _____ the offer.

14. _____ just a minute! Where do you think you're going?

50-2. On a separate piece of paper, write answers to the questions using phrasal verbs, participle adjectives, and nouns from this unit. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person.

1. Tom's been waiting for ten minutes. What has Tom been doing?
2. My shoes have holes in the bottom, and now I can't wear them. What happened to my shoes?
3. In Question 2, how would you describe my shoes?
4. The country's economy was bad, but now it's improving. What is the country's economy doing?
5. The main thing that Lydia will consider when she chooses a college is how good the MBA program is. What is important to Lydia in choosing a college?
6. The police wanted to know how Nicholas had obtained the murdered man's credit card. What did the police want to know about the murdered man's credit card?
7. Bill's baseball team was way behind, but they ended up winning the game. What would you call the game?
8. Mike lent Frank \$20, and tomorrow Frank is going to give Mike \$20. What is going to happen to Mike tomorrow?
9. Sarah asked me if I would like her to come to my house to help me with my homework, and I said yes. What did I do?
10. Ms. Cummings will do whatever she needs to do to solve the problem after dinner. What will Ms. Cummings do after dinner?
11. The robber couldn't take my mother's purse because she held it tightly in her hand. What did my mother do to her purse?
12. Shampooing the carpet was a lot of work, and it made Janice really tired. What did shampooing the carpet do to Janice?
13. In Question 12, how did Janice feel after shampooing the carpet?

50-3. On a separate piece of paper, write eight original sentences using phrasal verbs from this unit.

50-4. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these participle adjectives from this unit and previous units. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

beat-up, 44	locked up, 44	switched on, 48
built-in, 46	mixed up, 44	turned off, 45
clogged up, 49	pissed off, 44	turned on, 45
dumbed down, 37	stressed-out, 44	worn-out, 50
grossed out, 43	switched off, 48	

1. Trying to take care of my family and work full-time has made me really _____.
2. You should get rid of those _____ shoes and buy some new ones.
3. I felt really _____ after dancing the merengue with Maria.
4. Maria seemed a little _____ when she saw my big belly hanging over my belt.
5. While I was driving on the interstate, about a billion bugs splattered all over the windshield. I was really _____.
6. My car looks pretty _____, but it runs all right.
7. This sink is all _____. We'll have to call a plumber.
8. Could you help me with my calculus homework? I don't understand it at all, and I'm totally _____.
9. You should keep guns _____ if there are children in the house.
10. Mike's really _____ about having to work on Sunday. He was planning to go to the football game, but now he can't.
11. All computers today have a _____ CD-ROM drive.
12. I like to leave the radio _____ when I'm not home so that burglars will think that someone is at home.
13. It's very hot in here. Why is the air conditioner _____?
14. If we gave our students the tests provided by the textbook publisher, we'd have a zero percent pass rate. We've got to use our own _____ versions of the test.

50-5. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

build in/into, 46	get on, 49	throw away, 49	turn off, 45
clog up, 49	get to, 49	turn down, 45	turn on, 45
get ahead, 49	hang on, 49	turn in, 45	turn out, 45
get back to, 49	make for, 46	turn into, 45	turn up, 45

- Jake was nice when he was a boy, but as he got older he _____ a criminal.
- Stop bothering me about washing the dishes. I'll _____ it when I have time.
- The teacher said, "After you _____ your tests, you can leave."
- These stereo speakers weren't added later. They were _____ right _____ the wall.
- Business has been very good; in fact, this may _____ to be our best year ever.
- I'll have to _____ you—I don't have time to talk now.
- If I had known you wanted those old clothes, I wouldn't have _____ them _____.
- It was getting dark, so I _____ the light.
- I've gained so much weight that I can't _____ these pants _____.
- Having a good education helped me to _____.
- _____. I'm almost ready.
- It's too hot in here. Could you _____ the heat _____ a little?
- My father said, "_____ the TV _____ and do your homework."
- Who put all this stuff in the sink and _____ it _____?
- The champagne, flowers, and gourmet dinner _____ a very special evening.

16. It's hot in here. Who keeps _____ the heat?

50-6. REVIEW On a separate piece of paper, complete the sentences with these phrasal verbs from this unit and previous units. Be sure the phrasal verbs are in the correct tense and person. To check their meanings, review the unit number given after each one.

come by, 50	get ahead, 49	hold on, 50	start off, 49
come down to, 50	get back to, 49	pay back, 50	take up on, 50
deal with, 50	get to, 49	put in/into, 47	turn around, 50
freak out, 46	give out, 43	run out, 47	wear out, 50

1. I like to go to the supermarket on Saturday because they _____ free samples.
2. My teacher said that my project wasn't very good and that it was obvious that I hadn't _____ much effort _____ it.
3. Don't lend money to Marty. He'll never _____ you _____.
4. Thanks for inviting me to go sailing with you. I just might _____ you _____ the offer someday.
5. Sergeant Jones _____ the problem in his usual efficient manner.
6. We're _____ of coffee. Can you make some more?
7. David has some rare artifacts from ancient Egypt. I wonder how he _____ them.
8. Nowadays, it's hard to _____ in the business world if you don't know something about computers.
9. Janice was talking to her father on the other telephone line when I called, so she asked me to _____ for just a minute while she said good-bye to him.
10. Ann used to have a lot of problems, but she has _____ her life _____, and now she is very happy and successful in her job.
11. I called the restaurant manager to complain about the bad food we were served yesterday, and she said she would investigate and _____ me.

12. Heather was very excited that she had _____ go backstage after the concert and meet the band.
13. We had a hard time deciding which of the two houses to buy. We liked both of them, but it _____ which one was in a better school district.
14. I'm not as young as I used to be. That fifteen-mile hike _____ me _____.
15. I hate walking through cemeteries at night. It really _____ me _____.
16. The president of the company _____ the meeting _____ by welcoming everyone.

Answers

When questions require complete sentences as answers, several variations of the answer are often possible depending on whether contractions are used, whether separable phrasal verbs are separated, and whether the object of the phrasal verb is repeated in the answer, replaced by a pronoun, or ellipted (not repeated because it is understood). The answers given below would be natural and likely in everyday American English—contractions are used more often than not and separable phrasal verbs are separated more often than not—but any grammatical and logical sentence with the correct verb in the correct tense is acceptable. Phrasal verbs separated by their objects (but not adverbs or adverbials) are indicated with three dots between the verb and particle. Remember that questions asked with *I* or *we* are answered with *you*, and questions asked with *you* are answered with *I* or *we*.

- 1-1 1. took off 2. took off 3. put . . . on 4. run into 5. shows up 6. showed up 7. passed away 8. put . . . on 9. figure . . . out 10. take . . . off 11. ran into 12. put on 13. took off 14. Cheer up 15. gave . . . back 16. run into 17. take . . . off 18. Take off 19. run into 20. Taking . . . off 21. putting . . . on 22. put . . . on 23. put on 24. took . . . off
- 1-2 1. I finally *figured out* the instructions. I finally *figured* the instructions *out*. I finally *figured* them *out*. 2. *Give back* my tools when you are finished. *Give* my tools *back* when you are finished. *Give* them *back* when you are finished. 3. She *put on* her slippers. She *put* her slippers *on*. She *put* them *on*. 4. I *took off* my shoes. I *took* my shoes *off*. I *took* them *off*. 5. The hurricane *took off* the roof. The hurricane *took* the xroof *off*. The hurricane *took* it *off*.
- 1-3 1. They didn't *show up*. 2. He *figured* it *out*. 3. It's *taking off*. 4. It was a *takeoff*. 5. She *passed away*. 6. You *took off*. 7. You *ran into* him. 8. She *gave* it *back*. 9. I almost *ran into* a tree. 10. He *put* his name *on* it. 11. You have to *take* it *off*. 12. You *figured* it *out*. 13. You're *taking* them *off*. 14. They *took off*. 15. You're going to try to *cheer* her *up*. 16. They don't *show up*. 17. He always forgets to *put* them *on* the table. 18. He *took* Friday *off*.
- 2-1 1. falling for 2. came off 3. dozed off 4. threw up 5. fell for 6. pulls through 7. iron . . . out 8. came off 9. give in 10. built up 11. throwing up 12. Come

off 13. build up

- 2-2 1. Did the sick boy *throw up*? 2. Does Rosa *fall for* every boy she meets? 3. Do the tops *come off* easily? 4. Did they *iron* the bugs *out*? 5. Does mud *build up* on the bottom of the lake every year?
- 2-3 1. I don't always *give in* to her demands. 2. Mr. and Mrs. Taylor didn't *fall for* the salesman's promises. 3. These machines don't *throw up* sparks. 4. The patient didn't *pull through*. 5. The plot didn't *come off* as planned.
- 2-4 1. They *ironed* them *out*. 2. He *fell for* it. 3. They're starting to *doze off*. 4. It's *building up*. 5. It didn't *come off* the way you planned it. 6. One of the wheels *came off* my car. 7. You're not *giving in* to them. 8. It plans to *build it up*. 9. You *fell for* them. 10. She doesn't think he will *pull through*. 11. He was *throwing up*.
- 2-5 1. take off 2. showed up 3. put . . . on 4. cheers up 5. passes away 6. Give . . . back 7. ran into 8. figure out
- 3-1 1. go in for 2. put up with 3. go along with 4. talks down to 5. feel up to 6. screw . . . out of 7. looking forward to 8. get . . . over with 9. go along with
- 3-2 1. He *talks down* to him. 2. She should *get it over with*. 3. He *screwed* them *out of* \$5,000. 4. She's *looking forward to* it. 5. I have to *put up with* it. 6. He doesn't *feel up to* it. 7. You *went along with* it.
- 3-3 1. fall for 2. threw up 3. come off 4. gave in 5. iron . . . out 6. pull through 7. dozed off 8. build up
- 4-1 1. wrap . . . up 2. put . . . to 3. calls for 4. gives off 5. put . . . to 6. looking . . . up 7. went after 8. called for 9. getting at 10. calls for 11. went after 12. looked up 13. wrapped . . . up 14. going after 15. look up 16. going after 17. put . . . to 18. went overboard
- 4-2 1. I was *looking up* a word in the dictionary. I was *looking* a word *up* in the dictionary. I was *looking it up* in the dictionary. 2. I was in Boston *looking up* some old army buddies. I was in Boston *looking* some old army buddies *up*. I was in Boston *looking* them *up*. 3. Dad's in the bedroom *wrapping up* Mom's birthday present. Dad's in the bedroom *wrapping* Mom's birthday present *up*. Dad's in the bedroom *wrapping* it *up*. 4. The committee is *wrapping up* their discussion. The committee is *wrapping* their discussion *up*. The committee is *wrapping* it *up*.
- 4-3 1. They think it is *called for*. 2. You wonder what she's *getting at*. 3. It's *looking up*. 4. He *went after* him. 5. She's going to *go after* it. 6. You *put* him *to* a lot of trouble. 7. You *went overboard*. 8. They *give off* a toxic gas.

9. They're *wrapping* it *up*. 10. She *looked* her *up*. 11. He *put* it *to* me. 12. She's *looking* it *up*.

4-4 1. fell for 2. passed away 3. showed up 4. figure . . . out 5. pulled through 6. gave in 7. built . . . up 8. cheer up

5-1 1. broke down 2. set up 3. pile up 4. handed . . . back 5. find out 6. takes after 7. looked at 8. breaks down 9. breaking . . . down 10. set . . . up 11. look at 12. break . . . down 13. look at 14. break down 15. burn down 16. setting up 17. broke down 18. piling up 19. looking at

5-2 1. broke DOWN 2. set UP 3. pile UP 4. handed . . . BACK 5. find OUT 6. TAKES after 7. LOOKED at 8. breaks DOWN 9. breaking . . . DOWN 10. set . . . UP 11. LOOK at 12. break . . . DOWN 13. LOOK at 14. break DOWN 15. burn DOWN 16. setting UP 17. broke DOWN 18. piling UP 19. LOOKing at

5-3 1. The firefighters *broke down* the door. The firefighters *broke* the door *down*. The firefighters *broke* it *down*. 2. They *burned down* the old barn. They *burned* the old barn *down*. They *burned* it *down*. 3. Our teacher *handed back* the papers. Our teacher *handed* the papers *back*. Our teacher *handed* them *back*. 4. *I set up* the ironing board. *I set* the ironing board *up*. *I set* it *up*.

5-4 1. She *set* it *up*. 2. It was *set up*. 3. They're *piling up*. 4. They're *piled up*. 5. He *handed* it *back*. 6. It *broke down*. 7. It's *broken-down*. 8. He had a *breakdown*. 9. They *burned* it *down*. 10. It *burned down*. 11. He *broke down*. 12. He had a *breakdown*. 13. She *takes after* her mother. 14. She *set* it *up*. 15. It's *set up*. 16. He *broke in*. 17. You *found out* that Ali's excuse was a big lie.

5-5 1. put up with 2. felt up to 3. ironed out 4. come off 5. looking forward to 6. go along with 7. threw up 8. goes in for 9. talked down to 10. get . . . over with

6-1 1. coming down with 2. went through with 3. come up with 4. get around to 5. got . . . out of 6. get . . . out of 7. boils down to 8. monkey around with 9. get out of 10. gone back on

6-2 1. He *went through with* it. 2. You didn't *get around to* it. 3. You told him you'd *get around to* it tomorrow. 4. She *gets* a lot of satisfaction *out of* it. 5. She *came up with* a way to manufacture them more cheaply. 6. It *boils down to* location. 7. I feel like I'm *coming down with* a cold. 8. You'll *monkey around with* it. 9. You *got* it *out of* her. 10. She *went back on* her promise.

- 6-3 1. wrap . . . up 2. getting at 3. looked . . . up 4. give off 5. look at 6. finds out 7. going after 8. call for 9. put . . . to 10. pile up 11. handed . . . back 12. burned down
- 6-4 1. wrap . . . UP 2. GETTING at 3. looked . . . UP 4. GIVE off 5. LOOK at 6. finds OUT 7. GOING after 8. CALL for 9. put . . . TO 10. pile UP 11. handed . . . BACK 12. burned DOWN
- 7-1 1. let out 2. holding . . . up 3. ran over 4. let out 5. cut . . . up 6. pointed out 7. let . . . out 8. taken in 9. took . . . in 10. taking . . . apart 11. holding up 12. took in 13. hold up 14. see about 15. let out 16. held up 17. ran over 18. pointed . . . out 19. ran over 20. take . . . in 21. take . . . in 22. held up 23. run over 24. see about 25. hold up
- 7-2 1. The cook *cut up* the meat. The cook *cut* the meat *up*. The cook *cut* it *up*. 2. The snowstorm *held up* air travelers. The snowstorm *held* air travelers *up*. The snowstorm *held* them *up*. 3. Don't *let out* the dog. Don't *let* the dog *out*. Don't *let* it *out*. 4. The real estate agent *pointed out* the swimming pool. The real estate agent *pointed* the swimming pool *out*. The real estate agent *pointed* it *out*. 5. The truck *ran over* the man. The truck *ran* the man *over*. The truck *ran* him *over*. 6. I'm going to *take apart* the broken doorknob. I'm going to *take* the broken doorknob *apart*. I'm going to *take* it *apart*. 7. The tailor *took in* the pants. The tailor *took* the pants *in*. The tailor *took* them *in*.
- 7-3 1. You're going to *see about* changing to a different room. 2. They haven't *held up*. 3. She's going to *take* them *in*. 4. He was *taken in* by the salesman. 5. I was *run over* by a car. 6. He *pointed* them *out*. 7. It *held up* the game. 8. She's *cutting* a piece of paper *up*. 9. They're *holding* it *up*. 10. He *held* it *up*. 11. There was a *holdup*. 12. You *took* it *in*. 13. He *took* it *apart*. 14. It *ran over*. 15. They *took* you *in*. 16. He *let* it *out*. 17. You *ran over* and grabbed it. 18. She *let out* a scream. 19. It has *held up*. 20. He *let* them *out*. 21. He *took* it *in*. 22. It's *running over*. 23. You're *letting* them *out*.
- 7-4 1. go through with 2. come off 3. got out of 4. get around to 5. monkeying around with 6. boil down to 7. figure out 8. put . . . on 9. went after 10. gone back on 11. came up with 12. looking forward to 13. dozed off 14. came down with
- 8-1 1. fallen over 2. burned out 3. fought back 4. tear down 5. work in 6. pick out 7. picked out 8. burn . . . out 9. pigged out 10. mess around 11. fell . . . over 12. burned out 13. messes around 14. fight back
- 8-2 1. The sheriff *burned out* the escaped convicts. The sheriff *burned* the escaped convicts *out*. The sheriff *burned* them *out*. 2. Bill has *picked out* a

new car. Bill has *picked* a new car *out*. Bill has *picked* it *out*. 3. The new owners have *torn down* the garage. The new owners have *torn* the garage *down*. The new owners have *torn* it *down*. 4. The mayor tried to *work in* a tour of the factory. The mayor tried to *work* a tour of the factory *in*. The mayor tried to *work* it *in*.

- 8-3 1. He shouldn't have *messed around* with it. 2. It's *burned* itself *out*. 3. She *pigged out*. 4. They've *picked* it *out*. 5. She couldn't *fight back* the tears. 6. It *burned out*. 7. It's *burned-out*. 8. They *fell over*. 9. It was *burned-out*. 10. It's *burned out*. 11. You didn't *fight back*. 12. You've *worked* it *in*. 13. You asked him if he's ever *heard of* the new seafood restaurant in the mall. 14. They've *torn* it *down*. 15. He *fell* all over himself.
- 8-4 1. took . . . apart 2. pull through 3. shown up 4. ran over 5. taken in 6. fall for 7. cut . . . up 8. held up 9. pointed out 10. looked . . . up 11. let . . . out 12. gave in 13. get . . . over with 14. see about 15. goes in for 16. put up with
- 9-1 1. give up 2. broke out 3. getting along 4. work up 5. gave . . . up 6. catch up 7. hang up 8. worked up 9. catch up 10. get along 11. gave up 12. hang up 13. chickened out 14. hook up 15. catch up 16. broken out 17. hook up
- 9-2 1. on 2. to 3. on 4. of 5. with 6. with 7. of 8. to 9. on
- 9-3 1. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook up* my DVR. Tonight I'm going to try to *hook* my DVR *up*. Tonight I'm going to *try* to *hook* it *up*. 2. After my accident, I had to *give up* scuba diving. After my accident, I had to *give* scuba diving *up*. After my accident, I had to *give* it *up*. 3. You can *hang up* your coat in the closet. You can *hang* your coat *up* in the closet. You can *hang* it *up* in the closet.
- 9-4 1. You want to *catch up*. 2. She has to *give* it *up*. 3. She needs to *catch up*. 4. I was *worked up*. 5. *Hooking up* a computer to a printer is easy. 6. It's *hooked up*. 7. They're going to try to *break out*. 8. It would be called a *breakout*. 9. They don't *get along*. 10. You *gave up* on it. 11. Fights *break out*. 12. He *worked up* the courage to ask his boss for a raise. 13. He didn't chicken out. 14. They told him to *give up*. 15. She's *working up* to it. 16. She *hung up* on him.
- 9-5 1. messing around 2. piled up 3. put . . . to 4. fallen over 5. looked at 6. pick . . . out 7. ran into 8. calling for 9. hand . . . back 10. giving off 11. work . . . in 12. fight back 13. pig out 14. found out 15. torn down 16. burned out
- 0-1 1. hand . . . out 2. screw . . . up 3. fallen off 4. gave up 5. screwed . . . up 6. laid off 7. growing up 8. kick back 9. went ahead 10. fill . . . in 11. go ahead

12. fall off 13. lay off 14. fill . . . in 15. kick back 16. fill in 17. Grow up
- 0-2 1. grown-ups 2. screwup 3. kickbacks 4. handouts 5. fill-in 6. handout 7. layoffs 8. falloff 9. go-ahead
- 0-3 1. You haven't *filled in* all the spaces. You haven't *filled* all the spaces *in*. You haven't *filled* them *in*. 2. Is the teacher *handing out* the tests? Is the teacher *handing* the tests *out*? Is the teacher *handing* them *out*? 3. The company is going to *lay off* my brother. The company is going to *lay* my brother *off*. The company is going to *lay* him *off*. 4. I'm sorry I *screwed up* your plan. I'm sorry I *screwed* your plan *up*. I'm sorry I *screwed* it *up*.
- 0-4 1. You *went ahead* with it. 2. She told you to *fill* it *in*. 3. It's *filled in*. 4. She's *screwing* it *up*. 5. It's *screwed up*. 6. I *kick back* \$3,000 to the mayor. 7. It's a *kickback*. 8. She was *laid off*. 9. He *screwed* you *up*. 10. You *grew up* there. 11. It's for *grown-ups*. 12. It will *fall off*. 13. It would be called a *falloff*. 14. She told him to *lay off*. 15. He's *filling in* for Omar. 16. They'll be *handed out*. 17. She *filled* her *in*.
- 0-5 1. takeoff 2. breakdown 3. hookup 4. breakout 5. holdup 6. setup 7. put-on
- 0-6 1. work up 2. gave up 3. pick out 4. hook up 5. get along 6. talk down to 7. catch up 8. chickened out
- 1-1 1. cut . . . off 2. back up 3. back up 4. work out 5. backing . . . up 6. cut . . . off 7. back . . . up 8. follows up 9. drop . . . off 10. backed . . . up 11. wake up 12. work out 13. take out 14. back up 15. worked out 16. works out 17. drops off 18. cut off 19. taking . . . out 20. back up 21. cut . . . off 22. fell off 23. try . . . out 24. woke . . . up 25. worked out 26. try out 27. take out 28. worked out 29. cut off 30. took . . . out 31. taken . . . out
- 1-2 1. Did you *back up* your work? Did you *back* your work *up*? Did you *back* it *up*? 2. They're *cutting off* the power. They're *cutting* the power *off*. They're *cutting* it *off*. 3. I *dropped off* Frank at the airport. I *dropped* Frank *off* at the airport. I *dropped* him *off* at the airport. 4. Mom asked me to *take out* the garbage. Mom asked me to *take* the garbage *out*. Mom asked me to *take* it *out*. 5. Alex *tried out* his new bicycle. Alex *tried* his new bicycle *out*. Alex *tried* it *out*. 6. Mike has *woken up* Ali. Mike has *woken* Ali *up*. Mike has *woken* him *up*.
- 1-3 1. It's his *backup* camera. 2. It's the *cutoff* date. 3. She's his *backup*. 4. I gave it a *tryout*. 5. She made a *followup* visit. 6. Your *workout* clothes got dirty. 7. You ate *takeout* food. 8. There was a *backup* on the highway. 9. There has been a *falloff*. 10. She didn't make a *backup*. 11. There's a *dropoff*. 12. You gave it a *workout*.

1-4 1. They *cut* it *off*. 2. You bought *takeout* food. 3. *Working out* is good for my health. 4. You're going to *try* it *out*. 5. They're letting you give their service a *tryout*. 6. It *cut* them *off*. 7. They were *cut off*. 8. I'm *backing* it *up*. 9. It's a *backup*. 10. She's *following up*. 11. My *workout* routine is difficult. 12. He *backed up* his accusation with photographs. 13. She wants to *try out*. 14. It *backs* it *up*. 15. It's a *backup*. 16. She *drops* her *off*. 17. It's a *follow-up* appointment. 18. It's not *working out* the way she expected. 19. He *took* Judy *out*. 20. It *works out* to \$9,000. 21. You've never *woken up* at 3:30 in the morning.

1-5 1. lay *off* 2. handed *out* 3. grew *up* 4. screwed *up* 5. go *ahead* 6. fell *off* 7. stay *off* 8. cheers . . . *up* 9. passed *away* 10. feel *up* to 11. screw . . . *out* of 12. kick *back* 13. go *along* with 14. give . . . *back* 15. fill *in* 16. building *up*

2-1 1. sign . . . *out* 2. came *up* 3. put *up* 4. came *across* 5. signed *out* 6. fell *through* 7. puts *up* 8. back *off* 9. fallen *through* 10. come *up* 11. put *up* 12. screw . . . *on* 13. sign *in* 14. put *up* 15. screwed . . . *on* 16. put . . . *up* 17. came *up* 18. come *across* 19. put *up* 20. comes *across* 21. came *up* 22. put . . . *up* 23. coming *up*

2-2 1. He'd *backed off*. 2. He had *signed in*. 3. She'd *fallen through*. 4. He had *put up* a fight. 5. It had *come across* well. 6. She had *put up* the money. 7. He'd said that it was *coming up*. 8. He'd *screwed it on*. 9. It was *screwed on*. 10. It had *put them up*. 11. Something had *come up*. 12. It had *fallen through*. 13. It had *come up*. 14. They'd *put up* a fence. 15. I had *come across* some old newspapers. 16. He'd *come up* to New York. 17. She had *signed out*.

2-4 1. went . . . *overboard* 2. followed *up* 3. thrown *up* 4. fallen *off* 5. put *to* 6. work *out* 7. drop . . . *off* 8. woke . . . *up* 9. try . . . *out* 10. back *up* 11. called *for* 12. wrap . . . *up* 13. cut *off* 14. getting *at* 15. take *out* 16. go *after*

3-1 1. let . . . *off* 2. called *off* 3. hit *on* 4. light *up* 5. tracked . . . *down* 6. lighting *up* 7. closed *off* 8. left *off* 9. hit *on* 10. handed *in* 11. let . . . *off* 12. left *off* 13. hand *in* 14. let *off* 15. hand . . . *in*

3-2 1. The bride hasn't *called off* the wedding. The bride hasn't *called* the wedding *off*. The bride hasn't *called* it *off*. 2. Are they *closing off* the gallery? Are they *closing* the gallery *off*? Are they *closing* it *off*? 3. The accountant *handed in* her report. The accountant *handed* her report *in*. The accountant *handed* it *in*. 4. Have you *left off* Carmen? Have you *left* Carmen *off*? Have you *left* her *off*? 5. The judge *let off* the pickpocket. The judge *let* the pickpocket *off*. The judge *let* him *off*. 6. I told him not to *light up* the cigarette. I told him not to *light* the cigarette *up*. I told him not to *light* it *up*.

7. The EPA *tracked down* the polluters. The EPA *tracked* the polluters *down*.
The EPA *tracked* them *down*.

3-3 1. It was *tracked down*. 2. They were *handed in*. 3. They're always *let off*. 4. She was *hit on*. 5. It was *left off*. 6. It was *called off*. 7. It's being *closed off*. 8. It's *closed off*. 9. It was *lit up*. 10. It was *lit up*.

3-4 1. burned down 2. taken off 3. talked down to 4. set up 5. screwed out of 6. let out 7. pointed out 8. run into 9. piled up 10. given back 11. handed back 12. taken apart 13. gives off 14. run over 15. looked at

4-1 1. wound up 2. fill . . . out 3. put away 4. stick . . . up 5. dress up 6. dries up 7. put . . . away 8. winding up 9. stuck . . . up 10. winding . . . up 11. dressed up 12. dries up 13. wind . . . up 14. stick up 15. filled out 16. put away 17. stuck up 18. put . . . away 19. used . . . up 20. butts in

4-2 1. dried up 2. dressed up 3. filled out 4. stuck-up 5. used up 6. wound up 7. put away

4-3 1. Janice *dressed up* her son. Janice *dressed* her son *up*. Janice *dressed* him *up*. 2. The sun quickly *dries up* the water. The sun quickly *dries* the water *up*. The sun quickly *dries* it *up*. 3. *Filling out* the form isn't necessary. *Filling* the form *out* isn't necessary. *Filling* it *out* isn't necessary. 4. Ed *put away* six beers in an hour. Ed *put* six beers *away* in an hour. Ed *put* them *away* in an hour. 5. They *stuck up* notices. They *stuck* notices *up*. They *stuck* them *up*. 6. I'm *winding up* my clock. I'm *winding* my clock *up*. I'm *winding* it *up*.

4-4 1. He *wound up* in the hospital. 2. She kept *butting in*. 3. It *dried up*. 4. He *put* them *away*. 5. They're *put away*. 6. They're *dried up*. 7. You *wound* it *up*. 8. It is *wound up*. 9. She *dressed up*. 10. She was *dressed up*. 11. He *filled* it *out*. 12. It was *filled out*. 13. He *used* it *up*. 14. It's *used up*.

4-5 1. hung up 2. worked out 3. hooked up 4. cutoff 5. broken-down 6. set up 7. filled in 8. screwed up 9. caught up 10. worked up 11. grown-up 12. cut up 13. burned-out 14. backed up 15. wake-up 16. piled up

5-1 1. blew . . . away 2. set . . . up 3. came through 4. fix . . . up 5. tell on 6. comes through 7. heading/headed for 8. fix . . . up 9. comes through 10. heading/headed for 11. go with 12. dried out 13. blow . . . away 14. come through 15. set . . . up 16. go with 17. came through 18. blown away 19. went with 20. came through 21. went with 22. head back 23. go with

5-2 1. He's going to *fix you up* with a table next to the fireplace. 2. She's sure that her father will *come through*. 3. It's going to *blow* him *away*. 4. He'll *fix* it *up*. 5. It will be *fixed up*. 6. He won't *tell on* her. 7. It's going to *blow* them

away. 8. They won't *come through* it. 9. She'll *fix* herself *up*. 10. She'll be *fixed up*. 11. I'm going to *head for* Tucson. 12. I'm going to *head back* to San Diego. 13. He won't *fix* Mike *up* with his sister. 14. She isn't going to go *with* blue. 15. It's going to *blow away* the competition. 16. He's going to *come through* town. 17. It's going to *dry up*. 18. It'll be *dried up*.

5-4 1. came up 2. fell through 3. light . . . up 4. put up 5. track down 6. lit up 7. closed off 8. screw . . . on 9. call . . . off 10. back off 11. hand in 12. left . . . off 13. sign in 14. signed out 15. let . . . off 16. came across

6-1 1. thinking about 2. carry . . . on 3. counting on 4. go for 5. acting up 6. get through 7. count on 8. get through 9. held off 10. put . . . past 11. carried on 12. hold off 13. went for 14. going for 15. carry on 16. get . . . through 17. act up 18. carry on 19. count on 20. get through 21. goes for 22. get through

6-2 1. She *goes for* it. 2. She didn't *get through* studying until 11:00 P.M. 3. They *carried* them *on*. 4. They kept *carry-on* bags with them. 5. She's *thinking about* spending the summer in Bolivia. 6. It's *acting up* again. 7. He couldn't *carry on* his career as a dancer. 8. You *held off* having children. 9. I wouldn't *put* stealing *past* him. 10. She's going to try to *get through* to her. 11. I can't *count on* him. 12. He *carried on*. 13. You can't *count on* it. 14. You told her to stop *acting up* in school.

6-4 1. stuck-up 2. fixed up 3. used up 4. put away 5. wound up 6. wrapped up 7. filled out 8. dried up 9. dressed up 10. screwed on 11. closed off 12. lit up 13. built up 14. ironed out

6-5 1. wound up 2. goes in for 3. put up with 4. looking forward to 5. give up 6. feel up to 7. see . . . about 8. get around to 9. get out of 10. get . . . over with 11. left off 12. worked out 13. broke down 14. took . . . in 15. put . . . up 16. broke out 17. butt in

7-1 1. came over 2. falling apart 3. rip . . . up 4. heading/headed into 5. got back at 6. came over 7. worn down 8. go about 9. grow out of 10. falling apart 11. wear . . . down 12. fell apart 13. come over 14. grows out of

7-2 **(any two of the possible sentences shown are acceptable)** 1. Frequently. Ms. Taylor *comes over*. Ms. Taylor frequently *comes over*. Ms. Taylor *comes over* frequently. 2. Sometimes these cheap toys *fall apart*. These cheap toys *sometimes* fall apart. These cheap toys *fall apart* sometimes. 3. Nervously he *went about* making the bomb. He nervously *went about* making the bomb. He *went about* making the bomb nervously. 4. Eventually Sally will *grow out of* her childish behavior. Sally will eventually *grow out of* her childish behavior. Sally will *grow out of* her childish behavior eventually. 5. Reluctantly Jim *headed into* the swamp. Jim reluctantly *headed into* the

swamp. Jim *headed reluctantly* into the swamp. Jim *headed into* the swamp *reluctantly*. 6. Suddenly. Pat *ripped up* Mike's letter. Pat *suddenly, ripped up* Mike's letter. Pat *ripped up* Mike's letters *suddenly*. 7. Soon Frank will *get back at* Todd. Frank will *soon* *get back at* Todd. Frank will *get back at* Todd *soon*. 8. Gradually *he wore* down my resistance. He *gradually* *wore down* my resistance. He *wore down* my resistance *gradually*.

7-3 1. It was *ripped up*. 2. It was *ripped up*. 3. It's *falling apart*. 4. They *came over*. 5. He doesn't know how to *go about* applying for a mortgage. 6. We're going to *head into* the city. 7. She *grew out* of it. 8. They've *worn down*. 9. They're *worn down*. 10. He's *gotten back at* you. 11. They *came over* before Columbus. 12. She *came over* and looked at my paper. 13. He *fell apart*. 14. She'll *grow out* of it soon. 15. It's *falling apart*. 16. They're trying to *wear her down*.

7-4 1. find out 2. get along 3. go through with 4. chickened out of 5. set up 6. work in 7. fight back 8. came down with 9. monkey around with 10. kicking back 11. mess around 12. boils down to 13. come up 14. fell over 15. go ahead

8-1 1. get off 2. break through 3. tell . . . apart 4. get off 5. line up 6. sucks up to 7. push . . . around 8. get . . . off 9. figured on 10. get off 11. lined up 12. get . . . off 13. broke through 14. Get off 15. fizzle out 16. get off 17. line up 18. Get off

8-2 1. He said he'd *get it off* the table. 2. You can't *tell* them *apart*. 3. It's *fizzling out*. 4. He said he hadn't *figured on* snow in May. 5. She *lined up* a great band. 6. It's *lined up*. 7. I'm not going to let him *push me around*. 8. They *broke through* it. 9. He *gets off* at 5:00. 10. I *got off* with a warning. 11. He *lined up* the desks. 12. They're *lined up*. 13. She asked you to *get off* the phone. 14. He's *sucking up to* me. 15. He said you'd *get* Sundays *off*. 16. They have to be *lined up*. 17. He *got off* the train. 18. He told him to *get off* the grass.

8-4 1. went for 2. thought about 3. held off 4. goes with 5. came through 6. counting on 7. told on 8. put . . . past 9. come over 10. goes along with 11. head for 12. head back 13. carried on 14. get off 15. grown out of 16. acts up

9-1 1. heat . . . up 2. pulled over 3. bring . . . back 4. cool . . . off 5. go back 6. brought back 7. hand over 8. brought back 9. aiming at 10. chill out 11. warm up 12. aim . . . at 13. handed . . . over 14. cooled off 15. aimed at 16. goes back 17. warm up 18. went back 19. cools off 20. pulled over 21. warm up

- 9-2 1. Could you *bring back* my tool kit. Could you *bring* my tool kit *back*. Could you *bring* it *back*. 2. The air conditioner quickly *cooled off* my apartment. The air conditioner quickly *cooled* my apartment *off*. The air conditioner quickly *cooled* it *off*. 3. Todd *handed over* his wallet. Todd *handed* his wallet *over*. Todd *handed* it *over*. 4. The sheriff *pulled over* the suspects. The sheriff *pulled* the suspects *over*. The sheriff *pulled* them *over*. 5. The drivers are *warming up* their trucks. The drivers are *warming* their trucks *up*. The drivers are *warming* them *up*.
- 9-3 1. It *warmed right up*. 2. I'll *go right back* to work. 3. It *cooled right off*. 4. You would *pull right over*. 5. He *aimed* it right *at* him. 6. She told you to *give* it right *back*. 7. He told her to *hand* it right *over*. 8. She *brought* it right *over*.
- 9-4 1. broke through 2. pushed around 3. sucked up to 4. track down 5. headed into 6. backed off 7. come up with 8. hit on 9. fell through 10. wind up 11. tell . . . apart 12. figure on 13. came across 14. put up 15. fizzled out 16. let . . . off
- 10-1 1. go off 2. went around 3. go on 4. go off 5. hang around 6. ended up 7. lies around 8. hangs around 9. start out 10. go around 11. stay up 12. ended up 13. lying around 14. went around 15. go on 16. goes off 17. going around 18. go off 19. stay up 20. goes around 21. hangs around 22. go around 23. went on 24. went around 25. Go on 26. go on 27. went on 28. went around 29. goes around 30. go on
- 10-2 1. I'm going to *lie around* watching TV. 2. She *went around* making decorating plans. 3. It *ended up* in Australia. 4. It *goes off* at 2:00. 5. He asked, "What's *going on*?" 6. He *goes around* telling awful jokes. 7. She *stayed up* all night. 8. He *hangs around* the house. 9. It didn't *go off*. 10. He *went around* wearing a Hawaiian shirt. 11. They *go on* automatically. 12. I didn't get a hot dog because I didn't buy enough to *go around*. 13. You have to *go around* the potholes. 14. You *ended up* buying the red car. 15. You couldn't *go on*. 16. She *started out* thinking it would take only a few weeks.
- 10-4 1. screwed . . . out of 2. cooled off 3. ripped . . . up 4. blow . . . away 5. gave up 6. work up 7. go overboard 8. mess around 9. came over 10. called off 11. see . . . about 12. go about 13. dry out 14. aimed at 15. broke out 16. chilling out
- 11-1 1. take . . . out on 2. come to 3. picking on 4. melted down 5. settling down 6. comes to 7. settle . . . down 8. backed out 9. settled down 10. stick . . . together 11. backing out 12. stick together 13. came to 14. looked over
- 11-2 1. He ought to *look* it *over*. 2. That comes to \$37. 3. They *settled down*. 4. You *backed out* of the deal. 5. You *melted* it *down*. 6. She *backed out* of her

garage. 7. He *picks on* him. 8. He *took it out on* her. 9. They've *stuck together*. 10. When it *comes to* fixing cars, Frank Smith is the best mechanic in town.

- 1-3 1. Business in this restaurant *should/ ought to fall off* in January. 2. They *should/ought to be winding up* the investigation. 3. These cheap shoes *shouldn't hold up* more than three months. 4. Jim flies from Florida to Boston every year in April, and it's April now. Jim *should/ought to come up* to Boston soon. 5. It almost always gets cooler in October, and it's October 1st today, so it *should/ought to cool off* soon. 6. Raul's disease is not serious, so he *should/ ought to pull through*. 7. Francisco almost never works past 5:00, and it's 4:50 now. He *should/ought to get off* in a few minutes. 8. Lydia likes skiing a lot, so if you suggest that we go skiing next weekend, she *should/ought to go for* the idea. 9. The enemy soldiers have been trying to smash a hole in the wall of the fort for two hours, and they *should/ought to break through* soon. 10. Sally said she would come to my house at 5:30 and it's 5:40 now. She *should/ought to come over* soon. 11. This work normally takes four hours to finish, so if you start at 9:00 you *should/ought to get through* around 1:00. 12. The train almost always passes through town at 3:25, and it's 3:20 now, so the train *should/ought to come through* town in five minutes. 13. I put a lot of wood on the fire, so it *shouldn't burn out* before morning. 14. The car heater is on maximum, so it *should/ought to warm up* soon.
- 1-4 1. went around 2. Hand . . . over 3. goes off 4. pull over 5. line up 6. stayed up 7. falls apart 8. get back at 9. started out 10. hang around 11. end up 12. brought back 13. lie around 14. go on 15. pigging out 16. go back
- 12-1 1. eat up 2. plug . . . up 3. burns . . . up 4. clear . . . up 5. pay up 6. cleared up 7. count up 8. cleared up 9. burn up 10. man up 11. heat . . . up 12. burn up 13. ate up
- 12-2 1. They *burned up* the wood. They *burned* the wood *up*. They *burned* it *up*. 2. He ought to *clear up* the misunderstanding. He ought to *clear* the misunderstanding *up*. He ought to *clear* it *up*. 3. Would you *count up* the votes? Would you *count* the votes *up*? Would you *count* them *up*? 4. Have they *eaten up* all the candy? Have they *eaten* all the candy *up*? Have they *eaten* it *up*? 5. I can't *plug up* the hole. I can't *plug* the hole *up*. I can't *plug* it *up*.
- 12-3 1. I *plugged* it *up*. 2. It's *plugged up*. 3. You're *heating* it *up*. 4. It'll be *heated up*. 5. He hasn't *counted up* his money. 6. I'll *pay* it *up*. 7. It'll be *paid up*. 8.

They *burned* them *up*. 9. They're *burned up*. 10. It *cleared* right *up*. 11. He needs to *man up*. 12. He *eats* his food right *up*.

12-4 1. count on 2. go with 3. melting . . . down 4. signed in 5. signed out 6. put away 7. hand . . . in 8. go with 9. dress up 10. come to 11. stick together 12. dry up 13. back out 14. takes . . . out on 15. heading/headed for 16. head back 17. suck up to

13-1 1. make . . . up 2. Watch out 3. cut down 4. cut down 5. Stay out 6. hold out 7. made up 8. drop out 9. make up 10. crack down 11. got away 12. hold . . . out 13. gotten away 14. stay out 15. holding out 16. make up 17. gotten away 18. get away 19. stayed out 20. cuts . . . down 21. hold out 22. made up 23. make . . . up

13-2 1. on 2. on 3. of 4. with 5. for 6. for 7. of

13-3 1. They're *holding out* for a 10 percent raise. 2. They're *holdouts*. 3. They *made up*. 4. He *dropped out*. 5. He's a *dropout*. 6. I *made up* my mind. 7. She told me to *cut down* on tennis. 8. They're *holding out*. 9. They're *holdouts*. 10. They *stayed out* until 3:00 A.M. 11. It has to *hold out*. 12. He *made up* a story. 13. It was *made-up*. 14. He has *gotten away* with it. 15. I have to *watch out* for big trucks. 16. They're going to *crack down* on crime. 17. It's a *crackdown*.

13-4 1. grown out of 2. hold off 3. man up 4. think about 5. get through 6. tell . . . apart 7. break through 8. counted up 9. aimed at 10. falling apart 11. went for 12. put past 13. burned up 14. acting up 15. come over

14-1 1. slow down 2. Shake up 3. come down 4. traded . . . in 5. come down 6. Stopping over 7. shaken up 8. showed . . . off 9. let up 10. come down 11. print . . . out 12. shook . . . up 13. stop over

14-2 1. shake-up 2. stopover 3. comedown 4. letup 5. trade-ins 6. slowdown 7. printout 8. show-off

14-3 1. The rain *slowed down* traffic. The rain *slowed* traffic *down*. The rain *slowed* it *down*. 2. He *printed out* his letter. He *printed* his letter *out*. He *printed* it *out*. 3. The bad news has *shaken up* Jim and Nancy. The bad news has *shaken* Jim and Nancy *up*. The bad news has *shaken* them *up*. 4. I got \$5,000 for *trading in* my old car. I got \$5,000 for *trading* my old car *in*. I got \$5,000 for *trading* it *in*. 5. Chelsea's parents *showed off* her perfect report card. Chelsea's parents *showed* her perfect report card *off*. Chelsea's parents *showed* it *off*.

14-4 1. You *printed* them *out*. 2. It's a *printout*. 3. He's going to *come down* to New Orleans. 4. He *shows off*. 5. He's a *show-off*. 6. You'll *trade* it *in*. 7. It's

a *trade-in*. 8. He *shook* things *up*. 9. It was a *shake-up*. 10. She's *come down* in life. 11. It was a *comedown*. 12. It *let up*. 13. It was a *letup*. 14. It *slowed it down*. 15. It was a *slowdown*. 16. I *stopped over*. 17. It was a *stopover*. 18. It *shook him up*. 19. He was *shaken up*.

!4-5 1. follow-up 2. crackdown 3. dropout 4. lineup 5. tryout 6. workout 7. backup 8. drop-off 9. buildup 10. meltdown 11. stuck together

!4-6 1. stay out 2. fizzled out 3. pushes . . . around 4. told on 5. watch out 6. figure on 7. cool . . . off 8. holding out 9. chilled out 10. comes to 11. settle down 12. melted . . . down 13. counted up 14. man up 15. hung up

!5-1 1. hurry up 2. settle for 3. had . . . on 4. lighten up 5. knocked . . . over 6. do with 7. weasel out 8. think up 9. hurry . . . up 10. lighten . . . up 11. have . . . on

!5-2 1. He *had* a red shirt *on*. 2. He won't *settle for* less. 3. He *weaseled out* of going to the meeting. 4. He *knocked* him *over*. 5. He told him to *hurry up*. 6. It had to *do with* my income taxes. 7. He should *lighten up*. 8. She's *thinking up* a Halloween costume.

!5-4 1. zipped up 2. warmed up 3. cleared up 4. dried up 5. made-up 6. paid up 7. shaken up 8. ripped up 9. lined up 10. warmed up 11. plugged up 12. burned up 13. worn down

!5-5 1. come down 2. hook up 3. screw . . . on 4. show off 5. called in 6. stops over 7. trade in 8. stuck . . . up 9. cleared up 10. let up 11. warm up 12. slow down 13. hand out 14. print . . . out 15. gone back 16. took after

!6-1 1. get . . . together 2. start . . . up 3. go over 4. open . . . up 5. went up 6. put . . . together 7. shut off 8. go up 9. let . . . in on 10. go over 11. goes up 12. go over 13. put . . . together 14. opens up 15. goes up 16. go over 17. get . . . together 18. gets together 19. went over 20. open . . . up 21. Put . . . together 22. goes up 23. start up

!6-2 1. I wish they would *open up* a branch office near me. I wish they would *open* a branch office *up* near me. I wish they would *open* one *up* near me. 2. Lydia *put together* the food processor. Lydia *put* the food processor *together*. Lydia *put* it *together*. 3. Do you know how to *shut off* the photocopier? Do you know how to *shut* the photocopier *off*? Do you know how to *shut* it *off*? 4. Push this button to *start up* the generator. Push this button to *start* the generator *up*. Push this button to *start* it *up*.

!6-3 1. He *went over* it. 2. He gave it a good *going-over*. 3. She *went up* to the king and gave him the petition. 4. He *let you in on* a secret. 5. They're going to *get together*. 6. It's called a *get-together*. 7. It *starts up* from the hard disk.

8. It's the *start-up* disk. 9. It *went over* well. 10. It *shuts off* automatically. 11. It's called the *shutoff* point or the *shutoff* temperature. 12. I quit my job so that I could *start up* my own company. 13. It's a *start-up* company. 14. I *put it together*. 15. It *goes up* to December 31. 16. It *opens up*.

!6-4 1. settle for 2. lighten up 3. knocked . . . over 4. ended up 5. hurry up 6. takes . . . out on 7. looked . . . over 8. Put . . . on 9. weasel out 10. gone off 11. picked on 12. think up 13. do with 14. showing off 15. go on 16. have . . . on

!7-1 1. nodding off 2. wiped . . . off 3. knock off 4. dries off 5. bite . . . off 6. wear off 7. wash . . . off 8. knocked off 9. broke off 10. Knock . . . off 11. worn off 12. broke down 13. knock off 14. wore off 15. knock . . . off

!7-2 1. Alex has *bitten off* the head of the gingerbread man. Alex has *bitten* the head of the gingerbread man *off*. Alex has *bitten it off*. 2. The movers *broke off* the cup handle. The movers *broke* the cup handle right *off*. The movers *broke it right off*. 3. Please *dry off* the dishes. Please *dry* the dishes *off*. Please *dry them off*. 4. Don't *knock off* the ashtray. Don't *knock* the ashtray *off*. Don't *knock it off*. 5. The janitor *washed off* the blood. The janitor *washed* the blood right *off*. The janitor *washed it right off*. 6. She didn't *wipe off* the milk. She didn't *wipe* the milk *off*. She didn't *wipe it off*.

!7-3 1. You *washed it off*. 2. He *broke them off*. 3. They're *broken off*. 4. It *bit it right off*. 5. It *wore off*. 6. It's *worn off*. 7. You *knocked it off*. 8. I *wiped it off*. 9. It's *wiped off*. 10. I have to *dry it off*. 11. It's *dried off*. 12. She *nodded off*.

!7-4 1. cut off 2. pay up 3. let up 4. melted down 5. cleared . . . up 6. go over 7. put . . . together 8. came down 9. opened up 10. ate . . . up 11. heats . . . up 12. gone up 13. let . . . in on 14. trade . . . in 15. started up 16. plugged . . . up

!8-1 1. break up 2. messed . . . up 3. give . . . away 4. beef up 5. drowned . . . out 6. carried out 7. stand up 8. broke up 9. messed . . . up 10. stood . . . up 11. broke . . . up 12. carry . . . out 13. broke up 14. call . . . back 15. given . . . away 16. broke up 17. called . . . back 18. give . . . away

!8-2 1. The White House *beefed up* security. The White House *beefed* security *up*. The White House *beefed it up*. 2. The police are *breaking up* the protest. The police are *breaking* the protest *up*. The police are *breaking it up*. 3. A trained technician ought to *carry out* the experiment. A trained technician ought to *carry* the experiment *out*. A trained technician ought to *carry it out*. 4. The foundation *gave away* the money. The foundation *gave* the money *away*. The foundation *gave it away*. 5. Susie always *messes up* the bathroom. Susie always *messes* the bathroom *up*. Susie always *messes it up*. 6. Todd *stood up* Heather. Todd *stood* Heather *up*. Todd *stood her up*.

- 8-3 1. It will be *carried out* by Dr. Wood. 2. It was *broken up*. 3. It was *messed up*. 4. It was *messed up*. 5. He was *stood up*. 6. She wasn't *called back*. 7. It was *given away*. 8. It's being *beefed up*. 9. It's *beefed up*. 10. It *drowned it out*.
- 8-4 1. backed up 2. torn down 3. used up 4. woken up 5. taken in 6. taken out 7. blown away 8. torn down 9. laid off 10. cut off 11. ripped up 12. held up 13. handed out 14. held up or stuck up 15. dropped off 16. tracked down
- 9-1 1. make . . . out 2. look out 3. coming apart 4. make . . . out 5. drop in 6. flip out 7. made out 8. ran across 9. asking for 10. lucked out 11. went under 12. made . . . out
- 9-2 1. I *flipped out*. 2. He might *ask* Santa Claus *for* a new bicycle. 3. You *ran across* your college roommate. 4. He *made* the check *out* to Fred Baker. 5. It's *made out*. 6. You might *drop in* on her. 7. It's *coming apart*. 8. I *lucked out*. 9. You can't *make it out*. 10. He told her to *look out* for cars.
- 9-4 1. cutoff 2. warm-up 3. fixer-upper 4. takeout 5. holdouts 6. crackdown 7. start-ups 8. shutoff 9. handover 10. stickup
- 9-5 1. lighten up 2. stood . . . up 3. messed . . . up 4. settle for 5. do with 6. gave . . . away 7. drown . . . out 8. call . . . back 9. broke up 10. dry off 11. carry out 12. knock . . . off 13. went over 14. back out 15. go up 16. think up
- 10-1 1. locked . . . out 2. put out 3. locked . . . in 4. put . . . out 5. sort . . . out 6. punched . . . in 7. put out 8. passed out 9. punched out 10. put . . . out 11. lock in 12. locked out 13. spaced out 14. sorted out 15. put . . . out 16. passes out 17. put . . . out 18. put out
- 10-2 1. He *locked in* the crazy guy. He *locked* the crazy guy *in*. He *locked* him *in*. 2. Jim *locked out* his wife. Jim *locked* his wife *out*. Jim *locked* her *out*. 3. Did you *punch in* Rosa? Did you *punch* Rosa *in*? Did you *punch* her *in*? 4. Would you *punch out* Linda and Erik? Would you *punch* Linda and Erik *out*? Would you *punch* them *out*? 5. They couldn't *put out* the fire. They couldn't *put* the fire *out*. They couldn't *put* it *out*. 6. The bright lights *spaced out* Janice. The bright lights *spaced* Janice *out*. The bright lights *spaced* her *out*.
- 10-3 1. punched out 2. locked in 3. sorted out 4. locked out 5. sorted out 6. spaced-out 7. put out 8. punched in
- 10-4 1. You *put it out*. 2. You're going to *lock* them *out*. 3. They're *locked out*. 4. He *spaced out*. 5. He is *spaced-out*. 6. He *passed out*. 7. It's *put out*. 8. She *punched* him *in*. 9. He's *punched in*. 10. I should *sort* them *out*. 11. They're *sorted out*. 12. You *locked* him *in*. 13. He's *locked in*. 14. He was *put out*. 15.

He was *put out*. 16. They can't *punch out* before 4:30. 17. They're *punched out*. 18. She didn't *put* herself *out*.

10-5 1. messed up 2. beefed-up 3. shut off 4. worn off 5. washed off 6. closed off 7. made out 8. lit up 9. broken off 10. wiped off 11. dried off 12. made-up

10-6 1. Dropping out 2. filled out 3. trade . . . in 4. standing up 5. had . . . on 6. went under 7. hurry up 8. takes after 9. opened up 10. wash . . . off 11. wipe . . . off 12. carries out 13. drop in 14. working out 15. headed into 16. made . . . out 17. butt in 18. knock . . . over 19. nod off

11-1 1. ruled out 2. cut out 3. do away with 4. cut . . . out 5. do without 6. put off 7. stringing . . . along 8. look into 9. done away with 10. cut out 11. amounted to 12. cut out 13. amount to 14. put off 15. amounts to

11-2 1. I *put* it *off*. 2. He *cut out* acting like such a big shot. 3. He said that nothing has been *ruled out*. 4. She *strung* him *along*. 5. It *did away* with child labor. 6. I'll have to *do without* it. 7. You're going to *look into* having it painted. 8. He said that it *amounted to* mutiny. 9. She was *put off*. 10. She was *put off*. 11. They suspected that he had been *done away with* by a coworker. 12. He *cut* it *out*. 13. He *cared* for it.

11-4 1. go about 2. make out 3. made up 4. coming apart 5. get back at 6. lucked out 7. beefed up 8. cut down 9. flipped out 10. ran across 11. crack down 12. going under 13. get away 14. drop in 15. got off 16. look out

12-1 1. fell out 2. came out 3. coming out 4. sticking out 5. comes out 6. went out 7. stick . . . out 8. cleaned . . . out 9. left out 10. Go out 11. miss out 12. come out 13. go out 14. come out 15. clear . . . out 16. fell out 17. come out 18. clear out 19. came out 20. going out 21. stick . . . out 22. go out 23. coming out 24. cleaned . . . out 25. come out 26. come out 27. clean . . . out 28. sticks out

12-2 1. of 2. of 3. to 4. with 5. for/in favor of 6. against 7. with, over 8. of 9. to 10. with 11. of

12-3 1. My son *cleaned out* the basement. My son *cleaned* the basement *out*. My son *cleaned* it *out*. 2. I need to *clear out* the storeroom. I need to *clear* the storeroom *out*. I need to *clear* it *out*. 3. The factory *left out* an important part. The factory *left* an important part *out*. The factory *left* it *out*. 4. Don't *stick out* your neck. Don't *stick* your neck *out*. Don't *stick* it *out*.

12-4 1. It's *coming out*. 2. They *cleared out*. 3. It *cleared out*. 4. You're going to *go out* with her. 5. He didn't *come out* of the battle alive. 6. You *left* him *out*. 7. He feels *left out*. 8. It *cleaned* me *out*. 9. They *came out* with a new CD. 10. He *sticks out*. 11. They *came out* for/in favor of the Republican

candidate. 12. He *fell out* with him. 13. They had a *falling-out*. 14. He *misses out* on doing many things that his friends do.

12-5 1. cut . . . out 2. do without 3. sort . . . out 4. spaced out 5. watch out 6. punch . . . in 7. look into 8. holding out 9. put out 10. punch out 11. do away with 12. rule . . . out 13. passed . . . out 14. lock in 15. stringing . . . along 16. put off

13-1 1. maxed . . . out 2. catch on 3. fall behind 4. pulled . . . off 5. blow up 6. goofs around 7. blow up 8. come about 9. pulled over 10. fall behind 11. blurt . . . out 12. catch on 13. Blow up 14. caught on 15. fall behind 16. maxed out 17. blow . . . up

13-2 1. at 2. over 3. to 4. in

13-3 1. It didn't *catch on*. 2. She's *helping* him *out*. 3. They *pulled* it *off*. 4. He *goofs around*. 5. They *blow* them *up*. 6. He *blows up*. 7. She *blurted* it *out*. 8. They *fell behind*. 9. She asked me to explain how the situation *came about*.

13-4 1. rule . . . out 2. put off 3. put out 4. look into 5. came out 6. fell out 7. spaced out 8. go around 9. cut out 10. amount to 11. sorted . . . out 12. gave . . . away 13. do without 14. sticks . . . out 15. miss out 16. go out

14-1 1. stick to 2. floating around 3. stick around 4. take . . . back 5. led up to 6. take . . . back 7. stick to 8. taken back 9. put . . . up to 10. stick to 11. stands for 12. took . . . back 13. stick . . . to 14. took . . . back 15. stands for 16. take . . . back 17. stand for 18. do . . . over 19. leading up to 20. take . . . back 21. going around

14-2 1. STICK to 2. FLOATING around 3. stick AROUND 4. take . . . BACK 5. led UP to 6. take . . . BACK 7. STICK to 8. taken BACK 9. put . . . UP to 10. STICK to 11. STANDS for 12. took . . . BACK 13. STICK . . . to 14. took . . . BACK 15. STANDS for 16. take . . . BACK 17. STANDS for 18. do . . . OVER 19. leading UP to 20. take . . . BACK 21. going AROUND

14-3 1. She *took* it *back*. 2. They *led up* to it. 3. I've *done* it *over*. 4. You *took* it *back*. 5. He *sticks to* it. 6. He won't *stand for* it. 7. It *took* him *back*. 8. He *stuck around*. 9. It's been *floating around*. 10. She asked you what "Ph.D." *stands for*. 11. He *put* you *up* to it.

14-4 1. came out 2. came about 3. wears off 4. shake . . . up 5. weaseled out 6. get together 7. goofs around 8. put together 9. bitten off 10. fell behind 11. stayed out 12. caught on 13. let . . . in on 14. stop over 15. pull . . . off 16. print . . . out

15-1 1. left . . . behind 2. tricked . . . into 3. went by 4. living with 5. narrowed . . . down 6. make of 7. holds against 8. fooling around 9. goes by 10. pitched in

11. Leaving . . . behind 12. fooled around 13. went by 14. fool around 15. go by 16. go by 17. left behind

15-2 1. We *pitched in*. 2. You *hold* it *against* him. 3. They're *fooling around*. 4. It *went by* quickly. 5. He *narrowed* it *down*. 6. I *fool around*. 7. He *tricked* her *into* giving him money. 8. She asked him what he *made of* the test results. 9. It *went by* you. 10. They're going to *leave* her *behind*.

15-4 1. lucked out 2. lay around 3. flip out 4. stayed up 5. stand for 6. take back 7. hangs out 8. lead up to 9. messed up 10. do . . . over 11. broke up 12. floating around 13. coming apart 14. stick around 15. ended up 16. run across

16-1 1. puts down 2. calmed down 3. goes down 4. run down 5. hold . . . down 6. died down 7. ran over 8. go down 9. put down 10. backed down 11. goes down 12. lay . . . down 13. put . . . down 14. held down 15. go down 16. lay down 17. holding . . . down 18. Put . . . down 19. run down 20. went down 21. Putting . . . down 22. run down 23. calm down 24. gone down

16-2 1. The jockey *calmed down* the horse. The jockey *calmed* the horse *down*. The jockey *calmed* it *down*. 2. The mechanic *laid down* her tools. The mechanic *laid* her tools *down*. The mechanic *laid* them *down*. 3. I *put down* my books. I *put* my books *down*. I *put* them *down*. 4. The taxi *ran down* the traffic cop. The taxi *ran* the traffic cop *down*. The taxi *ran* him *down*.

16-3 1. He *ran down* the list. 2. He gave me a *rundown* of the car's options. 3. He *calmed* it *down*. 4. It's *rundown*. 5. He *held* you *down*. 6. He *put* her *down*. 7. It was a *put-down*. 8. It *died down*. 9. It *backed down*. 10. It wants to *hold* them *down*. 11. They *laid* them *down*. 12. You *held* it *down*. 13. She *put* my name *down*. 14. It *went down* well.

16-4 1. spaced-out 2. paid up 3. punched in 4. burned up 5. punched out 6. plugged up 7. locked in 8. locked out 9. shaken up 10. sorted out 11. left out 12. put out 13. cleaned out

16-5 1. passed out 2. stringing . . . along 3. caught on 4. came about 5. stuck to 6. make out 7. locked . . . out 8. make of 9. put . . . off 10. pulled . . . off 11. did without 12. went out 13. blew up 14. amount to 15. cleaned . . . out 16. narrowed . . . down

17-1 1. cover . . . up 2. cover . . . up 3. brush . . . off 4. pay off 5. comes on 6. let . . . down 7. came on 8. dumb . . . down 9. Hanging out 10. brushed . . . off 11. pay . . . off 12. comes on 13. coming on 14. left over 15. coming on 16. paying off

17-2 1. payoff 2. leftovers 3. letdown 4. brushoff 5. payoff 6. come-on 7. coverup 8. hangout

- 67-3 1. He *hangs out* there. 2. It's a *hangout*. 3. You told him to *come off* it. 4. I had \$100 *left over*. 5. It *comes on*. 6. He *let* her *down*. 7. She's going to *pay it off*. 8. It's *paid off*. 9. It was a *letdown*. 10. You felt *let down*. 11. It *comes on*. 12. I ate *leftovers*. 13. He *paid* him *off*. 14. It was a *payoff*. 15. He tried to *cover* them *up*. 16. It was a *cover-up*. 17. He *brushed* her *off*. 18. He gave her the *brush-off*. 19. He said, "*Come on*."
- 67-4 1. put-down 2. breakup 3. get-together 4. grown-ups 5. lockout 6. blowup 7. lookout 8. giveaway 9. going-over 10. cutouts 11. rundown
- 67-5 1. hold . . . against 2. narrowed . . . down 3. missed out 4. go by 5. caught on 6. pulled . . . off 7. make of 8. fool around 9. leave . . . behind 10. done away with 11. pitch in 12. calmed down 13. holding . . . down 14. go down 15. put . . . down 16. die down
- 68-1 1. keep from 2. keep . . . to 3. kept . . . up 4. Keep at 5. keeping . . . down 6. keep off 7. keep to 8. keep up 9. keep . . . away 10. keep up 11. keep up 12. keep . . . off 13. keep up 14. keep . . . down 15. keep . . . from 16. keep on 17. keep . . . on 18. keep . . . to 19. keep away
- 68-2 1. He asked you to *keep it down*. 2. You asked her to *keep it to* \$4,000. 3. You can't *keep from* falling asleep. 4. You have to *keep at* it. 5. It's hard to *keep up* with the political situation in Washington. 6. She *kept on* running. 7. I've got to *keep away*. 8. She thinks he's *keeping* something *from* her. 9. You hope she can *keep it up*. 10. You asked him to *keep* the children *away* from your computer. 11. He said it's important to *keep* inflation *down*. 12. He's *kept off* drugs for five years. 13. You can't *keep* him *from* joining the Army. 14. It's hard for her to *keep up* with the other students.
- 68-4 1. brush . . . off 2. running down 3. fell behind 4. go down 5. backed down 6. come on 7. hold . . . down 8. Calm down 9. came about 10. goof around 11. blurts out 12. die down 13. left over 14. lay . . . down 15. hang out 16. dumbled down
- 69-1 1. picked up 2. sold out 3. straighten . . . out 4. took over 5. clean . . . up 6. take over 7. pick up 8. pick . . . up 9. chop up 10. wipe out 11. pick up 12. taken over 13. filled up 14. pick up 15. filled up 16. straightened out 17. pick up 18. Wipe . . . out 19. picking . . . up 20. straighten . . . out 21. picked up 22. fill up 23. pick . . . up 24. take . . . over 25. pick up 26. pick up 27. cross . . . off
- 69-2 1. Have you *chopped up* the onions? Have you *chopped* the onions *up*? Have you *chopped* them *up*? 2. You can *cross off* Linda's name. You can *cross* Linda's name *off*. You can *cross* her *off*. 3. *Fill up* the aquarium with water. *Fill* the aquarium *up* with water. *Fill* it *up* with water. 4. I need to *pick up* my

parents at the train station. I need to *pick* my parents *up* at the train station. I need to *pick* them *up* at the train station. 5. Can you *straighten out* this mess? Can you *straighten* this mess *out*? Can you *straighten* it *out*? 6. The rebels *took over* the royal palace. The rebels *took* the royal palace *over*. The rebels *took* it *over*. 7. They *wiped out* the palace guard. They *wiped* the palace guard *out*. They *wiped* them *out*.

9-3 1. It always *picks up* in the spring. 2. It might be *taken over* by pirates. 3. It would be a *takeover*. 4. She *straightened* everything *out*. 5. It's *straightened out*. 6. He was supposed to be *picked up*. 7. They'll be *wiped out*. 8. It ought to be *crossed off*. 9. It'll be *crossed off*. 10. It *sold out* of the CDs. 11. They were *sold out*. 12. It had *sold out*. 13. It was *chopped up*. 14. It has to be *picked up* before 6:00. 15. He *took over* for the pilot. 16. He often asks you to *pick up* a newspaper. 17. You'll tell her not to let the water *run over*. 18. You *picked up* on page 95.

9-4 1. settling down 2. slowed . . . down 3. cut down 4. left out 5. blew up 6. Hand over 7. came out 8. bring . . . back 9. knock off 10. make up 11. picking on 12. bitten off 13. pulled . . . over 14. wear . . . down 15. look . . . over 16. broken off

10-1 1. stuck with 2. going away 3. blow . . . off 4. got off on 5. came back 6. running around 7. stick with 8. brought up 9. brought up 10. stick with 11. come back 12. come back 13. going away 14. burst out 15. ran around 16. stick . . . with 17. going away 18. come back 19. go away 20. brings . . . up

10-2 1. They're not *sticking with* the original plan. 2. It *came back*. 3. I *burst out* crying. 4. He *blew* it *off*. 5. He gave you the *runaround*. 6. She asked him to *go away*. 7. She *gets off on* it. 8. He *got stuck* with unloading the truck. 9. She *brought up* joining the Peace Corps. 10. It's *coming back*. 11. It never *goes away*. 12. I haven't *come back*. 13. He *ran around* looking for a fire extinguisher. 14. It would be nice to *get away*. 15. They *brought me up* to believe in the golden rule.

10-4 1. holds . . . against 2. do . . . over 3. go down 4. went out 5. stick around 6. run down 7. make of 8. take . . . back 9. lay down 10. fool around 11. backed down 12. stick . . . to 13. put . . . up to 14. led up to 15. go by 16. trick . . . into

11-1 1. letting . . . in 2. sneaked in 3. broke in 4. check . . . out 5. check . . . in 6. plug into 7. squeeze . . . in 8. check in 9. sneaked in 10. sneak . . . out 11. check . . . out 12. go into 13. letting in 14. check out 15. check into 16. check out 17. break into 18. checked in 19. sneak . . . into 20. squeeze in

- 1-2 1. She *sneaked in*. 2. She *let him in*. 3. She *checked out*. 4. It's the *checkout* time. 5. It was *broken into*. 6. There was a *break-in*. 7. You'll *check in*. 8. You'll go to *checkin*./You'll go to the *check-in* counter. 9. She *squeezed me in*. 10. You'll *check it out*. 11. He *checks them in*. 12. They're *checked in*. 13. I *sneaked out*. 14. He hasn't *checked in*. 15. He *plugged it in*. 16. It's *plugged in*. 17. *Squeezing into* my old Army uniform is getting harder every year. 18. He was *checked out*. 19. You didn't *break in* your boots.
- 1-4 1. left over 2. lets . . . down 3. come on 4. put . . . down 5. started out 6. maxed . . . out 7. blow . . . off 8. narrowed . . . down 9. straighten . . . out 10. take over 11. pitch in 12. filled . . . up 13. go away 14. hang out 15. dumb . . . down 16. gets off on 17. comes to
- 2-1 1. get back 2. got out 3. gets out 4. Getting over 5. gotten into 6. got . . . out 7. get up 8. get out 9. get . . . in 10. Get in 11. got . . . in 12. get . . . in 13. get in 14. gets out 15. gets by 16. get down 17. Get down 18. get by 19. gotten up 20. get behind 21. get to 22. get by 23. gets back 24. get . . . down 25. get over 26. getting . . . back 27. get over 28. Get . . . out 29. get . . . out 30. get out 31. get . . . into
- 2-2 1. He *got you up*. 2. It's difficult to *get up* to Minnesota. 3. I *got into* a lot of trouble. 4. I need to *get right back* home. 5. She can barely *get by*. 6. She'll *get behind*. 7. He hasn't *gotten over* it. 8. She *got me out* of it. 9. He's *getting it out*. 10. He's *getting it down*. 11. They couldn't *get it in*. 12. You can't *get by*. 13. She *got out*. 14. She *got back in*. 15. He *got it back*. 16. They *got her down*. 17. He asked you to *get right over* to his house.
- 2-3 1. pick . . . up 2. clear . . . out 3. selling out 4. leave . . . behind 5. floating around 6. running around 7. punching . . . in 8. punched out 9. drowned out 10. call . . . back 11. squeeze . . . in 12. start up 13. Sneaking into 14. sneak out 15. brushes . . . off 16. crossed . . . off 17. plug . . . in
- 3-1 1. head toward 2. tried . . . on 3. blew out 4. gave out 5. run up 6. blew out 7. shut . . . up 8. set out 9. grosses . . . out 10. Shut up 11. ran up 12. blown out 13. given out 14. ran up 15. set out
- 3-2 1. of 2. to 3. on 4. to 5. on
- 3-3 1. The wind *blew out* the candle. The wind *blew* the candle *out*. The wind *blew it out*. 2. They might have *given out* the information. They might have *given* the information *out*. They might have *given it out*. 3. She *ran up* a \$4,000 bill. She *ran* a \$4,000 bill *up*. She *ran it up*. 4. Can I *try on* these pants? Can I *try* these pants *on*? Can I *try them on*? 5. The smell may have *grossed out* everyone. The smell may have *grossed* everyone *out*. The smell may have *grossed* them *out*.

- 3-4 1. She should have *tried it on*. 2. It *gave out*. 3. It was a *run-up*. 4. It must have *grossed him out*. 5. He must have been *grossed out*. 6. They *ran up* to her. 7. She wouldn't have *headed toward* Detroit. 8. She *blew it out*. 9. *Shutting him up* is nearly impossible. 10. She asked him how he could have *run up* such a large credit card bill. 11. We *set out* on our drive to Alaska at 8:00. 12. You had a *blowout*. 13. Sarah *set out* to make her business a success.
- 3-5 1. leftover 2. chopped up 3. covered up 4. rundown 5. broken in 6. paid off 7. let down 8. crossed off 9. checked in 10. checked out 11. sold out 12. plugged in 13. filled up 14. straightened out 15. put off 16. sneak . . . into
- 3-6 1. sneaked into 2. sneak out 3. keep off 4. coming back 5. squeezed . . . into 6. kept on 7. get back 8. gotten behind 9. keep from 10. Keep at 11. keep . . . to 12. burst out 13. keep up 14. wiped out 15. keep . . . away 16. kept . . . down
- 4-1 1. locked . . . up 2. carried away 3. pisses . . . off 4. stressing . . . out 5. kicked out 6. beat up 7. mix . . . up 8. lock up 9. ripped . . . off 10. mixes . . . up
- 4-2 1. The thugs *beat up* the woman. The thugs *beat* the woman *up*. The thugs *beat her up*. 2. The hotel manager *kicked out* the rock group. The hotel manager *kicked* the rock group *out*. The hotel manager *kicked them out*. 3. The cops are going to *lock up* the crook. The cops are going to *lock* the crook *up*. The cops are going to *lock her up*. 4. *Mixing up* the twins is easy. *Mixing the twins up* is easy. *Mixing them up* is easy. 5. Getting a tattoo must have *pissed off* your father. Getting a tattoo must have *pissed* your father *off*. Getting a tattoo must have *pissed him off*. 6. The contractor was accused of *ripping off* homeowners. The contractor was accused of *ripping* homeowners *off*. The contractor was accused of *ripping them off*. 7. All these problems are *stressing out* the staff. All these problems are *stressing* the staff *out*. All these problems are *stressing them out*.
- 4-3 1. He *ripped him off*. 2. It was a *ripoff*. 3. She's going to *kick them out*. 4. I *locked up*. 5. It's *locked up*. 6. It's easy to *mix them up*. 7. It *pissed him off*. 8. He was *pissed off*. 9. She's *mixed up*. 10. It's *stressing me out*. 11. I'm *stressed-out*. 12. They were *beat up*. 13. He was *locked up*. 14. He was *locked up*. 15. She got *carried away*. 16. They *beat him up*. 17. I have to *mix them up*.
- 4-4 1. cover . . . up 2. paid off 3. takes over 4. keep . . . down 5. keep on 6. broken in 7. keep away 8. bringing . . . up 9. keep from 10. stuck . . . with 11. keep . . . off 12. keep . . . to 13. max . . . out 14. kept at 15. put . . . up to 16. keep . . . up

- 5-1 1. turn out 2. turn in 3. turned . . . off 4. turns over 5. turned on 6. turn . . . in 7. turned in 8. turned up 9. turn . . . into 10. turn . . . on 11. turn . . . up 12. turn . . . down 13. turn . . . off 14. turned . . . on 15. turn over 16. turn up 17. turning in 18. turn off 19. turned . . . on 20. turned down 21. turning out 22. turn . . . over 23. turn out 24. turning out 25. turn in 26. turning out 27. turn . . . in
- 5-2 1. They *turn into* butterflies. 2. He *turned up*. 3. It *turned* him *off*. 4. He thinks it's a *turnoff*. 5. He was *turned off*. 6. It *turns* you *on*. 7. You think it's a *turn-on*. 8. You feel *turned on*. 9. I'm *turning* it *up*. 10. *Turnover* is very low. 11. It *turns out* 25,000 cars every year. 12. She didn't *turn* it *up*. 13. She hasn't *turned up* anything. 14. It was *turned into* a Chinese restaurant. 15. It *turned out* orange. 16. She couldn't *turn* him *down*. 17. It will probably *turn over* \$4 million. 18. He hasn't *turned* his paper *in*. 19. She isn't going to *turn* him *in*. 20. There wasn't enough room because so many people *turned out*. 21. The *turnout* was large. 22. He *turned* it *over*.
- 5-4 1. get . . . back 2. ran up 3. gotten up 4. tried . . . on 5. Get out 6. get there 7. grossing . . . out 8. get into 9. head toward 10. get out 11. lock up 12. beaten up 13. set out 14. getting behind 15. getting over 16. carried away
- 6-1 1. talk . . . into 2. build in 3. bump into 4. freak out 5. talk . . . out of 6. conned . . . into 7. bumped into 8. make for 9. con . . . out of 10. made for
- 6-2 1. She's trying to *talk* you *into* helping her paint her house. 2. He *bumped into* Raul. 3. He's trying to *con* me *out* of everything I own. 4. It will *make for* an uncomfortable evening. 5. He *conned* her *into* selling him her house for a lot less than it's worth. 6. She's *freaking out*. 7. A shelf was *built into* it. 8. It's *built-in*. 9. No one can *talk* him *out* of quitting his job.
- 6-4 1. lockup 2. comeback 3. wipeout 4. Check-in 5. checkout 6. mix-up 7. break-in 8. pickup 9. takeover 10. run-up 11. blowout
- 6-5 1. turn . . . in 2. brought . . . up 3. lock . . . up 4. gone away 5. stands for 6. got by 7. stressing . . . out 8. shut up 9. stick with 10. gave out 11. turning . . . into 12. blew . . . off 13. pisses . . . off 14. let . . . in 15. kicked out 16. burst out
- 7-1 1. run out 2. put . . . into 3. pull out 4. comes in 5. cut back 6. ran out 7. moving into 8. put . . . in 9. brush up 10. move in 11. comes in 12. putting . . . in 13. put in 14. come in 15. move out 16. runs out 17. put . . . in 18. coming in 19. cut back 20. pulled out 21. move . . . out 22. put in 23. come in 24. move . . . into 25. put . . . in 26. pull out

- 7-2 1. He's going to *move in* with his Uncle John. 2. It's *cutting back*. 3. It's a *cutback*. 4. You can't figure out where they're *coming in*. 5. It didn't *come in* on time. 6. He's *moving out*. 7. I *ran out* of money. 8. She's *pulling out*. 9. She shouldn't have *put* a pool *in* such a small backyard. 10. She's *brushing up* on Italian. 11. He might *pull out*. 12. She told me to *cut back* on candy. 13. He's going to *come in* late. 14. She's *putting* a lot of effort *into* learning Chinese. 15. They *ran out* of time. 16. He hasn't *put* them *in* the washing machine. 17. He asked her when she was *moving in*. 18. He *puts* \$1,000 *into* his checking account.
- 7-3 1. tried on 2. kicked out 3. rips off 4. get . . . down 5. conned . . . into 6. set out 7. talked . . . into 8. conned out of 9. make for 10. bumped into 11. shut up 12. gotten up 13. talk . . . out of 14. get into 15. nodding off 16. freaked . . . out 17. sneaked . . . out 18. come to 19. squeeze into 20. get out
- 8-1 1. put . . . back 2. switch . . . off 3. knocked out 4. looked up to 5. put back 6. switched on 7. kicked . . . out 8. knocked out 9. put back 10. throw . . . out 11. hammer out 12. looks down on 13. put . . . back 14. knock out 15. knocked . . . out
- 8-2 1. General Johnston had to *put back* the attack. General Johnston had to *put* the attack *back*. General Johnston had to *put* it *back*. 2. Have you *switched on* the TV? Have you *switched* the TV *on*? Have you *switched* it *on*? 3. Are you going to *switch off* the lights? Are you going to *switch* the lights *off*? Are you going to *switch* them *off*? 4. *Throwing out* all this junk is going to be a big job. *Throwing* all this junk *out* is going to be a big job. *Throwing* it *out* is going to be a big job.
- 8-3 1. It has *put back* your fight for justice. 2. He *looks up to* him. 3. It *knocked* him *out*. 4. It's a *knockout*. 5. I *switched* it *on*. 6. It's *switched on*. 7. They must have been *switched off*. 8. They're *switched off*. 9. They *hammered* it *out*. 10. He *looks down on* them. 11. He would have been *kicked out*.
- 8-4 1. turnoff 2. cutback 3. make-up 4. turn-on 5. pullout 6. carryout 7. runaround 8. turnover 9. rip-off 10. lookout 11. turnout 12. falling-out
- 8-5 1. put . . . into 2. talked . . . out of 3. carried away 4. con . . . out of 5. pulled out 6. stick . . . out 7. bumped into 8. turn up 9. con . . . into 10. brush up 11. talked into 12. move in 13. Turn . . . over 14. move out 15. blow out 16. stressing . . . out
- 9-1 1. get to 2. hang on 3. get to 4. start . . . off 5. get to 6. get back to 7. get . . . on 8. clogged . . . up 9. get on 10. gotten to 11. Throwing away 12. getting on 13. get to 14. get ahead 15. starts off 16. get on 17. Hang on 18. throw . . . away 19. get to 20. got to 21. got on 22. Get to

- 9-2 1. She can't *get* her shoes *on*. 2. He *got to* feeling depressed. 3. He *threw* them *away*. 4. You're going to *get back to* work. 5. She's going to *get back to* me. 6. It got *clogged up*. 7. It was *clogged up*. 8. He has never *gotten to* work after 9:30. 9. I *got on* with my work. 10. It should be taken out when the temperature *gets to* 190 degrees. 11. He said he couldn't *hang on* any longer. 12. You've got to *get to* them. 13. It must have been *thrown away*. 14. He showed you how to *get on* a horse. 15. It *started off* well, but things got worse. 16. He told you that you shouldn't let it *get to* you. 17. She *got to* pet a baby tiger. 18. He *hung on* to the ropes. 19. He *got on* the diving board. 20. He *got* right back *on*. 21. She couldn't have *gotten to* the airport already. 22. He always *starts off* by introducing himself. 23. It should help you to *get ahead*.
- 9-4 1. cutting back 2. come in 3. conned . . . into 4. throw . . . out 5. looked up to 6. look down on 7. blurted out 8. put back 9. gets off on 10. hammered . . . out 11. knocked . . . out 12. turned . . . down 13. letting . . . in 14. get over 15. turn down 16. switch . . . on 17. set out
- 10-1 1. paid . . . back 2. wear out 3. turn . . . around 4. pay . . . back 5. deals with 6. wore . . . out 7. comes down to 8. turn around 9. Hold on 10. dealt with 11. come by 12. hold on 13. taken . . . up on 14. Hold on
- 10-2 1. He's been *holding on* for ten minutes. 2. They *wore out*. 3. They're *worn-out*. 4. It's *turning around*. 5. It *comes down to* the MBA program. 6. They wanted to know how Nicholas had *come by* it. 7. It was a *turnaround*. 8. He's going to be *paid back*. 9. You *took her up on* the offer. 10. She'll *deal with* the problem. 11. She *held on* to it. 12. It *wore her out*. 13. She felt *worn-out*.
- 10-4 1. stressed-out 2. worn-out 3. turned on 4. turned off 5. grossed out 6. beat-up 7. clogged up 8. mixed up 9. locked up 10. pissed off 11. built-in 12. turned on 13. turned off 14. dumbled down
- 10-5 1. turned into 2. get to 3. turn in 4. built into 5. turn out 6. get back to 7. thrown . . . away 8. turned on 9. get . . . on 10. get ahead 11. Hang on 12. turn . . . down 13. Turn . . . off 14. clogged . . . up 15. made for 16. turning up
- 10-6 1. give out 2. put . . . into 3. pay . . . back 4. take . . . up on 5. dealt with 6. running out 7. came by 8. get ahead 9. hold on 10. turned . . . around 11. get back to 12. gotten to 13. came down to 14. wore . . . out 15. freaks . . . out 16. started . . . off

Index

act up, 135
aim at, 163
amount to, 270
back down, 316
back off, 98
back out, 183
back up, 84–86
beat up, 396
beef up, 243
bite off, 235
blow away, 126
blow off, 358
blow out, 385–386
blow up, 291
blurt out, 291
boil down to, 40
break down, 31–32
break in, 366–367
break off, 235–236
break out, 64–65
break through, 155
break up, 243–244
bring back, 164
bring up, 358–359
brush off, 328
brush up, 421
build in, 414
build up, 11
bump into, 414

burn down, 32
burn out, 56–57
burn up, 192–193
burst out, 359
butt in, 116
call back, 244
call for, 22
call off, 107
calm down, 317
carry away, 396
carry on, 135–136
carry out, 244–245
catch on, 292
catch up, 65
check in, 367
check out, 367–368
cheer up, 3
chicken out, 65
chill out, 164
chop up, 347
clean out, 279
clear out, 280
clear up, 193
clog up, 441
close off, 107–108
come about, 292
come across, 99
come apart, 251
come back, 359–360
come by, 449
come down, 209
come down to, 449
come down with, 40

come in, 422
come off, 11
come on, 328–329
come out, 280–281
come over, 146
come through, 127
come to, 183
come up, 99
come up with, 41
con into, 415
con out of, 415
cool off, 164
count on, 136
count up, 193
cover up, 329–330
crack down, 200
cross off, 348
cut back, 422
cut down, 200–201
cut off, 86–87
cut out, 271
cut up, 46
deal with, 450
die down, 317
do away with, 271
do over, 300
do with, 219
do without, 272
doze off, 12
dress up, 116
drop in, 251
drop off, 87
drop out, 201

drown out, 245
dry off, 236
dry out, 128
dry up, 116–117
dumb down, 330
eat up, 193–194
end up, 172
fall apart, 146–147
fall behind, 292–293
fall for, 12
fall off, 74
fall out, 281–282
fall over, 57
fall through, 100
feel up to, 17
fight back, 57–58
figure on, 155
figure out, 3
fill in, 74–75
fill out, 117
fill up, 348
find out, 32
fix up, 128–129
fizzle out, 156
flip out, 252
float around, 300
follow up, 88
fool around, 308
freak out, 415
get ahead, 442
get along, 66
get around to, 41
get at, 23

get away, [201–202](#)
get back, [375–376](#)
get back at, [147](#)
get back to, [442](#)
get behind, [376](#)
get by, [376](#)
get down, [377](#)
get in, [377–378](#)
get off, [156–157](#)
get off on, [360](#)
get on, [442–443](#)
get out, [378–379](#)
get out of, [41](#)
get over, [379](#)
get over with, [17](#)
get through, [137](#)
get to, [443](#)
get together, [226](#)
get up, [380](#)
give away, [245–246](#)
give back, [4](#)
give in, [12](#)
give off, [23](#)
give out, [386](#)
give up, [66](#)
go about, [147](#)
go after, [23](#)
go ahead, [75](#)
go along with, [18](#)
go around, [173](#)
go away, [360](#)
go back, [165](#)
go back on, [42](#)

go by, [309](#)
go down, [317–318](#)
go for, [137–138](#)
go in for, [18](#)
go off, [174](#)
go on, [174–175](#)
go out, [282](#)
go over, [227](#)
go overboard, [24](#)
go through with, [42](#)
go under, [252](#)
go up, [227–228](#)
go with, [129](#)
goof around, [293](#)
gross out, [386](#)
grow out of, [147](#)
grow up, [76](#)
hammer out, [430](#)
hand back, [32](#)
hand in, [108](#)
hand out, [76](#)
hand over, [165](#)
hang around, [175](#)
hang on, [444](#)
hang out, [330](#)
hang up, [66–67](#)
have on, [219](#)
head back, [130](#)
head for, [130](#)
head into, [148](#)
head toward, [387](#)
heat up, [194](#)
hit on, [108](#)

hold against, 309
hold down, 318–319
hold off, 138
hold on, 450
hold out, 202
hold up, 47
hook up, 67
hurry up, 219–220
iron out, 13
keep at, 339
keep away, 339
keep down, 339–340
keep from, 340
keep off, 340
keep on, 341
keep to, 341
keep up, 342
kick back, 77
kick out, 396
knock off, 236
knock out, 431
knock over, 220
lay down, 319
lay off, 77
lead up to, 301
leave behind, 310
leave off, 109
leave out, 283
leave over, 331
let down, 331
let in, 368
let in on, 228
let off, 109

let out, [47–48](#)
let up, [210](#)
lie around, [176](#)
light up, [110](#)
lighten up, [220](#)
line up, [157](#)
lock in, [259–260](#)
lock out, [260](#)
lock up, [397](#)
look at, [33](#)
look down on, [431](#)
look forward to, [18](#)
look into, [272](#)
look out, [252](#)
look over, [184](#)
look up, [24](#)
look up to, [432](#)
luck out, [252](#)
make for, [415–416](#)
make of, [310](#)
make out, [253](#)
make up, [203–204](#)
man up, [194](#)
max out, [293](#)
melt down, [184](#)
mess around, [58](#)
mess up, [246](#)
miss out, [283](#)
mix up, [397](#)
monkey around with, [42](#)
move in, [423](#)
move out, [423](#)
narrow down, [310](#)

nod off, [237](#)
open up, [228](#)
pass away, [4](#)
pass out, [260–261](#)
pay back, [450–451](#)
pay off, [332](#)
pay up, [194](#)
pick on, [184](#)
pick out, [58](#)
pick up, [348–350](#)
pig out, [59](#)
pile up, [33](#)
piss off, [398](#)
pitch in, [311](#)
plug in, [369](#)
plug up, [195](#)
point out, [48](#)
print out, [210](#)
pull off, [294](#)
pull out, [424](#)
pull over, [166](#)
pull through, [13](#)
punch in, [261](#)
punch out, [261](#)
push around, [158](#)
put away, [117–118](#)
put back, [432](#)
put down, [319–320](#)
put in, [424–425](#)
put off, [272](#)
put on, [4–5](#)
put out, [261–262](#)
put past, [138](#)

put to, [24–25](#)
put together, [229](#)
put up, [100–101](#)
put up to, [301](#)
put up with, [19](#)
rip off, [398](#)
rip up, [148](#)
rule out, [273](#)
run across, [254](#)
run around, [361](#)
run down, [320–321](#)
run into, [5](#)
run out, [425](#)
run over, [48–49](#)
run up, [387](#)
screw on, [101](#)
screw out of, [19](#)
screw up, [78](#)
see about, [49](#)
sell out, [350](#)
set out, [387–388](#)
set up, [34](#)
settle down, [185](#)
settle for, [220](#)
shake up, [210–211](#)
show off, [211](#)
show up, [5](#)
shut off, [229](#)
shut up, [388](#)
sign in, [101](#)
sign out, [102](#)
slow down, [211](#)
sneak in, [369](#)

sneak out, [369](#)
sort out, [262–263](#)
space out, [263](#)
squeeze in, [370](#)
stand for, [301–302](#)
stand up, [246](#)
start off, [444](#)
start out, [176](#)
start up, [230](#)
stay out, [204](#)
stay up, [176](#)
stick around, [302](#)
stick out, [283–284](#)
stick to, [302](#)
stick together, [185](#)
stick up, [118](#)
stick with, [361](#)
stop over, [212](#)
straighten out, [351](#)
stress out, [398](#)
string along, [273](#)
suck up to, [158](#)
switch off, [432–433](#)
switch on, [433](#)
take after, [35](#)
take apart, [49](#)
take back, [303](#)
take in, [50](#)
take off, [6](#)
take out, [88–89](#)
take out on, [186](#)
take over, [351–352](#)
take up on, [451](#)

talk down to, 19
talk into, 416
talk out of, 416
tear down, 59
tell apart, 158
tell on, 130
think about, 139
think up, 221
throw away, 444
throw out, 433
throw up, 13
track down, 110
trade in, 212
trick into, 311
try on, 388
try out, 89
turn around, 451
turn down, 404
turn in, 404–405
turn into, 405
turn off, 405–406
turn on, 406–407
turn out, 407–408
turn over, 408–409
turn up, 409
use up, 119
wake up, 90
warm up, 166–167
wash off, 237
watch out, 204
wear down, 148
wear off, 237
wear out, 452

weasel out, [221](#)
wind up, [119–120](#)
wipe off, [238](#)
wipe out, [352](#)
work in, [59](#)
work out, [90–91](#)
work up, [67–68](#)
wrap up, [25](#)